



ДОНСКОЙ ГОСУДАРСТВЕННЫЙ ТЕХНИЧЕСКИЙ УНИВЕРСИТЕТ
УПРАВЛЕНИЕ ДИСТАНЦИОННОГО ОБУЧЕНИЯ И ПОВЫШЕНИЯ
КВАЛИФИКАЦИИ

Кафедра «Научо-технический перевод и профессиональная
коммуникация»

Учебное пособие по дисциплине

«Практическая грамматика первого иностранного язы- ка»

Авторы
Мойсова О. Б.

Ростов-на-Дону, 2018

Аннотация

Учебное пособие предназначено для студентов очной формы обучения направления 45.05.01 Перевод и переводоведение.

Учебное пособие включает в себя теоретический грамматический материал и практические упражнения.

Грамматические навыки закрепляются при помощи разнообразных упражнений, рассчитанных на развитие речевой активности студентов.

Предназначено для студентов 1 курса специальности «Перевод и переводоведение», изучающих дисциплину «Практическая грамматика первого иностранного языка» (английский) в рамках модуля «Практический курс первого иностранного языка».

Авторы

к.ф.н., доцент кафедры «Научно-технический перевод и профессиональная коммуникация» Мойсова О. Б.



Оглавление

1. ОСНОВНЫЕ ЧАСТИ РЕЧИ/ PRINCIPAL PARTS OF SPEECH 1

1.1. Существительное/Noun	1
1.2. Артикль/Article	17
1.3. Прилагательное / Adjective	42
1.4. Местоимение / Pronoun	45
1.5. Числительное / Numeral	61
1.6. Наречие / Adverb	67

2. ГЛАГОЛ /VERB.....70

2.1. Морфологическая структура глагола.	70
Основные формы глагола /Morphological structure. Basic forms	70
2.2. Система видовременных форм глагола	73
в активном залоге / Active voice tenses	73
2.3. Пассивный залог / Passive voice tenses.....	160
2.4. Модальные глаголы / Modal verbs	186

3. НАКЛОНЕНИЕ / MOOD 230

3.1. Виды наклонений.....	230
Условное наклонение / Types of Mood.	230
Conditional Mood.	230

4. НЕЛИЧНЫЕ ФОРМЫ ГЛАГОЛА/..... 256

NON-FINITE FORMS OF THE VERBS 256

4.1. Инфинитив / Infinitive	257
4.2. Герундий / Gerund.....	266
4.3. Причастие / Participle	275

1. ОСНОВНЫЕ ЧАСТИ РЕЧИ/ PRINCIPAL PARTS OF SPEECH

1.1. Существительное/Noun

The Lexico -Grammatical classification of Nouns

Nouns are words that denote things in the broadest sense of the word: living beings, objects, abstract notions, places, processes, events, etc. understood as things: *John, lion, beauty, street*, etc.

Depending on their semantic and grammatical properties nouns fall into **Common** and **Proper** ones. They can be countable and uncountable.

There are different groups of **common** nouns: **class** nouns, **collective** nouns, nouns of **material** and **abstract** nouns.

1. **Class** nouns denote persons or things belonging to a class: *Car, house, man*. They are countable and have two numbers: singular and plural.

2. **Collective** nouns denote a number or collection of similar individuals or things as a single unit.

Collective nouns are divided into following groups:

- Which are used only in the singular / *furniture, foliage, machinery*, etc/

- Which are used only in plural / *trousers, clothes, stairs*, etc./

- Which are used in both numbers / *family, company, crowd*, etc/

3. Nouns of **material** denote material: iron, gold, paper, tea, water. They are uncountable and are generally used without any article.

Nouns of **material** are used in the plural to denote different sorts of a given material: *wines – сорта вин*.

Nouns of **material** may turn into class nouns (thus becoming countable) when they come to express an individual object of definite

shape: *But the person in the glass made a face at her, and Miss Moss went out.*

4. **Abstract** nouns denote some quality, state, action or idea: *kindness, sadness, fight.*

Abstract nouns may be **countable** / *idea, answer, question, etc.* /, **uncountable** / *knowledge, love, friendship, etc.* / and **used only in plural** / *tidings, earnings* /

Abstract nouns may change their meaning and become class nouns. This change is marked by the use of the article and of the plural number:

<i>Beauty</i>	<i>a beauty</i>	<i>beauties</i>
<i>sight</i>	<i>a sight</i>	<i>sights</i>

She was a beauty... but she isn't one of those horrid regular beauties.

Proper nouns are individual, names given to separate persons or things.

Proper nouns are divided into:

- personal names (*Bill, Anny*),
- geographical names (*The Pacific Ocean, The Neva*)
- and other proper names such as the names of the months and of the days of the week (*February, Monday*), names of ships, hotels, clubs, etc. (*The Titanic, Piccadilly*)

Morphological Composition Of Nouns

Morphologically English Nouns are of 3 kinds:

- **Simple**
- **Derived/derivative/**
- **Compound**

Simple nouns are rootnouns that is, they consist only of one root (*boy, girl, hook, chair*),

Derived nouns are built up with the help of prefixes, which are placed before the root/ prefixes/ and after the root / suffixes/ : *dislike, remark, artist, doctor, friendship, teacher, freedom* .

Here are some of the most important suffixes of nouns: -ance, -ence, -ing, -ism, -ment, -ness --tion, -sion, -er, -or. For exam-

ple: resistance, presence, meanings, agreement, decision, reality, *speaker, musician*.

Compound nouns consist of at least 2 roots. Most often the first is a noun / *airman, footnote*/ or an adjective / *blackboard, greenhouse*/. There are syntactic compounds which don't contain any noun / *forget-me-not, merry-go-round*/

The category of number

1. The plural of a noun is usually made by adding **s** to the singular: *day- days, dog- dogs, house-houses* **s** is pronounced /**s**/ after a **p, k** or **f** sound. Otherwise it is pronounced /**z**/. When **s** is placed after **ce, ge, se** or **ze** an extra syllable (/iz/) is added to the spoken word.

2. Nouns ending in **o** or **ch, sh, ss** or **x** form their plural by adding **es**: *tomato- tomatoes, brush- brushes, box- boxes, church- churches, kiss- kisses*.

But words of **foreign origin** or **abbreviated** words ending in **o** add **s** only: *dynamo-dynamos, kimono-kimonos, piano-pianos, kilo- kilos, photo- photos, soprano-sopranos*.

When **es** is placed after **ch, sh, ss** or **x** an extra syllable (/iz/) is added to the spoken word.

3. Nouns ending in **y** following a consonant form their plural by dropping the **y** and adding **ies**: *baby- babies, country- countries, fly- flies, lady-ladies*. Nouns ending in **y** following a vowel form their plural by adding **s**: *boy- boys, day-days, donkey-donkeys, guy- guys*.

4. Twelve nouns ending in **f** or **fe** drop the **f** or **fe** and add **ves**. These nouns are *calf, half, knife, leaf, life, loaf, self, sheaf, shelf, thief, wife, wolf*: *loaf- loaves, wife- wives, wolf- wolves etc*.

The nouns *hoof, scar/and wharf* take either **s** or **ves** in the plural: *hoofs or hooves, scarfs or scarves, wharfs or wharves*.

Other words ending in **f** or **fe** add **s** in the ordinary way: *cliff-cliffs, handkerchief-handkerchiefs, safe-safes*.

5. A few nouns form their plural by a **vowel change**: *foot-feet, louse-lice, mouse-mice, woman-women, goose-geese, man-men, tooth-teeth*. The plurals of child and ox are children, oxen.

6. Names of certain creatures **do not change** in the plural.

fish is normally unchanged, **fishes** exists but is uncommon.

Some types of fish do not normally change in the plural: **carp, pike, salmon, trout, cod, plaice, squid, turbot, mackerel**, but if used in a plural sense they would take a plural verb.

Others add **s**: *crabs, herrings, sardines, eels, lobsters, sharks*
deer and **sheep** do not change: *one sheep, two sheep*.

7. **Collective nouns**, crew, family, team etc ... can take a singular or plural verb; singular if we consider the word to mean a single group or unit: *Our team is the best* or plural if we take it to mean a number of individuals: *Our team are wearing their new jerseys*.

When a possessive adjective is necessary, a plural verb with *their is* more usual than a singular verb with *its*, though sometimes both are possible: *The Jury is considering its verdict. The jury are considering their verdict*.

8. Certain words are **always plural** and take a plural verb: *Clothes police garments consisting of two parts: breeches pants pyjama trousers etc.*

and tools and instruments consisting of two parts: *binoculars pliers scissors spectacles glasses scales shears etc.*

Also certain other words including: *arms (weapons), particulars, damages (compensation), premises/quarters, earnings, riches, goods/wares, savings, greens (vegetables), spirits (alcohol), grounds, stairs, outskirts, surroundings, pains (trouble/effort), valuables*.

9. A number words ending in **ics**, *acoustics, athletics, ethics, hysterics, mathematics, physics, politics etc.*, which are **plural** in form, normally take a plural verb: *His mathematics are weak*.

But names of sciences can sometimes be considered singular: *Mathematics is an exact science*.

10. Words plural in form but **singular in meaning** include **news**: *The news is good*

certain diseases: *mumps, rickets, shingles*

and certain games: *billiards, darts, draughts, bowls, dominoes*

11. Some words which retain their **original Greek or Latin forms** make their plurals according to the rules of Greek and Latin:

crisis-crises, phenomenon-phenomena, erratum-errata, radius-radii, memorandum-memoranda, terminus-termini, oasis-oases.

But some follow the English rules: *dogma-dogmas, gymnasi-um-gymnasiums, formula-formulas* (though *formulae* is used by scientists) Sometimes there are two plural forms with different meanings: *appendix- appendixes or appendices* (medical terms), *appendix-appendices* (addition/s to a book), *index-indexes* (in books), *indices* (in mathematics) Musicians usually prefer Italian plural forms for Italian musical terms: *libretto- libretti, tempo- tempi*. But s is also possible: *librettos, tempos*.

12. Compound nouns:

a) Normally the **last word** is made **plural**: *boy-friends, break-ins travel agents*

But where **man** and **woman** is prefixed **both parts** are made **plural**: *men drivers, women drivers*

b) The **first word** is made **plural** with compounds formed of **verb + er nouns + adverbs**: *hangers-on, lookers-on, runners-up* and with compounds composed of **noun + preposition + noun**: *ladies-in-waiting, sisters-in-law, wards of court*

c) **Initials** can be made **plural**: *MPs* (Members of Parliament), *VIPs* (very important persons), *OAPs* (old age pensioners), *UFOs* (unidentified flying objects)

Uncountable nouns (also known as non-count nouns or mass nouns)

1. a) Names of **substances** considered generally: *bread, cream, gold, paper, tea, beer, dust, ice, sand, water, jam, soap, wine, coffee, glass, oil;*

b) **Abstract** nouns: *advice, experience, horror, pity, beauty, information, relief, courage, help, knowledge, suspicion, death, hope, mercy, work;*

c) Also considered uncountable in English: *baggage, damage, luggage, shopping, camping, furniture, parking, weather*. These, with *hair, information, knowledge, news, rubbish*, are sometimes countable in other languages.

2. **Uncountable** nouns are **always singular** and are not used with a/an: *I don't want (any) advice or help. I want (some) information. He has had no experience in this sort of work.* These nouns are often preceded by some, any, no, a little etc. or by nouns such as bit, piece, slice etc. + of: *a bit of news, a grain of sand, a pot of jam, a cake of soap, a sheet of paper, a drop of oil, a piece of advice.*

3. Many of the nouns in the above groups can be used in a **particular sense** and are then **countable** and can take a/an in the singular.

Some examples are given below.

hair (all the hair on one's head) is considered uncountable, but if we consider each hair separately we say one hair, two hairs etc.: *Her hair is black. Whenever she finds a grey hair she pulls it out. We drink beer, coffee, gin, but we can ask for a (cup of) coffee, a gin, two gins etc. We drink out of glasses. We can walk in woods.*

experience meaning 'something which happened to someone' is countable: *He had an exciting experience/some exciting experiences (= adventure/s) last week.*

work meaning 'occupation/employment/a job/jobs' is singular: *He is looking/or work/for a job. I do homework. She does housework.* But roadworks means 'repair of roads'.

works (plural only) can mean 'factory' or 'moving parts of a machine'. works (usually plural) can be used of literary or musical compositions: *Shakespeare's complete works.*

4. Some **abstract nouns** can be used in a **particular sense** with a/an, but in the **singular** only:

a help: *My children are a great help to me. A good map would be a help.*

a relief: *It was a relief to sit down.*

a knowledge + of: *He had a good knowledge of mathematics.*

a dislike/dread/hatred/horror/love + of is also possible: *a love of music a hatred of violence*

a mercy/pity/shame/wonder can be used with that-clauses introduced by it: *It's a pity you weren't here. It's a shame he wasn't paid.*

5. **a fear/fears, a hope/hopes, a suspicion/suspensions**

These can be used with that-clauses introduced by there: *There is a fear/There are fears that he has been murdered. We can also have a suspicion that. . .* Something can arouse *a fear/fears, a hope/hopes, a suspicion/suspensions.*

Exercises: THE NOUN. NUMBER

Ex. 1. Point out nouns in the following sentences. Arrange them into: countable and uncountable; proper and common; class, collective, material and abstract. If possible use an article.

1. The train leaves at six o'clock. 2. I have bought two books. 3. Coal is produced in many districts of our country. 4. He made a speech yesterday. 5. Animals do not possess the power of speech. 6. There are many amusements in the Park of Culture and Rest. 7. He does that just for fun. 8. The boy threw a stone into the water. 9. The ground was as hard as stone. 10. His voice was as dry as a biscuit. 10. She has sent me some magazines from London. 11. What a clever man. 12. What luck! 13. Love is a special feeling. 14. I love my family very much. 15. Add some water. 16. I'll speak to manager. 17. Peter is my best friend. 18. There are four seasons in the year: spring, summer, autumn and winter. 19. I want to visit my aunt Mary. She lives in New York. 20. My sister likes to play with pets.

Ex. 2. Give the plural of the following. Write the words in transcription.

a hand, a machine, a shoe, a year, a map, a safe, a table, a chair, a book, a room, a cat, a dog, a puppy, a kitten, a tiger, a class, a box, a dish, a horse, a place, a prize, a judge, a city, an army, a day, a toy, a key, a house, a doll, a ball, a pen, a knife, a wife, a loaf, a hero, a tomato, a roof, a handkerchief.

Ex. 3. Remember these words. Write them in transcription. Make the sentences using these words.

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
man	men
woman	women
foot	feet
tooth	teeth
goose	geese
mouse	mice
ox	oxen
child	children
louse	lice

Ex. 4. Give the plural of the following compound nouns:

a custom-house, a man of war, a hotel-keeper, a mother-in-law, a passer-by, a man-servant, a woman-doctor, a schoolboy, a housewife, a postman.

Ex. 5. Give the plural of the following:

a mouse, a piano, a baby, a knife, a deer, a dish, a trout, a man, a box, a sheep, a woman, an ox, a life, a child, a thief, a roof, a potato, a brother-in-law, a handful, a man of war, a criterion, a phenomenon, a wife, a fly, a louse, a half, a foot, a spoonful, a nose, a hero, a goose, a shelf, a toothbrush, a forget-me-not, a stimulus, an appendix, hair, people, a datum, gin-and-tonic.

Ex. 6. Give the singular of the following. Remember to use an indefinite article where necessary:

flies, loaves, men of war, spoonfuls, women-doctors, feet, deer, swine, heroes, mice, donkeys, bases, data, fathers-in-law, handfuls, stimuli, wives, boxes, ladies, solos, youths, lice, leaves, wolves, potatoes, teeth, geese, oxen; police, people, trousers, oaths, appendices, goods.

Ex. 7. Choose the correct verb form:

1. Her information is/are correct. 2. These scissors is/are new. 3. The furniture is/are very old. 4. Some people is/are coming today. 5. Her clothes is/are smart. 6. His trousers is/are well worn. 7. Their advice is/are very useful. 8. The mice is/are caught. 9. Her hair is/are long. 10. The news is/are very interesting. 11. The police has/have already come. 12. The criteria is/are important.

Ex. 8. Give the following sentences in the plural. Remember to change the verb

Pattern: This is a photo. These are photos. _____

1. This is a hero. 2. This is a leaf. 3. This is a cargo. 4. This is a knife. 5. This is a toy. 6. This is a shoe. 7. This is a tomato. 8. This is a handkerchief. 9. This is a city. 10. This is a roof. 11. This is a key. 12. This is a box.

Ex. 9. Give the following sentences in the singular. Remember to change the verb.

Pattern: Those are teachers. That is a teacher.

1. Those are girls. 2. Those are children. 3. Those are oxen. 4. Those are horses. 5. Those are students. 6. Those are postmen. 7. Those are mothers-in-law. 8. Those are passers-by. 9. Those are apples. 10. Those are wolves. 11. Those are maps. 12. Those are pencils.

Ex. 10. Give the following in the plural.

Pattern: She is a housewife. They are housewives.

1. He is a hotel-keeper. 2. He is a man-servant. 3. She is a woman-doctor. 4. He is a schoolboy. 5. He is a postman. 6. She is a mother-in-law. 7. She is a judge. 8. He is a child. 9. He is a businessman. 10. She is a landlady.

Ex. 11. Translate into English.

1. Летом мы едим много фруктов. 2. Его волосы совсем темные. 3. Я купил эти часы вчера. Они очень хорошие. 4. Эти новости очень интересные. 5. Ваши советы мне очень помогли сегодня. 6. Кому принадлежат эти деньги? 7. Его одежда не новая. 8. Эти дети очень вежливые. 9. Где зубные щетки? 10. Положи книгу на полку. 11. Копии этих писем будут разосланы завтра. 12. Последний лист упал с дерева. 13. Почему дети не хотят есть груши?

Ex. 12. Remember the nouns that may be both countable and uncountable, but with different meanings.

wine (любое вино) — a wine (определенное вино)

coffee (кофе вообще) - a coffee (определенный кофе)

speech (речь) — a speech (доклад)

work (работа) — a work (произведение)

light (свет) — a light (фонарь)

nature (природа) — a nature (характер)

decision (решимость) — a decision (решение)

beauty (красота) — a beauty (красота)

experience (опыт) — an experience (случай, переживание)

Choose the correct variant:

1. There was (hard / a hard work) to be done on the farm. 2. He spoke of the picture as (work / a work) of art. 3. We must live in peace with (nature / a nature). 5. Mr. Brown was a man of (decision / a decision). 6. We couldn't come to (decision / a decision). 7. (Beauty / a beauty) is only skin deep. 8. She was (beauty / a beauty) twenty

years ago. 9. We all learn by (experience / an experience). 10. It was (unusual experience / an unusual experience).

Ex. 13. Insert much or many.

1.... people want to see this film. 2. He does not drink ...wine. 3. How ... sheets of paper do you want? 4. Unfortunately we haven't got ... time. 5. How ... does it cost? 6. Did you pay... money for your watch? 7. We haven't had ... rain this summer. 8. How ... time does it take to go there? 9. How ... times have you been there? 10. How ... butter did you buy? 11. How ... apples did you buy? 12. He doesn't eat... fruit.

Ex. 14. Use the correct variant: much, many, a lot of, lots of, plenty of, a great deal of, a great many.

1. He has not ... friends in Moscow. 2. He has ... friends. 3. He has as ... friends as I have. 4. He has got ... work to do. 5. He hasn't got... work to do today. 6. Have you invited ... people to the party? 7. We have invited ... people to the party. 8. You have invited too ... people to the party. 9. I haven't bought... apples. 10. I have bought... apples. 11. He didn't know ... about it.

Ex. 15. Insert little, a little, few, a few.

1. It's no use asking him about it. He has ... knowledge of the subject. 2. He had very ... friends (hardly any friends). 3. He had ... friends (some friends). 4. He drank ... water and felt much better. 5. There was very ... water in the glass; so he poured in some more. 6. ... people understood what he said (hardly any people). 7. The chairman said ... words (some words). 8. May I have ... wine, please? 9. Hurry up! We have very ... time.

Ex. 16. Choose the correct determiners.

1. Andrew doesn't have (many/much) money. 2. I would like (a few / a little) salt on my vegetables. 3. We bought (that / those) books last week. 4. There are (less / fewer) students in this room than in the next room. 5. There is (too much / too many) bad news on TV tonight. 6. She doesn't want (these/ this). 7. These is (too many/too much) information to learn. 8. (A few/ a little) people left early.

9. Would you like (less/fewer) coffee than this? 10. This skirt costs (too much/too many).

Ex. 17. Spot the errors (one sentence - one mistake).

1. Is there many ink left in my pen? 2. Did the storm do many damage to crops? 3. Is there a great many coal left in the shed? 4. Were much passengers sea-sick? 5. We have not a few time to get to the station. 6. I haven't got a good deal of books in my library. 7. This train stops at a little stations. 8. We didn't expect a good deal of people to visit us. 9. We haven't got many work to do today. 10. May I have a few wine, please?

The Category Of Case.

Case is the inflected form of the noun indication the grammatical relation in which the noun stands to other parts of the sentence.

English nouns have a two case system: **the common case** (the basic form) and **the genitive case** (the possessive case).

The genitive case of all singular nouns /which are used in it, of course of those plurals which don't have the number morpheme – s/ is built up by means of the morpheme –s which is added to the base form .For example:

- Singular: boy-boy's
- Student-student's
- Plural: man-men's
- Woman-woman's/women's

In the genitive of personal names ending in sibilants the morpheme –s is optional, but the apostrophe and the pronunciation /-iz/ are obligatory. For example:

Common case	Possessive case
Burns	Burn's/-iz/ poems
Boz	Boz's/-iz/ sketches
Fox	Fox's/-iz/ articles

The form of the possessive/genitive case

1. 's is used with singular nouns and plural nouns not ending in s: *a man's job, the people's choice, men's work, the crew's quarters, a woman's intuition, the horse's mouth, the butcher's (shop), the*

bull's horns, a child's voice, women's clothes, the children's room, Russia's exports

2. A simple apostrophe (') is used with plural nouns ending in **s**: *a girls' school, the students' hostel, the eagles' nest, the Smiths' car*

3. Classical names ending in **s** usually add only the apostrophe: *Pythagoras' Theorem, Archimedes' Law, Sophocles' plays*

4. Other names ending in **s** can take 's or the ('): *Mr Jones's (w Mr Jones' house), Yeats's (or Yeats') poems*

5. With compounds, the last word takes the 's: *my brother-in-law's guitar*

Names consisting of several words are treated similarly: *Henry the Eighth's wives, the Prince of Wales's helicopter*

's can also be used after initials: *the PM's secretary, the MP's briefcase, the VIP's escort*

Note that when the possessive case is used, the article before the person or thing 'possessed' disappears: *the daughter of the politician = the politician's daughter, the intervention of America = America's intervention, the plays of Shakespeare = Shakespeare's plays*

Use of the possessive/genitive case and of + noun

The possessive case is chiefly used of people, countries or animals as shown above- It can also be used:

1. Of ships and boats: *the ship's bell. the yacht's mast*

2. Of planes, trains, cars and other vehicles, though here the of construction is safer: *a glider's wings or the wings of a glider, the train's heating system or the heating system of the train*

3. In time expressions: *a week's holiday, today's paper, tomorrow's weather, in two years' time, ten minutes' break, two hours' delay; a ten-minute break, a two-hour delay* are also possible: *We have ten minutes' break/a ten-minute break.*

4. In expressions of money + worth: *£1 's worth of stamps ten dollars' worth of ice-cream*

5. With for + noun + sake: *for heaven's sake, for goodness' sake*

6. In a few expressions such as: *a stone's throw Journey's end the water's edge*

7. We can say either *a winter's day* or *a winter day* and *a summer's day* or *a summer day*, but we cannot make spring or autumn possessive, except when they are personified: *Autumn's return*.

8. Sometimes certain nouns can be used in the possessive case without the second noun. *a/the baker's/butcher's/chemist's/florist's etc.* can mean *'a/the baker's/butcher's etc. shop'*. Similarly, *a/the house agent's/travel agent's etc. (office)* and *the dentist 's/doctor 's/vet 's (surgery)*: *You can buy it at the chemist's. He's going to the dentist's.*

Names of the owners of some businesses can be used similarly: *Sotheby's, Claridge's*

Some very well-known shops etc. call themselves by the possessive form and some drop the apostrophe: *Foyles, Harrods*.

Names of people can sometimes be used similarly to mean ... 's house': *We had lunch at Bill's. We met at Ann's.*

of + noun is used for possession:

1. When the possessor noun is followed by a phrase or clause: *The boys ran about, obeying the directions of a man with a whistle. I took the advice of a couple I met in the train and hired a car.*

2. With inanimate 'possessors', except those listed above: *the walls of the town, the roof of the church, the keys of the car*

However, it is often possible to replace noun X + of + noun Y by noun Y + noun X in that order: *the town walls, the church roof, the car keys*

The first noun becomes a sort of adjective and is not made plural: *the roofs of the churches = the church roofs*

Unfortunately noun + of + noun combinations cannot always be replaced in this way and the student is advised to use of when in doubt.

Exercises: THE NOUN. CATEGORY OF CASE

Ex. 1. Write the words in transcription.

Alice's, a boy's, Ted's, a cat's, a dog's, a parrot's, a doll's, Kate's, John's, a son's, mother's, Mary's, a sister's, a pupil's.

Ex. 2. Use the following word combinations in the Genitive (Possessive) Case.

Pattern: The daughter of Alice —* Alice's daughter.

The birthday of my son, the ball of my brother, the questions of the child, the dog of our niece, the new tie of my husband, the little sister of Ann, the book of my nephew, the photo of her child, the face of the girl, the cassette of her elder brother, the grandchildren of Andrew, the car of the businessman.

Ex. 3. Change according to the pattern.

Pattern: The book of the pupils —* the pupils' books.

The clothes of the boys, the parents of the girls, the conclusions of the experts, the toys of the children, the questions of the teachers, the dictionaries of the students, the letters of my friends, the houses of my relatives.

Ex. 4. Translate the phrases into Russian.

the women's hats, the Smiths' bedroom, my friend's father, the horse's leg, my brother-in-law's library, Peter and Helen's flat, the children's mother, Jack's friend, my sister's husband, the boys' books.

Ex. 5. Translate into English.

Друг Петра, комната друга, комнаты девочек, книги друга моего сына, учитель её дочери, сумка моей мамы, старшая сестра Марии, новая книга этого писателя, игрушка ребёнка, ответ студента.

Ex. 6. Translate these sentences into English.

1. Мне нравится квартира Анны. 2. Сын моей сестры хорошо играет на пианино. 3. Он даёт уроки брату Ника. 4. Возьми тетрадь Макса. 5. Преподаватель вернул тесты студента. 6. Чей карандаш на столе? - Нашего учителя. 7. Мне нравится новое платье моей подружки. 8. Есть ли ошибка в домашней работе моего сына? - Нет. 9. Дедушкины очки лежат на столе. 10. Машина моей племянницы - синего цвета.

Ex. 7. Translate into Russian.

Ann and John's course books, Jack and Jill's weeding, Mr. and Mrs. Smith's House, Frieda and Elton's father, Mart and Brad's car, Don and Eliza's children, Chris and Jane's daughter, Mike and Adam's parents, Alice and Nick's letters, Bill and Kate's grandchildren.

Ex. 8. Give in the Genitive Case.

Pattern: the room of Doreen and Ally—» Doreen and Ally's room.

The surname of Peter and Helen, the daughters of Charles and Diana, the house of Mr. and Mrs. Carter, the brother of Shelly and Don, the dog of Nick and Jane, the CD-players of Michael Sarah, the notebooks of Gina and Abby, the son of mister and Mrs. Grey, the uncle of Bat and Pam, the grandparents of Sam and Tib.

Ex. 9. Translate into Russian.

at the baker's, at the chemist's, at the butcher's, at the greengrocer's, at the jeweler's, at the hairdresser's, at the dentist's, at the doctor's, at the tailor's.

Ex. 10. Insert the nouns or noun phrases in the Genitive Case.

1. In Moscow I stayed ... 2. I buy cabbage ... 3. He buys bread... 4. We buy medicine ... 5. They were married... 6. She is going to ... 7. I've got an appointment...at 11.15. 8. You can't leave London without visiting ... 9. I often go to ... to look smart. 10. We buy meat...

Choose from: at St. Stephen's, at the dentist's, at the butcher's, at aunt Jane's, at the baker's, at the Watson's, at the greengrocer's, at Harrods's, at the hairdresser's, at the chemist's.

Ex. 11. Replace by the Absolute Genitive and translate them into Russian.

Pattern: one of my parents' responsibilities —* a responsibility of my parents',

one of the girls' friends, one her mother's job, one of my grandparent's requests, one of my aunt's doctors, one of the students' answers, one of her friends' parties, one of my sons' cars, one of her daughter's toys, one of my uncle's horses, one of grandmothers' recipes.

Ex. 12. Translate into English.

1. Мой словарь хороший, но у Хелен – лучше. 2. Эта книга очень интересная, но у Макса – интересней. 3. Дом Саймона большой, а у Мэри дом – уютнее. 4. Профессия Сэма опасная, но у Джейка она ещё опаснее. 5. Мое платье красивое, но у моей сестры – ещё красивее. 6. Собака моего племянника очень умная, но у Бет – ещё умнее. 7. Мой брат высокий, но брат Анны – ещё выше. 8. Её сестра очень привлекательная, но сестра Мэри ещё привлекательнее. 9. Мой текст сложный, но текст Джонатана – ещё сложнее. 10. Машина Дона очень дорогая, но у Сюзен – ещё дороже. 11. У тебя есть какие-нибудь английские книги? 12. Жена моего брата Ника уехала в Нью-Йорк. 13. Он не знает ещё решения директора. 14. Это дом мистера и миссис Хопкинс. Он очень большой и красивый. 15. Тётя моей подруги Кэйт – очень известная художница. 16. Успех компании зависти от её сотрудников. 17. Рабочий день моего палы начинается в девять утра. 18. Какого цвета глаза у Сары? 19. Один из друзей Джейн – известный политик. 20. Её друзей зовут Пэм и Джулия. 21. Чьи это кассеты? – Это кассеты Джейка и Элисон. 22. Это машина не моих родителей, это машина моего дяди. 23. Дети Дона и Аманды очень смешные. Они знают много стихотворений и интересных историй. 24. Есть у вас карта Соединённых Штатов Америки? 25. Чья это сумка? – Моя (2 варианта). 26. Двери гаража закрываются автоматически. 27. У тебя есть вчерашние газеты? 28. На прошлой неделе я был на свадьбе у Пита и Брук. 29. Дочь мистера Эванса – моя лучшая подруга.

Ex. 13. Answer the following questions.

1. What can we buy at the baker's (at the greengrocer's, at the jeweler's, at the butcher's, at chemist's)? 2. Do you often go to the hairdresser's? 3. Is it necessary to go to the dentist's? Why? 4. Where do you stay in Moscow? 5. Where would you like to stay in London?

Ex. 14. Explain the definitions according to the example.

Example: an aunt – my aunt is my mother's or my father's sister.

an uncle, a niece, nephew, a grandfather, a grandmother, a sister, a brother, a sister-in-law, a brother-in-law, a stepmother, a stepfather.

1.2. Артикль/Article

English has two articles: **the** and **a/an**. **The** is used to refer to specific or particular nouns; **a/an** is used to modify non-specific or non-particular nouns. We call **the** the *definite* article and **a/an** the *indefinite* article.

The use of **a** and **an**:

• **a** + singular noun beginning with a consonant: **a** boy; **a** car; **a** bike; **a** zoo; **a** dog

• **an** + singular noun beginning with a vowel: **an** elephant; **an** egg; **an** apple; **an** idiot; **an** orphan

• **a** + singular noun beginning with a consonant sound: **a** user (sounds like 'yoo-zer,' i.e. begins with a consonant 'y' sound, so 'a' is used); **a** university; **a** unicycle

• **an** + nouns starting with silent "h": **an** hour

• **a** + nouns starting with a pronounced "h": **a** horse

If the noun is modified by an adjective, the choice between **a** and **an** depends on the initial sound of the adjective that immediately follows the article:

• **a** broken egg
• **an** unusual problem
• **a** European country (sounds like 'yer-o-pi-an,' i.e. begins with consonant 'y' sound)

The use of **the**:

It has two variants of pronunciation [ðə] before nouns beginning with a **consonant** sound and [ði:] before nouns beginning with a **vowel** sound:

The stressed form is [d̪i:], the unstressed is [d̪ə]

ARTICLES WITH COUNTABLE NOUNS

The **indefinite** article is used:

1. When the speaker presents the object as belonging to a certain class in the meaning of «какой-нибудь», «некий». *It happened in a small town. He bought a book yesterday.*

2. When a person or a thing is mentioned for the first time. After the first reference the definite article is used. *I watched a bus as it came up our road. The bus stopped and a man got out. The man had a case in his hand. With the case the man looked like a salesman.*

3. When the noun is used in a general sense and has the meaning "every" (mainly in definitions). *A seamstress sews clothes. A horse has four legs. A palm pilot is a tiny computer.*

4. When it preserves its old original meaning of "one": a) with price, distance, frequency, measure, weight, time: *Apples are 30 rubles a kilo. I'll be back in a month. Christmas comes but once a year. She bought half a kilo of meat.* b) in some set expressions: *to be a success, to have a look (a try, a rest, a snack) to give a lift (a chance), to make a date (a will, a mistake, a speech, a start), to play a trick etc.*

5. After the attributes such, rather, quite. *He is such a rich man. She is quite a clever girl. It was rather an interesting film.*

Note! With uncountable nouns and nouns in plural no article is used. *They were rather strange children.*

6. Before a direct object. *Sue wants a husband and three kids. All the world loves a lover.*

7. Before the subject in constructions It is/was/will be... There is/was/will be... This is/was/will be.... *It will be a good chance. There's a black sheep in every flock. This is a friend of mine.*

But. It is **the** novel our teacher mentioned last time.

The **definite** article is used:

1. When the object or group of objects is unique or considered to be unique: *the earth, the sea, the sky, the equator, the stars*

2. Before a noun which has become definite as a result of being mentioned a second time: His car struck a tree; you can still see the mark on the tree.

3. Before a noun made definite by the addition of a phrase or clause: *the girl in blue, the man with the banner, the boy that I met, the place where I met him*

4. Before a noun which by reason of locality can represent only one particular thing: *Ann is in the garden*, (the garden of this house) *Please pass the wine*, (the wine on the table) Similarly: *the postman* (the one who comes to us), *the car* (our car), *the newspaper* (the one we read).

5. Before superlatives and first, second etc. used as adjectives or pronouns, and only: *the first (week), the best day, the only way*

6. When the situation itself makes the object definite (the speaker and the listener know what particular object is meant). *The exam was very tense. The lecturer was very strict and the students were nervous. The grass is always greener on the other side of the fence.*

7. When the speaker uses an attribute pointing out a particular object – a particularizing attribute. *This is the house that Jack built. The pictures in this book are very interesting.* **Note!** A particularizing attribute shouldn't be confused with a descriptive attribute which gives additional information about the object. *I have got an interesting film which was directed by S. Mikhalkov. He went to the forest where a lot of birds were singing.*

8. When nouns are used in a generic sense (as a type or genre). *The horse was domesticated many centuries ago. The computer microchip was invented in 1958.* **Note!** With the nouns **man, mankind, humanity** no article is used. *What shall we tell mankind? Man is helpless in this case.* With the noun woman the definite article or no article is used. *Only (the) woman could do it.*

9. With nouns modified by: **a)** some adjectives (same, all, wrong, right, very, next, last, following, only, whole, main, principle, central, present, former, latter, necessary, opposite, previous, lower, upper, usual, so-called): *Had Gooch not been injured in the last two*

games. The only virtue of the latter newspaper techniques is to bring an event to the attention of a reader.

Note! No article is used when nouns **day, night, morning, afternoon, week, and year** are modified by the adjective **next** denoting future and **last** denoting past. *I'll be back next week.*

b) adjectives in the superlative degree: *Dracula is the most popular film character. There are over 160 Dracula films.*

c) ordinal numerals: My flat is on the fifth floor.

10. With substantivized adjectives and participles (the rich, the old, the wounded etc.) *There's one law for the rich and another for the poor.*

11. With collective singular nouns denoting social classes, social groups, nationalities (the public, the peasantry, the British etc.) What are the British like?

12. With the words the country, the mountains, the seaside, the weekend, the cinema, the theatre, the police, the army, the post office, the bank, the doctor, the dentist though we don't mean some particular object or person. *He went to the police to claim that he had been robbed.*

Geographical use of the

There are some specific rules for using **the** with geographical nouns.

Do not use **the** before:

- names of most countries/territories: *Italy, Mexico, Bolivia*; however, *the Netherlands, the Dominican Republic, the Philippines, the United States*

- names of cities, towns, or states: *Seoul, Manitoba, Miami*

- names of streets: *Washington Blvd., Main St.*

- names of lakes and bays: *Lake Titicaca, Lake Erie* except with a group of lakes like *the Great Lakes*

- names of mountains: *Mount Everest, Mount Fuji* except with ranges of mountains like **the Andes** or **the Rockies** or unusual names like **the Matterhorn**

- names of continents (Asia, Europe)
- names of islands (Easter Island, Maui, Key West) except with island chains like **the** Aleutians, **the** Hebrides, or **the** Canary Islands

Do use **the** before:

- names of rivers, oceans and seas: **the Nile**, **the Pacific**
- points on the globe: **the Equator**, **the North Pole**
- geographical areas: **the Middle East**, **the West**
- deserts, forests, gulfs, and peninsulas: **the Sahara**, **the Persian Gulf**, **the Black Forest**, **the Iberian Peninsula**

ARTICLES WITH UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

I. ARTICLES WITH NAMES OF SUBSTANCES

No article is used

In a general sense: *Blood is thicker than water*

When a noun is modified by a descriptive attribute: *I don't like bitter beer. I prefer red wine.*

The definite article is used

When the definite quantity of substance or substance in some definite place is meant: *Everybody liked the soup she cooked yesterday.*

Substances are treated like countables

To denote a kind or a variety of substance: *He drank only green Ceylon teas.*

To denote a portion of food or drink: *He ordered two icecreams for kids and a coffee for himself.*

To denote an object made of a certain substance (with *wood, paper, iron, glass, tin, cloth*): *There was a glass of water on the table.*

Countables are treated like substances

After the nouns **patch, bit, piece, scrap**: *I will always remember the patch of yard where an old kennel would stand.*

When such nouns as a duck, a lamb, a chicken, a fish, a turkey etc. denote flesh used for food: *We had cold chicken for dinner.*

II. ARTICLES WITH ABSTRACT NOUNS

No article is used

In a general sense: *Charity begins at home.*

If there is an attribute expressing:

a) degree (great, huge, endless, perfect, complete, immense etc.): *He had infinite power over me.*

b) time (modern, ancient, daily, eternal, further, final etc.): *I like modern art.*

c) nationality (English, Russian etc.): *He is fond of Italian music.*

d) authenticity (real, genuine, symbolic): *It was real hatred.*

e) social characteristic (capitalist, feudal etc.): *Feudal law was not just.*

The indefinite article is used

If a certain aspect of an abstract noun is meant: *His face expressed a dramatic eagerness. She had a grace which impressed her friends.*

When an abstract noun is modified by the adjectives **certain** or **peculiar**: *He felt a certain impatience.*

With the nouns **pity, shame, disgrace, pleasure, relief, comfort, disappointment**:

a) in construction with **it** as a subject: *It's a relief I've passed the final exam.*

b) in exclamatory sentences after **what**: *What a disappointment!*

The definite article is used

When the abstract idea refers to a definite situation or object:
He didn't like the rudeness with which Jane treated him.

With substantivized adjectives (the unusual, the beautiful, the supernatural, the unknown): *You shouldn't think of the unbearable.*

With the nouns **the present, the past, the future, the singular, the plural**: *During the honeymoon they were planning the future.*

But: in future means «впередь»: *Please be more careful in future.*

The Use of the Indefinite Article with nouns in Set Expressions

a lot of	много
a great (a good) deal of	много
a great number of	много
a few	несколько
a little	немного
all of a sudden	внезапно
as a result	в результате
as a matter of fact	фактически
as busy as a bee	трудолюбивый как пчела
as wet as a fish	мокрый как рыба
as hungry as a wolf	голодный как волк
for a short (long) time	в течение долгого (короткого) вре-
in a loud (low) voice	мени
it is a pity	громким (тихим) голосом
it is a pleasure	жаль
to be in a hurry	приятно
to be at a loss	спешить
at a glance	растеряться
to have a good time	с одного взгляда
to have a mind	хорошо проводить время
to have a headache	намереваться
to have a cold	испытывать головную боль
to go for a walk	простудиться
to take a seat	ходить на прогулку
it is a shame	сесть
to get in a fury	стыдно

to tell a lie	прийти в ярость говорить неправду
---------------	--------------------------------------

The Use of the definite Article with nouns in Set Expressions

<p>in the morning in the afternoon in the evening in the original in the country it is out of the question on the right (left) on the one (other) hand on the whole the day before yesterday the day after tomorrow the other day to tell the truth to pass the time to go to the cinema (theatre) to take the trouble to do smth. to play the piano (the violin, the guitar) to keep the house to be on the safe side what is the time?</p>	<p>утром днем вечером в оригинале за городом об этом не может быть и ре- чи направо (налево) с одной (другой) стороны в целом позавчера послезавтра на днях говорить правду провести время ходить в кино (театр) потрудиться сделать что- либо играть на пианино (скрипке, гитаре) вести хозяйство на всякий случай который час?</p>
--	--

Nouns in Set Expressions Used without an Article

<p>at night at home at school (college, uni- versity) at work at hand at dawn at sunset at first sight at war at peace</p>	<p>ночью дома в школе (колледже, университете) на работе под рукой на рассвете на закате с первого взгляда в состоянии войны в состоянии мира наконец-то</p>
--	--

<p>at last at once at present by bus (tram, train, boat, plane) by air (sea, land) by post</p>	<p>сразу в настоящее время автобусом (трамваем, поездом, лодкой, самолетом) по воздуху (по морю, по земле) по почте</p>
<p>by air mail by heart by chance by accident by mistake by name day after day (day by day) day and night from morning to (till) night from beginning to end from time to time in advance in (on) time in debt in fact in conclusion in private in future in trouble on board a ship on deck on sale on credit on foot on (one's) mind on terms out of sight, out of mind side by side</p>	<p>авиапочтой наизусть случайно случайно по ошибке по имени день за днем днем и ночью с утра до вечера от начала до конца время от времени, иногда заранее вовремя в долгу фактически в заключение наедине, конфиденциально в будущем в беде на борту корабля на палубе в продаже в кредит пешком на уме на условиях с глаз долой, из сердца вон бок о бок</p>

Exercises: THE ARTICLE

Ex. 1. Explain the use of the indefinite article. Translate into Russian.

1. He had met a young woman at a party, named Joan, an actress. 2. At that moment a light flashed in and a voice yelled: "Get out of here!" 3. A week or two passed but he hadn't got a job. 4. Our manager has just finished an all-afternoon conference with a media representation. 5. A traveler must be able to walk long distances. 6. In a minute she glanced at Peter and saw a tear on his cheek. 7. Why a girl has to be silly to catch a husband? 8. Not a word was spoken, not a sound was made. 9. It's dark here and I can't see what you've brought. Is it a book or a magazine? 10. Nobody's love is as constant as a mother's. 11. He has always been a good neighbour to me. 12. An hour in the morning is worth two in the evening. 13. I wish I were a poet to describe it to you. 14. Only a month now remains and not a moment must be lost.

Ex. 2. Insert a, some, any where necessary.

1. For ... minute or so we sat in silence. 2. I have ... long story to tell you. Sit down and let's have ... chat. 3. ... day or two ago there came ... letter from your husband. 4. As ... man sows, so shall he reap. 5. It's not ... large house. 6. For half ... minute not ... word was said by them. 7. ... letter to ... soldier can be sent without ... stamp. 8. ... drug store in the USA is ... shop where one can get not only ... medicine but also ... drinks and ... snacks. 9. There remained ... toasts, ... rolls and ... buns on the plate. 10. Do you have ... apple or ... peach? I always prefer ... apples to...peaches. 11. ... jacket usually has...breast pocket. 12. London is...pleasant town to ... lonely man. 13. Give me ... hammer. I bought ... picture and want to fix it.

Ex. 3. Insert the article.

1. We were met by ... handsome young man. ... man was ... guide. 2. There came ... knock and in ... moment we saw ... girl enter ... room. 3. He is ... young artist. 4. He gave her ... cigarette. 5. We wrote ... dictation yesterday. ... dictation was long. 6. There is ... big sofa in ... room and ... little picture over ... sofa. 7. She isn't here. She left ... room ... minute ago. 8. One day she got ... letter from her brother. She answered ... letter without saying ... word to anybody. 9. Do you like ... dogs? 10. Don't tease ... dog. 11. Never try to stroke

... dog if you don't know it. 12. How many flats are there in ... house?
13. Do you know ... boy in ... corner?

Ex. 4. Analyse the use of the article in italic. Translate into Russian.

1. All the four sides and angles of *the square* are equal.
2. Fortune flavours *the brave*. 3. *The tiger* has always had the reputation of being a man-eater. 4. Surely he had suffered everything that *man* can endure. 5. *The public* hasn't been told the whole truth.
6. *The Russian people* are doing their best to preserve peace.
7. *People* who pick rare flowers are vandals. 8. Conan Doyle is a master of *the detective story*. 9. *The old* are often helpless.

Ex. 5. Translate into Russian.

1. Недавно я познакомился с одним музыкантом. 2. У вас есть какой-нибудь журнал почитать? 3. Мы не знали, что здесь есть озеро. Озеро глубокое. 4. Это был большой белый дом. Дом был окружен красивым садом. 5. Дом построен два года назад. 6. Мое любимое дерево - дуб. 7. Возле дома рос старый дуб. 8. У нас сегодня яблоки на третье. 9. Яблоки на столе. 10. Мы получили письмо об этом после того, как он уехал. 11. На столе было письмо. 12. У тебя есть нож? 13. Возьми нож и отрежь хлеба.

Ex. 6. Fill in the articles (articles with nouns, modified by certain adjectives, numerals, pronouns).

1. ... only trouble is that nobody will believe us. 2. On ... right side of the street he saw ... old friend of his. 3. They had met first in the South, where they were staying in ... same hotel. 4. What was ... first thing you hated? 5. ... old people say that it's ... hottest summer the town had ever known. 6. They got married ... last year. 7. She is ... best woman I know. 8. Sorry, you've dialed ... wrong number. 9. Margaret is ... only child in the family. 10. She came in surrounded by ... usual crowd. 11. You should get on ... next train to New York. 12. Find out what has! happened to my daughter in ... last six months. 13. He won ... first prize in the race. 14. While the Smiths continued to talk ... other guests went to the pool. 15. Some people were bathing in the sea ... other holiday-makers were lying on the sand. 16. Turn to ... page 5. 17. ... three children came up to the table. 18. I have ... other cup of coffee! 19. I was very thirsty and took

... second cup of tea, then ... third one and only after ... fifth I felt that I had had enough.

Ex. 7. Translate into English.

1. Глава 15 начинается на странице 67. 2. Вы смотрели обе серии этого! фильма? 3. За первым взрывом последовал второй, затем третий. 4. Вы не могли бы зайти ко мне на будущей неделе? 5. Подожди меня на следующей станции. 6. Я ищу работу последние 5 месяцев. 7. Вас пригласили на премьеру? 8. Это тот же самый фильм, который мы смотрели в субботу. 9. Вы именно тот человек, который мне нужен. 10. Он написал еще один роман. 11. Тигр - одно из самых опасных животных на земле. 12. Она чрезвычайно красивая девушка. 13. Вы единственный ребенок в семье? 14. Прошу вас сделать все необходимые изменения в статье.

Ex. 8. Insert articles with nouns modified by descriptive and limiting attributes.

1. We want ... place where we can live in peace and freedom. 2. ... man, who had preceded her to the entrance, opened the door. 3. He was ... man who had never had ... slightest doubt as to his abilities. 4. ... chorus of young voices repeating the lesson came from the classroom. 5. ... road he took soon brought him to ... street where fishermen lived. 6. They began searching their father's pockets for ... presents he had promised them. 7. ... people familiar with these places often miss the road on such evenings. 8. Many years had passed since ... day I last placed my foot there. 9. ... walls were covered with ... pictures I had collected from different countries. 10. He doesn't look like ... man who would do mean things. 11. Maple street was ... wide green avenue which ran north. 12. Kelly counted...figures still on the board. 13. I was like ... child brought to school or ... untrained maid who has never left home before. 14. We went down ... twisting road without ... word. 15. I know ... good place to eat round the corner. 16. This is not ... point to discuss. 17. Tired with ... desire to escape she hesitated.

Ex. 9. Translate into English.

1. Они вошли в вагон, в котором не было свободных мест.
2. В вагоне, в который они вошли, не было свободных мест.
3. В городе строится новый стадион, который будет вмещать десять тысяч зрителей.
4. Где проект нового стадиона, который строится в вашем городе?
5. Он закрыл дверь, ведущую в зал.
6. Это была Виржиния, с шарфом на голове и в сером пальто.
7. У этой семьи очень хорошая сиделка
8. Он послал ей только записку, в которой сообщалось, что он возвращается.
9. Он не смотрел на лицо человека, о котором говорил.
10. Его не интересовали новости, которые мы ему сообщили.
11. Я знаю женщину, которая сдает квартиру.

Ex. 10. Insert articles with nouns modified by nouns in the common and genitive case, prepositional phrases.

1. What is ... man's role on this earth?
2. She was ... headmaster's wife.
3. She kept looking at Carlton's calm face.
4. John wore ... telegraph messenger's coat.
5. If any of ... Britain's five major plants are closed it'll influence greatly...industry of the country.
6. She suddenly saw ... girl's face break into laughter.
7. The books were so much a part of ... room's decoration, that I wouldn't take even one.
8. He would gladly take ... hero's death.
9. There was ... telephone line running along the road.
10. ... mill worker said that they would work all summer.
11. He entered ... Danson bank with shaking knees.
12. He might have been given...Nobel Prize for that.
13. ... school bell was his secret fear.
14. She wore, jacket of ... same colour made of velvet.
15. She opened ...bottle of scotch.
16. ... mile of cotton fields smiled up to a warm sun.
17. As he reached ... top of the stairs he saw ... woman of about fifty.
18. They decided to rest at ... foot of the mountain.
19. ... shadows of trees were getting longer as the sun went to the west.
20. ... friend of your brother's wants to see you.
21. They are supposed to come to ... city of London ... next week.

Ex. 11. Revision. Analyze the use of the articles with nouns modified by attributes.

- 1 After supper he took the book on European politics which he had shared with Tommy the previous evening.
2. The woman looked at me there was a glint of humour in the dark eyes.
3. She was the

smartest girl in the class. 4. "The most dangerous of all is my wife", whispered the young man. 5. He is a most experienced doctor. 6. She is as spoiled as if she were an only child. 7. Next year I'm going to enter the university. 8. My mother needed me more than the Other members of the family. 9. He's been invited to a first night in the theatre. 10. I was thinking of other people in the same position. 11. They lived in a newly painted house. 12. He took the cigarette which I offered him. 13. Is there a butcher's shop in the street? 14. The boy's voice was heard quite well. 15. Suddenly we heard the shot of a gun. 16. **She** took a third helping of the pie.

Ex. 12. Insert articles with material nouns.

1. These flowers should be put in ... water. 2. As she opened the window she knocked down the vase. ... water began to run down on the floor. 3. For breakfast he took only ... bread and cheese. 4. She looked hungrily at...bread that her landlady had put on the table. 5. Russia sells ... oil and gas to many countries. 6. ... coal of Newcastle is rich in ... carbon. 7. My heart felt as heavy as ... lead. 8. She hoped she could save enough money to buy...new furniture. 9. ... furniture they had was enough for a much bigger house. 10. Her address was written on the piece of ... paper in ... violet ink. 11. "What would you like to drink? - Two teas and...coffee, please." 12. ... sandwich consists of two slices of ... bread with ... meat, ... fish and ... cheese. 13. I don't like ... fish. It's not fresh. 14. ... fried fish is often eaten with ... chips.

Ex. 13. Insert articles, explain.

1. ... tea is cultivated in the south of our country. 2. This is ... tea I'm probably fond of. 3. On the beach we saw children making castles in ... wet sand. 4. Sacks of ... sand were taken up in the balloon. 5. You really must stay to ... supper. You'll get ... very nice wine from Italy. 6. Nothing like ... cold water, ... fresh air or ... sunshine made any appeal to him. 7. ... air of that seaside town is very fresh. 8. ... water is precious in this region and must be paid for. 9. Don't drink from this pond ... water is stale. 10. Don't wear ... black lace or velvet while you are young. 11. ... fat brown goose lay at one end of the table, at ... other end lay ... great ham, and beside it was a round

of ... spiced beef. 12. It was ... stewed fruit and ... ice-cream to follow. ... ice-cream was rather melted.

Ex. 14. Explain the use of the articles with material nouns.

1. She entered the room, the silk of her dress making a slight rustle in the silence. 2. I like French wines which are so light. 3. We must take a rug, a lamp, a soap, a brush, toothpaste. 4. I was drinking a tea. 5. If you want to please the boy buy him an ice-cream. 6. I must go now. The tea was lovely. 7. The kettle was of cast iron. 8. He prepared a light breakfast -a ham and a cheese on bread, lettuce and mayonnaise, a glass of milk and a coke for later. 9. The strong black coffee that she had made was just what we needed. 10. This is a light French wine. 11. I saw him in the bar drinking a beer. 12. There's a beautiful display of cottons in the shop window.

Ex. 15. Translate into English.

1. Мои туфли полны песка. 2. Не сиди на песке, он мокрый. 3. Этот книжный шкаф сделан из дуба. 4. Я не люблю минеральную воду и предпочитаю стакан крепкого чая. 5. Выпей стакан молока. 6. Выпей молока. 7. Выпей молоко. 8. Кофе слишком крепкий, я не люблю крепкий кофе. 9. Холодная вода освежила его после долгого сна. 10. Вы получили табак, который я послал вам? 11. Вы не могли бы принести мне стакан сока. 12. Когда суп был съеден, он взял газету. 13. В баре мы заказали два пива и одни виски.

Ex. 16. Translate into English.

1. Земля и крыши домов были покрыты снегом. Снег был очень глубоким. 2. Она не любила вареную говядину. 3. Ей не понравилась вареная говядина. 4. Он стал белый как снег. 5. На ужин у нас была холодная телятина. 6. Суп на кухне, принеси его, пожалуйста. 7. Мне хочется есть, дай мне супу. 8. Его сестра вязала что-то из красной шерсти. 9. Я часто провожу время на свежем воздухе. 10. Я хочу купить синий бархат на платье. 11. Он извзял ее в мраморе. 12. Это хорошее французское вино.

Ex. 17. Insert the articles with abstract nouns.

1. There was ... silence for a few minutes. 2. Jim was the first to break ... silence. 3. After all these hours of strain they relapsed into ... tired silence. 4. No sooner had 1 opened the window when ... light flooded the room. 5. ... grayish light came through the hole. 6. ... light of the fire helped us to find our way. 7. I feel I'm living ... dull life. 8. ... life is too short to waste it on arguing. 9. His parents do not approve of ... life, he lives. 10. ... strange feeling rose inside of him. 11. ... feeling that everything was lost, suddenly became unbearable. 12. We both respect ... firmness.

Ex. 18. Insert the articles with abstract nouns.

1. They were surprised at ... curious silence into which he had fallen. 2. He is particularly interested in ... ancient sculpture. 3. When in distress, people look for ... friendship. 4. After ... long silence he began his story. 5. I have ... perfect confidence in him. 6. Our city has ... population of two million people. 7. Suddenly 1 felt ... sharp pain in my chest. ... pain was really strong. 8. ... curiosity killed the cat. 9. What we need now is ... time. 10. ... time we have is certainly not enough. 11. The lights in the garden suddenly went out. In ... darkness we felt lost. 12. ... detective genre is very popular among the readers.

Ex. 19. Insert the articles with abstract nouns.

1. What ... beautiful music he is playing! 2. What ... good idea you have! 3. What ... fine weather! 4. It's, ... pity you haven't seen the film. 5. I always appreciate ... good advice. 6. What ... shame you didn't write down his address. 7. What ... weather like today? 8. If you want ... detailed information on the subject turn to the manager. 9. ... good health is one of his advantages. 10. It **was ...** cold **bleak** weather. 11. What ... silly mistake you've made! 12. What ... disgrace!

Ex. 20. Insert the articles with abstract nouns.

1. The book is about the man who lives ... double life. 2. Michael found Russian literature the most interesting subject here. 3. What a noble thing ... courage is! 4. You had to admit that he had ... certain shrewdness. 5. She guessed from ... silence with which he rang the bell, that something was wrong. 6. He left the room with ... strange feeling. 7. The flight was cancelled because of ... bad weather. 8. ... modern science is a wonderful thing. 9. Do you believe in ...

supernatural? 10. ... feeling of ... superiority made him nervous. 11. She was glad to escape for a few moments ... solitude and sadness of her life. 12. His footsteps were heard at ... distance of several yards. 13. ... English natural history seemed familiar to her. It appeared that she had studied ... botany of the English woods. 14. When they were together, it was ... pure happiness.

Ex. 21. Explain the use of the articles with abstract nouns.

1. Such weather makes everybody disgusting. 2. I have no other feelings than the feeling of sympathy to you. 3. She has attached to youth and hope and now they failed her more than age and despair. 4. There's a peculiar tension about her. 5. In Italy they studied Renaissance and Baroque architecture. 6. He is insensible to kindness. 7. He asked her about it with intense interest. 8. He smiled for the first time during a period of many hours. 9. She sang so low, that the wind was as music. 10. She was a woman dressed with shabby neatness. 11. He felt honest admiration for her. 12. He had to surrender to the inevitable. 13. A dull rage rose in her. 14. Her husband got a salary of twenty pounds a week.

Ex. 22. Think of situations to the following sentences.

1. Prosperity makes friends, adversity tries them. 2. That is the love that makes the world a miracle. 3. They will build a new life somewhere else. 4. It was better not to think of the past. Nothing could alter that. 5. Curiosity killed the cat. 6. No news is good news.

Ex. 23. Translate into English.

1. Гостеприимство характерная черта русского народа. 2. Иностранцы всегда поражаются гостеприимству русского народа. 3. Весенняя природа часто вдохновляла молодого художника. 4. на расстоянии двадцати шагов мы увидели странную фигуру. 5. Он чувствовал некоторую неловкость при встрече с ней. 6. Студенты второго курса должны знать английскую историю. 7. Где деньги, которые я тебе оставил вчера? 8. Меня удивило спокойствие этой женщины. 9. Не выходите в такую погоду, если плохо себя чувствуете. 10. Я распечатал письмо с большой осторожностью. 11. Молчание раздражало каждого, кто сидел за столом. 12. Будьте счастливы в жизни, которую выбрали.

Ex. 24. Translate into English.

1. Странно, что вы надеетесь найти здесь поддержку.
2. Ему не нравилась вежливость, с которой она обращалась к нему.
3. Спасибо за хороший совет.
4. Все народы мира борются против войны.
5. Война, в которой гибнут люди, не может быть справедливой.
6. Молчаливая война никого не удивила.
7. Вчера мы весь вечер слушали русскую народную музыку.
8. Как жаль, что ты не сможешь выступить на соревнованиях.
9. Деньги интересовали его все больше и больше, когда он начал делать эту работу.
10. Я не уверен, хорошие ли это новости или плохие.
11. Какая отвратительная погода!
12. Неожиданность нашего прихода ошеломила всех.
13. Мальчик сидел на дереве на высоте нескольких футов.
14. Это вопрос принципа, и мы должны обсудить его до того, как примем решение.

Ex. 25. Explain the use of the articles with nouns in some syntactic positions.

1. She was a good hostess.
2. Davis, the owner of the bar, introduced him.
3. I feel hot, Doctor.
4. I was still child enough to believe him".
5. What a pleasant man!
6. You are not the person you claimed to be.
7. He was appointed guardian.
8. Mr. Johnson, chairman of the committee, received me in the office.
9. She was wife of the manager of the firm.

Ex. 26. Insert articles with nouns in set expressions.

1. I'm thinking about traveling to Boston by ... train next month.
2. Could you describe the situation in ... detail?
3. He plays ... piano in the band.
4. He seems to have read all English classics in ... original.
5. **He** was always in ... debt.
6. She sent a letter by ... post.
7. I'd like to hear your playing ... violin from ... time to ... time.
8. I have never told him anything but ... truth.
9. He takes everything too much to ... heart and very often takes ... offence.
10. Don't do it in ... hurry.
11. "On ... whole, I liked the performance", he said in ... loud voice.
12. On ... one hand, it's easier to travel by ... plain, on ... other hand traveling by ... sea is much more exciting.
13. He fell in love with the car at ... first sight.
14. If you tell it to her, she will fly into ... passion.

Ex. 27. Make up dialogues, using set expressions.

Ex. 28. Insert the articles with nouns denoting unique thing.

1. The huge disk of ... moon was rising in ... east. 2. The clouds broke away and we had the advantage of ... full moon. 3. Magellan made the first voyage round ... world. 4. Quite ... new world opened before him. 5. The night was so dark that the sailors couldn't distinguish neither ... sky nor ... sea. 6. ... sea was sparkling under ... cloudless sky. 7. ... clear midday sky was suddenly overcast by heavy clouds. 8. ... high noon sun was incredibly strong. 9. We live in such ... mysterious universe, don't we? 10. I kept my eyes on ... horizon, sharp against the bright blue of ... winter sky. 11. ... moon hung low in ... sky like a yellow skull.

Ex. 29. Insert articles with nouns denoting names of seasons and times of the day and night.

1. I should remember the rose garden in ... summer and the birds that sang at ... dawn. 2. The weather is often wet and cold in ... early summer. 3. ... morning was bright and sunny. 4. It all happened on ... bright and sunny morning. 5. When ... morning came we were already far out in the sea. 6. It was ... early morning, the sun had just risen. 7. It was early in ... morning when a loud knock at the door took me out of bed. 8. We returned late in ... afternoon. 9. It was late in ... afternoon. 10. You see, ... winter was very hard for peasants. 11. It was ... very dark evening for ... summer. 12. The navigation will reopen in ... spring. 13. ... autumn of 1914 was very warm. 14. It was ... summer and the place broke up in red flowers. 15. It had been ... wet day, but now the rain had stopped. 16. It was dusk, but I could see Mary walking across the road. 17. It was ... high noon when we reached the city. 18. I would take pills at ... night to sleep well. 19. I went to my parents on ... Sunday evening. 20. It's difficult to go to bed late at ... night and wake up early in ... morning.

Ex. 30. Translate into English.

1. В течение лета мы часто ездили за город. 2. Была поздняя осень, погода портилась. 3. Они должны были пожениться в начале весны. 4. Прошлым летом мы ездили в Шотландию. 5. Зи-

ма, которую они провели вместе, была самой счастливой в их жизни. 6. Мы пробыли за границей всю зиму. 7. Какое скучное лето ждет нас! 8. Летом 1985 года она победила на соревнованиях. 9. Была дождливая, холодная осень. 10. Поспешите! Мы должны вернуться до рассвета. 11. Вечер был холодный и ветренный. 12. Был теплый летний вечер. 13. Было раннее утро, в доме все спали. 14. В течение всей ночи он работал над статьей. 15. Я думаю о тебе с утра до вечера. 16. Ты напоминаешь мне о вечере, когда мы впервые встретились. 17. Мы приедем в Москву рано утром, проведем целый день в городе, поздно вечером сядем на поезд и на следующий день к ночи вернемся домой.

Ex. 31. Insert the articles with nouns denoting meals.

1. Before ... breakfast I take a stroll in the park. 2. John prepared ... very special supper. 3. I have not enough money to buy ... dinner at such an expensive restaurant. 4. We all came to ... lunch at the appointed time. 5. ... dinner was excellent, but we couldn't eat much. 6. We had cold turkey for ... lunch that day. 7. She entered the room and said that ... supper was ready. 8. She gave ... dinner to celebrate her daughter's engagement. 9. As I sat at ... breakfast I noticed that it had stopped raining. 10. As soon as she was dressed she sat down to ... light French breakfast. 11. It was during the first part of ... diner that he was quiet. 12. I'm afraid I have to cancel ... dinner tonight.

Ex. 32. Insert the articles.

1. Six month in ... bed was a very long time. 2. I'm in my second year in ... medical school. 3. It's worse than ... prison, because in ... prison you can have a cell for yourself. 4. I'm going to treat you to the best lunch in ... town. 5. It's time for you to go to ... bed. 6. He was in ... hospital because of some serious disease. 7. She was a clever girl and was doing well at ... school. 8. John lay back in ... narrow hospital bed and was thinking what had happened. 9. After I left the office I drove into ... town. 10. I had known him slightly in ... high school. 11. ... bed was empty and there was nobody in the room. 12. ... prison where I worked was a big one. 13. The last time I saw her she was in ... prison for theft.

Ex. 33. Translate into English.

1. По субботам у них бывают гости к ужину. 2. В этом кафе вы всегда можете получить горячий завтрак. 3. Почему вы так быстро вернулись из города? 4. Я не пойду в школу сегодня, я забыл выучить текст. 5. Что у нас будет к ужину. 6. Мы заказали обед из трех блюд. 7. Школа находилась в деловой части города. 8. Мне пришлось провести ночь в тюрьме. 9. Он учится в вечерней школе. 10. Мы позавтракали рано утром. Завтрак состоял из яичницы и чая. 11. Как долго вы пробыли в больнице. 12. Возможно, он был в итальянской тюрьме. 13. Его отправили в среднюю школу в соседний город.

Ex. 34. Explain the use of the articles with names of persons.

1 Christine was now inclined to be kinder to him. 2. She looked into her mirror and saw a prettier Mary that she had seen before. 3. Wherever the Rayns went they tried to stick together. 4. "I'm at the apartment of Mrs Adams. - The Mrs Adams who works for the state department?" 5. When a Jones sees a black oat it can either mean good fortune or bad luck. 6. Their nurse was a Miss Robinson, quite a nice girl. 7. When yesterday poor Jane spoke of a new dress, mother got very angry. 8. When I went out I saw the cheerful Peter, who always makes me smile. 9. John is handsome. 10. I couldn't help thinking of my problem as I looked at a Titian in the museum.

Ex. 35. Insert the articles with names of persons.

I. Even his closest friends - ... little John and ... Scarlet never asked him about his plans. 2. This was ... Jodie with whom you should be on friendly terms. 3. And when he allowed ... ex Mrs Smith to divorce him, he decided to write a divorce settlement. 4. I'm not certain that...Peter who wrote to me is now ... same Peter I had known for years. 5. ... old Jane was nervous and drank much. 6. Mr Bossing smiled and said: «Why, you are quite ... Monte Cristo". 7. It seemed Brad didn't pay any attention to ... tearful Kale. 8. ... two Renoirs and ... Raphael hung on the walls. 9. I used to know ... Bill Welles from Dakota. 10. Who knows, maybe I am Orson you are looking for. 11. I don't want to be ... Green, I no more belong to the family.

12. She spent a fortune on ... new Nina Ricci dress. 13. I'm at a loss.
1 don't see much of ... Sarah I love.

Ex. 36. Match the beginnings of the sentences in part A with part

B.

A: 1. I couldn't help laughing 2. I wonder 3. Tell Nurse to put a warm hat on our baby 4. When the Berns arrived 5. You've got an excellent collection of paint- inns 6. You are not a Byron 7. You should warn Mom 8. Every morning he drove out 9. She loved her mother's expensive present 10.1 had to spend an endless hour. **B:** 1. when she goes out for a walk. 2. in an old Ford. 3. you're going to be late to-night. 4. but you've got abilities for writing poems. 5. the party was in full swing already. 6. if he is an Elliot. 7. When I saw little Johny put on his clothes. 8. and even a Raphael! 9. with the complaining Sarah. 10. a beautiful Dior dress.

Ex. 37. Translate into English.

"Если я не попаду на какой-нибудь крупный конкурс и не одержу победу,» – сказал мне как-то один из Вейдов, молодой пианист, – у меня нет никакой надежды занять здесь положение.» По правде говоря, я немного удивился подобным рассуждениям очень богатого наследника мистера Вейда, того самого Дэвида Вейда, известного американского миллионера. Молодой Рэйнольд Вейд несомненно талантлив, впрочем как и все Вейды. Я не думал, что это был новый Моцарт, но видя явное желание и тяга к музыке, согласился помочь в его музыкальной карьере. Я предъявил ряд требований, которые бедному Рейнольду порой было трудно выполнять, но уже через месяц передо мною был совершенно другой, серьезный и погруженный в работу Рейнольд. От легкомысленного и беспомощного Рейнольда не осталось и следа, разве что его щеголеватые костюмы от Диора. Этот Рейнольд оказался славным парнем, который добьется своей цели. Однажды он приехал ко мне на шикарном Кадиллаке и, широко улыбнувшись, сказал: «Подарок отца за победу на конкурсе. Нравится?» – Я верил в тебя. Добро пожаловать знаменитому Рейнольду Вейду. Оставайся в этой жизни таким, каким я тебя знаю».

Ex. 38. Explain the use of the articles with geographical names.**Translate into Russian.**

1. In her youth Mrs Smiths had lived in Singapore, India and Germany. 2. He made up his mind to spend his profit and buy a house in Riviera. 3. The negotiation's 6f important political issues were held in the Crimea. 4. I remember the time we went to South China. 5. In the Netherlands and Belgium St.NichoIas' Day is the children's popular festival. 6. How ill she was when there was a storm in the Indian Ocean. 7. New York, the largest city in the USA is situated at the mouth of the Hudson River. 8. When we were in the" Mediterranean we enjoyed passing Gibraltar. 9. I took my belongings and stepped out of the train, and there was the Grand Canal at my feet. 10. The Pacific Ocean is rich in mineral raw materials and fish. 11. Warm air and light wind began to move from the Gulf of Mexico. 12. For their honey moon they went first to the Bahamas and then traveled to the Canaries for a change. 13. The golden sands of the Sahara always fascinated young John. 14. The Browns went to the Swiss Alps from the Christmas holidays. 15. You should not leave the park without visiting the Great Canyon and the lower Falls of the Yellow-stone river.

Ex. 39. Make up sentences using the following words:

1. Saudi Arabia, are, production centers, Persian Gulf, of, the, along. 2. Rocky Mountains, extend, the, Mexico, to, Canada, from. 3. Had, he, in, a, small house, the, Bermudas. 4. he, to, stories, beautiful girls, told, in Casablanca, the, Solomon Islands, about. **5. We,** directly, tried, the, to get, to, North **Cape. 6. Mother,** many presents, brought, her children, from, the, to, Senegal. **7. Hear, is, he,** off, Central Africa, to. 8. My, was, North Carolina, grandfather, of, Governor.

Ex. 40. Insert the articles.

1 She had grown up at the shores of...lake Baikal. 2. They took us for a ride on the river under...Niagara Falls. 3.... Kilimanjaro is a snow covered mountain which is said to be the highest mountain in... Africa. 4. We decided to have some rest at the foot of...Bear Mountain. 5. It happened a long time ago in...Chicago on my way to...Far East. 6. It'll take me too long to forget my trip to...Sicily and

... Italy. 7. .. Australia is the largest island and the smallest continent in the world. 8. You should rest from the work. Go to...Hague or to...Amsterdam. 9. The Slavic people living on... Balkan Peninsula arrived here in the 6th and 7th centuries. 10. In the morning they were fascinated by the sunrise in...Saint Gotthard Pass. 11.... Jordan River and...Dead Sea are on the Israel border. 12. **There were** the lights of the harbour across... Little Traverse Bay. 13. ...Mongolia occupies a part of...Goby Desert. 14. On the splendid shore of ..French Riviera stands a large hotel.

Ex. 41. Answer the questions.

1. Where is Mount Everest? 2. How high is Mount Everest? 3. Where do anteaters live? 4. What is the capital city of the Netherlands? 5. Where is the Eiffel Tower? Which country and city? 6. Which is the longest river in the world? 7. Which is the highest waterfall in the world? 8. Which is the biggest country, the United Kingdom, France and Spain? 9. Which river flows through London? 10. What and where is the Valley of the Kings? 11. Where is the Sea of Tranquility? I Name at least three countries in Europe which have red, white and blue flags? 13. Which river flows through Cairo? 14. Which is the nearest big city to Heathrow Airport? 15. Which Roman town was covered by volcanic ash? **16.** Winch island was first seen from a Dutch ship on Easter Day in 1772?

1.Nepal, Tibet border. 2. 8.848 metres. 3. South America. 4. The Hague. 5. France, Paris. 6. The Amazon (96.448) and Nile (6.670). 7. Salto Angel in Venezuela-979 metres 8. The UK. 9. The Thames. 10. A place where many kings and people of the court were buried - in Egypt. 11. The moon. 12. The UK, Czech, France, Luxembourg, the Netherlands, Norway. 13. The Nile. 14. London. 15. Both Pompeii and Herculaneum were covered by ash from Mount Vesuvius in 79 AD. **16.** FASTER Island.

Ex. 42. Translate into Russian. Pay attention to the ways of translation of the articles.

1. The ship is not the ship that we saw at the harbour yesterday. It's just a ship. 2. She is such a nice person. She has not got an enemy on earth. 3. The only solution in this situation is a peace which would give the Serbian people the freedom they desire. 4. There's no harmony between the two foreign powers. 5. On this particular morning she sat facing a new client, a Mr Wade. 6. He was beginning to mix with people of a kind he'd never mixed with before. 7. I hadn't answered the one letter he had written to me. 8. It was a very sharp and decisive Mary who spoke now. 9. - Dad, I have my friends down here and I want you to meet Jordon Marsh, a friend of mine. - Is he the one? - Yes, do you know him? - Oh, I do And I'm damned if I have him in my house. 10. I can't identify anyone. But I could say for sure that a woman came out of that particular room at that particular time.

Ex. 43. Translate into Russian. Pay attention to the ways of translation of the articles.

1. This was not the Paris I used to dream of. 2. An agreement between the government and the president was reached after four days of talk. The agreement is a victory. 3. Did you know a Kristen Brown? 4. A young girl is a very interesting phenomenon. 5. The speaker was not very attentive. A restlessness in the audience was not noticed by him. 6. Her dreams of a happier life would be nothing without him, the loving and handsome John. 7. I was certain now that a phase in our life ended. 8. This Bern had no relation to the one I remembered. 9. History shows us great writers and great talkers, but we rarely find the two combined in one figure.

Ex. 44. Insert the articles.

1. He had...opportunity to get...interesting work, but he refused. 2. ...Petrovs are...friendly family. 3. He was born on...bank of...Volga river. 4. ...silent house gave them, feeling of being there without leave. 5. The light in...next room came from...lamp banging from ceiling. 6. But one way or ..other it's not bothering me. 7. Before...first year had passed I had served...thousand dollars and we had lived in comfort. 8. He couldn't see., face that had been staring at him from...window. 9. By., stair was...note "Office". ...office consisted

of...glass window and . printed card "Press Bell". 10. It was...lovely July evening and...air was filled with...scent of the pinewoods. 11. Of all ... houses which had received him in ...fall of 1862, hers was...only house into which he could enter. 12. ...previous letters are as tender as. second, but...tone is different. 13. I got acquainted with him on...official dinner. 14. Many famous people were frequent guests at Abramtsevo, among them, writer Gogol,...poet Shevchenko and...actor Shchepkin. 15....certain surgeon Kryukov operated on our son. 16. How much are ..dinner sets? 17. ...head of the expedition was...man who had traveled a lot. 18. You can't be satisfied with.. .progress you have made. 19. Where have you got such...important information from? 20. The earth shook with...roar of guns.

1.3. Прилагательное / Adjective

The adjective denotes some characteristic of an object, interpreted either as a quality (positive or negative, objective or subjective), or as a space, time, quantity etc. coordinate.

There are several kinds of adjectives:

Demonstrative: this, these, that, those

Indefinite: some, any

Negative: no

Distributive: each, every, either, neither

Quantitative: some, any, no, little, few, many, much

Interrogative: which, what, whose

Possessive: my, your, his, her, its, our, your, their

Of quality: good, red, simple, political, medical, remarkable, easy, beautiful etc.

There are three degrees of comparison:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
-----------------	--------------------	--------------------

Dark	darker	darkest
------	--------	---------

Tall	taller	tallest
------	--------	---------

Useful	more useful	most useful
--------	-------------	-------------

One-syllable adjectives form their comparative and superlative by adding **er** and **est** to the positive form: *bright brighter brightest*

Adjectives of three or more syllables form their comparative and superlative by putting **more** and **most** before the positive: *interested - more interested - most interested, frightening - more frightening - most frightening*

Adjectives of two syllables follow one or other of the above rules. Those ending in **ful** or **re** usually take **more** and **most**: *doubtful-more doubtful-most doubtful, obscure-more obscure-most obscure*

Those ending in **er**, **y** or **ly** usually add **er**, **est**: *clever-cleverer-cleverest, pretty-prettier-prettiest* (note that the y becomes i): *silly sillier silliest*

Irregular comparisons:

bad	worse	worst
far	farther	farthest (of distance only)
	further	furthest
good	better	best
little	less	least
many/much	more	most
old	elder	eldest (of people only)
	older	oldest (of people and things)

Exercises: ADJECTIVE

Ex. 1. Divide the adjectives into monosyllabic, disyllabic, polysyllabic..

Short, comfortable, expensive, nice, deep, few, large, complicated, good, broad, thin, fine, huge, young, beautiful.

Ex. 2. Form the comparative and superlative degrees of the of disyllabic adjectives.

Simple, narrow, pretty, horrible, noisy, tasty, bitter, happy, boring, stupid, silly, heavy, famous.

Ex. 3. Look at the list if adjectives below, put them into 3 groups: Positive, Negative, Either.

happy, sad, frightened, upset, proud, shy, excited, angry, worried, delighted, wise, stupid, generous.

Ex. 4. Match the adjectives on the left with their opposites on the right.

proud depressed

excited reluctant

cheerful modest

eager bored

Ex. 5. Use the following phrases in the comparative and superlative degree.

A clever trick, a far corner, an unfortunate loss, a small room, a tender kiss, an exact copy, a bitter quarrel, a funny face, a slim young lady, a happy smile, a miserable sight, an able woman, a magnificent view, a useful hint, a bad idea, a nasty accident, a good suggestion, a stupid boy.

Ex. 6. Compare the size or quality of the objects.

Rostov - Moscow, your flat - your friend's flat, Mike - David, a thriller - a comedy, Ben Nevis - Elbrus, winter - summer, the weather in September - the weather in June (cold, warm, rainy, cool).

Ex. 7. Form the comparative and superlative forms of the following adjectives.

Pattern: My brother is taller than I am.

Shy, great, soft, hot, dry, sly, thin, dull, few, brave, pure, sad, fat, mad, wet;

Pattern: This story is happier than that one.

Funny, simple, polite, sincere, terrible, narrow, clever, tender, slender, usual, urgent, serious;

Pattern: His essay is worse than mine.

Good, many, little, far, old, late, near;

Pattern: Her dress is more beautiful than mine.

disgusting, picturesque, difficult, energetic, thoughtful, delightful, fashionable, enthusiastic, exciting, talkative, sympathetic, suspicious;

Ex. 8. Compare unequal things.

Pattern: This book is more interesting than that one. - That book is not as interesting as this one.

That book is less interesting than this one.

this girl (beautiful); this house (comfortable); this rout (dangerous); this dress (expensive); this movie (boring); that exercise (difficult); that student (clever);, that voice (soft); that landscape (picturesque); that team (active)

Ex. 9. Compare equal objects.

Pattern: This boy is as clever as that one. This room is as large as that one. this news (important); this family (friendly); this task (easy); that picture (famous); this actor (talented); that plot (dull); that game (energetic); that school (good); that cake (delicious); this book (useful).

Ex. 10. Put in the right form of the adjective.

1. I am (young) than my sister. 2. His grandmother is (old) than mine. 3. She is not as (old) as Mary. 4. Max is (small) of the family. 5. Gretchen is (pretty) than Pam. 6. Abby's hair is (long) and (fair) than Ann's. 7. My little "sister is (naughty) girl that I know. 8. Mike is (noisy) of them all. 9. Ruth is (fat) than her sister. 10. I am (lucky) than you.

Ex. 11. Choose the right word.

1. He is the ...man in the village (oldest, eldest). 2. Where is the ... letter-box (next, nearest)? 3. Have you already heard the ...news (late, latest). 4. What is the ... distance you've swum (farthest, furthest)?

Ex. 12. Make up dialogues using the adjectives: short, easv, interesting, dark, angry.

Pattern: - Is he taller than you?

1.4. Местоимение / Pronoun

Pronoun can be divided into following groups.

- Personal Pronouns: e.g. *I, you, He, she, it, they, who, me, him, her, them, whom*
- Possessive Pronouns: e.g. *yours, mine, his, hers, ours, theirs,*
- Reflexive Pronouns: e.g. *myself, himself, herself, itself, yourself, ourselves, themselves*
- Reciprocal Pronoun: e.g. *each other, one another*
- Relative Pronouns: e.g. *who, whom, whose, which, that*
- Demonstrative Pronoun: e.g. *this, these, that, those*

- Indefinite Pronouns: e.g. *some, any, few, either, another, anyone, something*

Personal Pronouns

Personal pronoun describes a particular person or thing or group.

Personal pronoun describes the person speaking (I, me, we, us), the person spoken to (you), or the person or thing spoken about (he, she, it, they, him, her, them).

Example.

He helps poor.

The pronoun "he" in above sentence describes a person who helps poor.

Use of Personal Pronouns.

r	Name	Person	Personal Pronoun	
			Subject	Object
r	Singular	1st Person	I	Me
		2nd Person	You	You
		3rd Person	He, She, It	Him, Her, It
	Plural	1st Person	We	Us
		2nd Person	You	You
		3rd Person	They	Them

Examples.

They are intelligent
He sent me a letter. playing chess.
It is raining.
We love our country.
The teacher appreciated them.
I met him yesterday.
He gave her a gift.
Did you go to home?

Possessive Pronouns

Possessive Pronoun indicates close possession or ownership or relationship of a thing/person to another thing/person. e.g. *yours, mine, his, hers, ours, theirs, hers,*

Example.

This book is mine.

The pronoun "mine" describes the relationship between book and a person (me) who possesses this book or who is the owner of this book.

Number	Person	Possessive Pronoun
Singular	1st Person	Mine
	2nd Person	Yours
	3rd Person	Hers, his, its
Plural	1st Person	Ours
	2nd Person	Yours
	3rd Person	Theirs

Examples.

That car is hers.
 Your book is old. Mine is new.
 The pen on the table is mine.
 The smallest cup is yours.
 The voice is hers.
 The car is ours not theirs.
 I have lost my camera. May I use yours?
 They received your letter. Did you received theirs.

Note: Possessive adjectives (my, her, your) may be confused with possessive pronouns. Possessive adjective modifies noun in terms of possession. Both possessive adjective and possessive show possession or ownership, but possessive adjective is used (with noun) to modify the noun while Possessive pronoun is used instead (in place of) a noun.

Examples.

This is my book. (Possessive adjective: "my" modifies the noun "book").

This book is mine. (Possessive pronoun: "mine" is used instead of noun "to whom the book belongs")

Reflexive Pronoun

Reflexive pronoun describes noun when subject's action affects the subject itself.

e.g *himself, yourself, herself, ourselves, themselves, itself* are reflexive pronouns.

Reflexive pronouns always act as objects not subjects, and they require an interaction between the subject and an object.

Number	Person	Subject	Reflexive Pronoun
Singular	1st Person	I	Myself
	2nd Person	You	Yourself
	3rd Person	He, she, it	Himself, Herself, Itself
Plural	1st Person	We	Ourselves
	2nd Person	You	Yourselves
	3rd Person	They	Themselves

EXAMPLES

I looked at myself in the mirror.
 You should think about yourself.
 They prepared themselves for completion.
 She pleases herself by think that she will win the prize.
 He bought a car for himself.
 He locked himself in the room.
 He who loves only himself is a selfish.

Note: Reflexive noun can also be used to give more emphasis on subject or object. If a reflexive pronoun is used to give more emphasis on a subject or an object, it is called "**Intensive Pronoun**". Usage and function of intensive pronoun are different from that of reflexive pronoun.

For example, *she herself started to think about herself.*

In the above sentence the first "herself" is used as intensive pronoun while the second "herself" is used as reflexive pronoun. See the following examples of intensive pronouns.

Examples. (Intensive Pronouns)

I did it myself. OR. I myself did it.

She herself washed the clothes.

He himself decided to go to New York.

She herself told me.

Reciprocal Pronouns

Reciprocal Pronouns are used when each of two or more subjects reciprocate to the other. or Reciprocal pronouns are used when two subjects act in same way towards each other, **or**, more subjects act in same way to one another.

For example, A loves B and B love A. we can say that A and B loves each other.

There are two reciprocal pronouns

- Each other
- One another.

Examples:

John and Marry are talking to each other.

The students gave cards to one another.

The people helped one another in hospital.

Two boys were pushing each other.

The car and the bus collided with each other.

The students in the class greeted one another.

Relative Pronouns

Relative Pronoun describes a noun which is mentioned before and more information is to be given about it. Or Relative pronoun is a pronoun which joins relative clauses and relative sentences. For example, *It is the person, **who** helped her.* In this sentence the word "who" is a relative pronoun which refers to the noun (the person) which is already mentioned in beginning of sentence (It is the person) and more information (he helped her) is given after using a relative

pronoun (who) for the noun (the person). Similarly, in above sentence the pronoun "who" joins two clauses which are "it is the person" and "who helped her".

Examples: The most commonly used five relative pronouns are, *who, whom, whose, which, that*. "Who" is for subject and "whom" is used for object. "who" and "whom" are used for people. "Whose" is used to show possession and can be used for both people and things. "Which" is used for things. "That" is used for people and things.

Examples:

It is the girl who got first position in class.

Adjective is a word that modifies noun.

The man whom I met yesterday is a nice person.

It is the planning that makes succeed.

The boy who is laughing is my friend.

It is the boy whose father is doctor.

The car which I like is red.

Demonstrative Pronouns

Demonstrative pronoun is a pronoun that points to a thing or things. *e.g. this, that, these, those, none, neither*

These pronouns point to thing or things in short distance/time or long distance/time.

Short distance or time: *This, these.*

Long distance or time: *That, those.*

Demonstrative pronouns "this and that" are used for singular thing while "these or those" are used for plural things.

Examples:

This is black.

That is heavy.

Can you see these?

Do you like this?

John brought these.

Those look attractive.

Have you tried this.

Indefinite Pronouns

Indefinite pronouns are words which replace nouns without specifying which noun they replace.

Singular: another, anybody, anyone, anything, each, either, everybody, everyone, everything, little, much, neither, nobody, no one, nothing, one, other, somebody, someone, something

Plural: both, few, many, others, several

Singular or Plural: all, any, more, most, none, some

Singular indefinite pronouns take singular verbs or singular personal pronouns.

Correct: *Each of the members has one vote.*

(The subject, **each**, is singular. Use **has**.)

Incorrect: *One of the girls gave up their seat.*

Correct: *One of the girls gave up her seat.*

(**Her** refers to **one**, which is singular.)

Plural indefinite pronouns take plural verbs or plural personal pronouns.

Correct: *A few of the justices were voicing their opposition.*

(**Few** is plural, so are **were** and **their**.)

For indefinite pronouns that can be singular or plural, it depends on what the indefinite pronoun refers to.

Correct: *All of the people clapped their hands.*

(**All** refers to **people**, which is plural.)

Correct: *All of the newspaper was soaked.*

(Here **all** refers to **newspaper**, which is singular.)

Exercises: PRONOUNS

Ex. 1. State the group to which each of these pronouns belongs.

Name all the other pronouns of the same group:

F, mine, this, both, either, it, himself, who, whose, the same, other, much, some, nothing, everything, none, one, neither, any, such.

Ex. 2. Translate the sentences, name all the pronouns and identify the group they belong to.

1. We were in Alabama - Bell Driscoll and myself - when the idea of kidnapping struck us. 2. Bill and me thought that Ebeneter would gladly give us for the boy a ransom of two thousand dollars. 3. Bill was examining some bruises on his legs. 4. Are there any real Indians in these woods? 5. He kept us awake for three hours, jumping up and reaching for his rifle and crying in mine and Bill's ears. 6. A mischievous kid like that is just the kind that parents love. 7. Now, you and the chief get up and cook breakfast while I go up on the top of this mountain. 8. Nobody was dragging the creek, no couriers dashed here and there. 9. He put a hot potato down my back and then mashed it with his foot; and I boxed his ears. 10. I made a kind of peace between them. 11. I'll remember it to you! Nobody ever yet struck the Red Chief but what he got paid for it. 12. I went out and i night that boy and shook him until his freckles rattled. 13. Now, you come and make friends with him. 14. The only terms on which you can have him back are these: the money is to be at midnight at the same place. 15. If you attempt to undertake anything against us or won't pay the money, you'll never see your boy «цат 16. These terms are final, and if you do not agree to them, you'll get no further messages from us! 17. I'm tired of playing Indian myself. 18. One farmer .mil that Summit is all upset on account of Dorset's boy who had been lost or stolen. 19. For an hour I had to explain him why there was nothing in files... 20. A gang of constables should be watching for anyone who comes for the hole.

THE P ersonal P ronouns

Ex. 3. a) Name the forms of the personal pronouns and use them in sentences:

She is the Nominative Case. **Her** is the Objective Case. **You** is the Nominative and the Objective Case.

The- Singular: it, she, him, you, me, her, I, he. The Plural: we, them, you, they,

b) Identify the case and number forms of the personal pronouns:

1. This letter is not for you. It's for me. 2. Where is Ann? I want to talk to her. 3. Who's that man? Why are you talking about him? 4. We are going to the ballet Will you join us? 5. Mary and Nina have just come from France. Have you writ u ith them? 6. I hate doing nothing. How can she waste time? 7. What a wonderful day! It reminds me of my wedding day. 8. Nick, where are you? I've jтisi M on him in the hall talking to Ms.Neal. 9. Are you all right? You'd better take these pills

Ex. 4. Insert the appropriate form of personal pronouns.

1. I want that book. Please, give ... to me. 2. Do you see those albums on the shelf? Bring ... to me. 3. Tom doesn't drink alcohol. He doesn't like ... 4. I have no idea of the girl you are telling me about. I hope you know ... well. 5. Mr. Green asked me about you. Did you see ... ? 6. Where is my new tie? I can't find 7. I'm explaining this to you. Please, listen to ... 8. These pictures are brilliant. Would you like to have a look at ... ? 9. What a nice bicycle! I am buying ... 10. Where are the invitations? I can't find ... 11. Mum bakes very tasty cakes. I like eating

Ex. 5. Put in the personal pronouns in the Objective Case.

Pattern: I need those documents. Please, give them to me.

1. They need the money. Please, give... to.... 2. The police is searching the facts. Please, tell... to.... 3. She lost the key. Please, give... to ... 4. I know your parents. Remember... to.... 5. There is a book in the bag. Show to.... 6. These are copybooks and a box. Put... into... 7. I wrote a letter to my grandmother. Please, send... to....

Ex. 6. Complete the sentences.

Pattern: I want to see her but she doesn't want to see me.

1. I'd like to talk to him seriously, but.... 2. We want to see them at the party, but.... 3. She doesn't want to listen to me, but.... 4. You understand us perfectly well, but.... 5. He has found out that he loves her, but... 6. They are always glad to meet you, but....

7. I always congratulate him with his birthday, but.... 8. He never meets us on his way home, but.... 9. They don't share their ideas with us, but ... 10. I'm listening to all your arguments, but...

Ex. 7. Open the brackets using the appropriate form of personal pronouns.

1. Do you remember (she, her)? 2. Who's there? - It's (I, me). 3. The teacher explained new rules to (we, us). 4. Ask (he, him) to come, too. 5. Who are you thinking of? (She, her) or (I, me)? 6. Isn't it Tom standing over there? I can hardly recognize (he, him). 6. It's (they, them) whom I envied with all my heart. 7. He translates it better than (I, me) do. 8. At last he has a choice: either (I, me) or (you, you). 9. I rely upon (he, him) in this business. 10. How much do we owe to (she, her)? 11. Who's knocking? It's (I, me) and not anybody else. 12. Are they stupid? - I don't think so, they are more talented than (we, us) are.

Ex. 8. Complete the disjunctive questions.

1. This furniture is not old to be thrown away,...? 2. Parents are elderly people with their own habits,...? 3. Charlie Parker and John Coltrane have been the best saxophonists of all times,...? 4. Robert will never learn how I really love him,...? 5. My family and I didn't plan to move to a new flat,...? 6. Mary, you got an excellent mark in History last year,...? 7. I always think of something positive,...? 8. My grandparents were very strict to me when I was a child,...? 9. I am not busy now,...? 10. This set of plates doesn't match the table-cloth,...? 11. This file has been saved,...? 12. Computers of the fifth generation are in use now....?

Ex. 9. Replace the words in italic by personal pronouns.

I Tom and Jerry are very funny characters in the cartoons. 2. I don't like to have hot milk for breakfast 3. Christie always helps her mother about the house. 4. Teachers don't stand when someone prompts at the lesson. 5. The dog is nervous. Walk your pet. 6. The Urals separate Europe from Asia. 7. Who made that awful mistake in the word on the blackboard? 8. Reading books enriches the sphere of our knowledge. 9. Cosmonautics is 'he branch of my future career. 10. To learn the language is very important for communication.

Ex. 10. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Как давно я тебя не видела, мой дорогой! 2. Они были на два года младше меня и моего брата. 3. Она взглянула на него безразличными холодными глазами 4. У него хорошее воображение как и у вас. Это необходимо в живописи. 5. Мы придем навеситить тебя завтра Ты не против? 6 Он говорит, что отправил письмо Вере, но она его не получала. 7. "Сходи на почту и спроси о нем". – "Она сегодня закрыта, выходной". 8. Моя сестра приезжает в воскресенье Я обязательно пойду ее встречать. 9. Это я звонила тебе вчера вечером. Ты не догадался? 10. Ты плохо себя чувствуешь? Кто. я? – Нет.

THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

Ex. 11. Choose between a possessive pronoun and the definite article.

1. Don't show this letter to ... mother. 2 She took me by ... hand and led out of the room 3. She took the child into ... arms. 4 What have you done to ... face? 5. It's coming on to pour. You'd better take ... raincoat 6. They were wounded in ... legs. 7. She caught me by ... sleeve. 8 He smashed her on ... cheek

Ex. 12. Use the absolute form of the possessive pronoun. Translate into Russian.

a) 1. His reproduction is more interesting than (your/my). 2. Are those people friends of (your)? 3. You can do very well without my assistance, but you won't cope without (their) 4. Their tape-recorder is always out of order as well as (his). 5. The pleasure was all (my). 6. (Our) was the last turn. 7. Their route was much shorter than (our). 8. I've dropped all these pencils and can't say which are (your) and which are (my). 9. What cassette is (your)? 10. (my) is a new one.

b) 1. I gave him my address and he gave me 2. They asked us for help and we suggested 3. She asked me questions and the answers were 4. He didn't have an umbrella, so she gave him ... 5. Whose money is this? - I don't know, perhaps ... 6. This doesn't look like my shampoo, it must be 7. Take your bag, I have taken...; come on! 8. They say they have lost tickets; perhaps these are 9. Jack has come to see me; his father and ... are good friends.

10. Ann and I have made new dresses to wear them at the party; she says ... is better than

Ex. 13. Use the conjoint or absolute form of possessive pronouns in the following sentences.

a) 1. This is (my, mine) sandwich. 2. This sandwich is (my, mine). 3. Is (their, theirs) house large or small? 4. His rollers are more expensive than (your, yours). 5. Whose scarf is this? - It's (her, hers). 6. Is he a friend of (our, ours)? 7. Don't stay at (her, hers) place for a long time; stay at (their, theirs). 8. Mary is in bed in (her, hers) room. 9. Something has gone wrong with (your, yours) iron, use (my, mine). 10. That was an old chap of (mine, my). 11. (Our, ours) are the best tests.

b) 1. This foolish girl-friend of (he) thinks he's a great musician. 2. She put (she) hand into (he). 3. Mother, I'll have (1) hair cut this afternoon. 4. She took the letter, put it aside and then returned it on (it) place. 5. The children had had (they) tea. Kate was late for (she) as usual, Mary and John were having (they). 6. She knits nil (she) sweaters herself. 7. That notebook is (I). There is (I) name on it. 8. They can do (they) shopping afterwards. 9. She was watering flowers in (she) garden.

Ex. 14. Translate into English.

1. Смертельная усталость легла на его лицо. 2. У меня мною музыкальных сборников этого композитора Я отдаю предпочтение его сонатам. 3. Наш новый автомобиль небольшой, но мотор у него относительно мощный. 4. Кого из своих родственников ты пригласишь на вечеринку? 5. Ее часы спешат. Их нужно отремонтировать. 6. В самолете я встретила свою старую подругу. Она путешествовала со своим мужем. 7. Вот ваше купе. Ее полка верхняя, а ваша нижняя. 8. Все это случилось не по нашей, а по их вине. 9. Чье исполнение вам понравилось: наше или того пианиста? 10. Мы поделились с ними своим опытом, а они своим. 11. Результаты показали, что наш план был смелее, чем их. 12. Самый лучший выбор – ваш. 13. Дай мне на секунду кассету. 14. Фэй Виктор – ее приятельница. 15. Это не мой рюкзак. Мой зеленый. 16. Не садитесь на этот стул, у него сломана ножка. 17. Мой подарок не хуже вашего.

The Reflexive Pronouns

Ex. 15. Point out reflexive and emphatic pronouns. Translate the sentences into Russian:

1. Kate set herself 5 drawings per week. 2. Voronov himself is a nice person - so modest and unassuming. 3. She had taught Polly to speak English like herself. 4. They themselves were longing to ask Tim how she would take the result. 5. Her eyes reconcentrated themselves quickly on the painting. 6. I'll see him myself tomorrow. 7. If you don't like this, you can live by yourself. 8. She cited the poem to them herself. 9. I thought to myself that it was always the same way. 10. I thought what a pretty girl she was herself.

Ex. 16. Insert the proper, self-pronoun.

1. "Feel comfortable" - she said, seating... on a sofa near him. 2. The ship was expected at 10 o'clock so I allowed... to sit gazing out to sea. 3. At dawn I was cooling... diving in the lake. 4. You even call... by your fancy real name. 5. She opened to him.... 6. Can you speak to them ... 7. The porter... opened the door. 8. Their relationship with Rafael has renewed... suddenly. 9. Who can it be? Irene...? I can't believe my eyes. 10. There was a frame and in it a photograph of ... as a little girl.

Ex. 17. Translate Into English.

1. Мы сами увидим его завтра. 2. Чай готов. Наливай себе чашку и садись за стол. 3. Я могу дать вам свой собственный паспорт. 4. Она часто разговаривала сама с собой. 5. Затем нам самим захотелось перевести книгу. 6. В день годовщины свадьбы они должны были обедать одни. 7. "Вероятно, будет ссора," - сказал сам себе Джон. 8. Им всегда нравилась песня "Тень твоей улыбки". 9. Она страшно упрекала себя за свое поведение. 10. Ее муж был занят, и она не могла пойти на концерт одна. II. Они предпочитали пить кофе одни, а после кофе играли в шахматы. 12. Когда она была готова, она посмотрела в зеркало. 12. Мы постоянно стараемся оправдать себя. 13. Ты сама себя понимаешь? 14. Вернись и закрой дверь! Двери сами не закрываются. 15. В тот вечер она была сама доброта.

Ex. 18. Find out a reflexive pronoun and retell the joke in the Indirect Speech.

The old barber was giving the new barber a few last minute instructions before

he shaved his first customer.

"All right, John, be careful and don't cut yourself!"

Ex. 19. Comment on the proverb. History repeats itself.

Demonstrative Pronouns

Ex. 20. Find out the demonstrative pronouns in the following sentences.

1. Those evening bells! Those evening bells! How many a tale their music tells... 2. Those were the days, my friend; I thought they'd never end... 3. If she didn't have that stuff on her face she would be prettier. 4. Such were his thoughts before that exciting moment. 5. What about this devaluation of rouble? Will it ruin the country as the papers say? 6. This is the place I had my coffee that day. 7. Yesterday love was such an easy game to play... 8. This is welcome news!

Ex. 21. Insert *this, that, these, or those.*

1. A1L. is very important. 2.... will do. 3. Try one of... 4. There are no richer art museums in Russia than... of Saint-Petersburg. 5.... is the computer of the latest generation. 6.... is right. 7. The electric power output nowadays can't compare to... of pre-revolutionary Russia. 8. There is no greater collection of paintings than... of the Hermitage.

Ex. 22. Substitute that or those for the repeated noun.

1. The pictures painted by Rembrandt and the pictures painted by Rubens have very little in common. 2. The language in plays is usually easier and more simple than the language in novels. 3. The music of Bach is more impressive than the music of Hendel. 4. The stories written by O'Henry are as full of life as the stories written by Mark Twain. 5. Cream made of natural substance is better than cream made artificially. 6. Scarlet's eyes met the eyes of Grandma. 7. The trees in our garden are taller than the trees in the park. 8. His eyes were melancholy as the eyes of a monkey. 9. The disappointment in her voice was the disappointment of a child. 10. The climate of Moscow is better than the climate of St. Petersburg.

Ex. 23. Use one of the demonstrative pronouns in the following sentences.

1. She gave me the... answer as before. 2. What do you want me to do with...? 3. His mental level at the time of his death was... of a four-year-old child. 4. Do you see... trees on the other side of the river? 5. Well ...'s exactly what I was about to do. 6. Don't be in... a hurry. 7. He used to go to the... cafe to have a snack. 8.... is what I told you yesterday. 9.... is life. 10. I have divided the books into two piles.... are to be kept.... are to be sold. 11. I have had... a busy day! 12. My services ... as they are, are at your disposal.

Ex. 24. Translate into English.

1. В те первые весенние дни погода стояла великолепная.
2. Это очень толстая книга. Боюсь, за неделю я ее не осилю.
3. Она говорила о своих делах, а он рассказал ей, что он делал в тот день на работе.
4. Этот дом, действительно, в ужасном состоянии.
5. В тот день я болел и не был на занятиях.

Indefinite Pronouns

Ex. 25. Insert *some* or *any*.

1. We certainly don't want... trouble. 2. There is... milk in the jug. 3. There aren't... trains until morning. 4. Why do you ask if there is... news? 5. She looked everywhere for gloves but couldn't find. 6. Have you... money? - Yes, I have.... 7. He wants... more meat, Jane. 8. Tanya is mm h younger than... other girls in her class. 9. When I needed help, he didn't ask questions. 10. Have you... cheese?

Ex. 26. Insert *some*, *any* or their compounds.

1. I know... about them. 2. What exactly lie was going to do neither he nor... else quite knew. 3. Is there... you want there, Tom? 4. Did you see... that would be of... use to me? 5. If... man wants to raise a beard, let him. 6. I didn't realize there is... here. 7. You may have... tea without milk because there isn't... at home. 8. I shall be very much surprised if... is wrong. 9. Is... at home? 10. If... asked my reason for existence, what should I tell them?

Ex. 27. Translate into English.

1. На столе есть масло? - Да, есть. 2. Если у них и было, что сказать, то они не говорили. 3. У вас есть друзья на Дальнем Востоке, - Да есть. 4. Тетя пыталась рассказать нам что-то приятное. 5. Мы ничего не видели, так как в комнате было темно. 6. Я зайду к вам, если вам что-нибудь понадобится. 7. Сегодня в вашем диктанте нет ошибок. 8. Катя, ты освободилась, я хочу тебе что-то сказать. 9. Мы что-то можем для вас сделать, 10. Можно, я угощу вас бананами? - Спасибо, я не хочу.

Ex. 28. Insert *no, none* or their compounds.

1. ... answered her as she addressed... in particular. 2. There are... pears on the tree . 3. Every body liked him.... was afraid of him. 4. It was cold outside the house and he looked up and down for a taxi but there was... in sight. 5. I had turned to him for support and we had to say to each other. 6. I have ... time to go to the cinema with you. 7. ... of those attitude, were stated at this meeting. 8. That afternoon he was answerable to ... 9. There is ... bread and... forks on the table. 10. Julia said...

Ex. 29. Translate into English.

1. Она решила никою не приглашать к себе до приезда родственников. 2. Не о чем сожалеть, Николай. 3. Если вам нечего делать, идите гулять. 4. Мы никого не знали на этом вечере. 5. В кромешной темноте ничего не было видно. 6. Никто из детей еще не встал. 7. На тарелке есть масло, но нет сыра. 8. Никто не сказал мне об этом. 9. На платформе стояло несколько детей и никого из взрослых.

Ex. 30. Comment on the proverb: Two is a company, three is none.

Ex. 31. Retell the joke.

a) A little boy: I'm drawing a picture of God.

His mother: But you cannot do that. No one has seen God. No one knows how God looks.

The boy: Well, when I get through, they will.

b) - Am I not a man of many abilities? - You are indeed but none of them is working.

1.5. Числительное / Numeral

The chief classes of numerals are **cardinals** and **ordinals**.

1. **Cardinal Numerals** (one, two, three, four, etc) are used in counting, answering the question "How many?"

I had to pay twenty rubles. There were thirty-two students in the classroom.

Mind the spelling of the following cardinal numerals: *thirteen, fifteen, eighteen, forty, fifty, and eighty.*

Read the following numerals correctly: *101-one hundred and one, 200- two hundred, 1,001-one thousand and one, 10,001-ten thousand and one, 100,000-one hundred thousand.* Writing numbers of more than four figures, we separate every three ciphers by commas counting from the end.

All cardinal numerals may become nouns and take a plural ending.

The nine played an excellent game. They formed by fours. Thousands went to the meeting.

Million is the only numeral that can take the plural form when multiplied and not followed by another numeral, but then it is used as a noun and followed by the preposition of: *Five million inhabitants or five millions of inhabitants. Eight million workers or eight millions of workers.*

Certain things, e.g. eggs, bread rolls, oranges, are often bought in dozens.

The plural form of dozen, hundred and thousand is used when no numeral precedes: in these cases the numerals dozen, hundred and thousand are substantivized: *Dozens of eggs, two dozen eggs; hundreds of students, a few hundred students; thousands of books, several thousand books.* Hundred, thousand and million must be preceded by a or one; one is generally used when smaller numbers follow: *a hundred, one hundred and forty-five.*

Mind the following: a) To count **by dozens, hundreds, thousands**; also by **the hundred**, by **the thousand**; b) **A dozen-12, a score-20, three score-60**; c) *Half-an-hour; three miles and a half or three and a half miles; a quarter of an hour.*

The word **odd** may be used with round numbers over twenty to give an approximate figure: *It's hundred odd pounds (about) She is sixty odd. (About 60 years old)*

The suffix **-ish**, the words **or so** and **or thereabouts** can also be used when giving approximate numbers: *He is sixtyish. I'll meet you nineish. It cost a hundred pounds or so. He's arriving on the seventh or thereabouts.*

Mind the pronunciation of the figure **0 (nought/zero)** in different spheres.

In tennis and similar games, the word *love* is used (originally from French meaning "the egg") – the figure 0 is egg-shaped. a) *Eight minus eight leaves nought.* b) *If you add a cipher to 50, you will have 500.* c) *The temperature has fallen below zero.* d) *They beat them 2:0 (two nil, two to nil).* e) *Becker leads by two sets to love (2-0) (in tennis)* f) *66503=double six-five o (ou)-three* (telephone number) (In American English zero is used nearly everywhere.)

Even numbers are: 2, 4, 6, 8, 10

Odd numbers are: 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11

Remember the following patterns: *She is a girl in her teens. In the thirties of the last century British industry expanded rapidly. They walked in threes and fours. The child was walking on all fours.*

2. Ordinal Numerals (first, second, third, fourth, etc.) denote the position or order of persons or things in a series; they answer the question "which?"

Most of the ordinal numerals are formed from cardinals by means of the suffix **-th** (seventh, fourteenth, twentieth) except **first, second** and **third**.

Mind the spelling of *fifth, eighth, ninth, twelfth*. *Mary sits in the first row. He plays the second violin. It is our fourth lesson.*

Ordinal numerals are usually preceded by the definite article:
The first lesson is much more difficult than the second.

The indefinite article may also be used with ordinal numerals in the meaning of an additional one: *The second voyage he made was the most adventurous one. Two years later he made a second voyage.*

In ordinal groups only the last member of the group takes the ordinal forms: *thirty-fifth, two hundred and second.*

Mind the following: *Page 3, the third page, page three; the third act, Act Three. Mozart's thirty-ninth symphony – Symphony No.39, by Mozart, the third day of the course – Timetable for Day Three.*

Floors. The ground floor of a British house is the first floor of an American house; The British first floor is the American second floor, etc.

Ex.1. Write in letters: 3, 13, 30, 4, 14, 40, 5, 15, 50, 8, 18, 80, 12, 100, 226, 705, 1000, 4568, 6008, 75137, 425712, 1306527, 2032678.

Ex. 2. Translate into English: 1. Пятьдесят килограммов. 2. Триста автомобилей. 3. Шестьдесят один грамм. 4. Два миллиона тонн. 5. Сотни ящиков. 6. Тысяча книг. 7. Двести восемьдесят один доллар. 8. Три тысячи рублей. Ex.4 Write the ordinal numerals from the following cardinal: 1, 11, 21, 2, 12, 20, 3, 13, 30, 4, 14, 40, 5, 15, 50, 6, 16, 60, 8, 18, 80, 9, 19, 90, 100, 103, 300, 425, 705, 1000, 1015.

3. Fractions. In fractional numbers the numerator is a cardinal and the denominator is an ordinal (used as a noun): *two-thirds, three sixths; $\frac{1}{4}$ =a (one) quarter, $2 \frac{1}{4}$ =two and a quarter, $\frac{1}{2}$ =a half, $2 \frac{1}{2}$ =two and a half, $\frac{3}{4}$ =three quarters (of an hour), $3 \frac{3}{4}$ =three and three quarters, $\frac{7}{10}$ mil - seven tenths of a mile.*

More complex fractions can be expressed by using the word over. *$\frac{317}{509}$ three hundred and seventeen over five hundred and nine.*

Decimal fractions: *1.62=one, point (decimal) six, two; 45.987=forty five point nine eight seven.*

Singular and plural with fractions and decimals

With fractions below 1, we normally use **of a + singular noun**. The same structure is common with decimals below 1.

three quarters of a ton 0.1625 cm - nought point one six two five of a centimeter.

However, decimals below "1" can also be followed directly by a plural noun.

nought point one six two five centimeters

Fractions and decimals over "1" are normally followed directly by a plural noun.

one and a half hours 1.3 millimeters

Note also the structure **a ... and a half**. *I've been waiting for an hour and a half.*

Singular verbs are normally used after fractions and other expressions referring to amounts. *Three quarters of a ton is too much. 3.6 kilometers is about 2 miles.*

4. Telephone Numbers.

Telephone numbers are written with gaps between each group of numbers, not usually with dashes or full stops: *e.g. 01 339 4867.*

The first group is usually the dialing code for a particular place and is often in brackets: *(01) 339 4867*. **0** in phone numbers is pronounced **oh**.

Numbers are pronounced separately and double figures are usually given as e.g. double three: *oh one, double three (or three three) nine, four eight six seven.*

Treble figures are normally spoken as follows: *6222: six two double two.*

A number like 2222 would be spoken double two double two. Other long numbers like bank accounts numbers, national insurance numbers and so on are usually spoken in the same way.

5. Mathematical Symbols.

= ('the equals sign')

This is spoken as equal or equals, is equal to or is/are or make/makes, so $2+2=4$ could be spoken as: *2 and (plus) 2 is/equals/makes 4*

- ('the minus sign')

This is spoken as minus or take away or from $9-3=6$ could be spoken as: *9 minus/take away 3 equals/makes 6. 3 from 9 equals/makes 6.*

X ('the multiplication sign')

This is spoken as multiplied by or times: $9 \times 3 = 27$ could be spoken as: *9 multiplied by 3 equals 27 9 times 3 is 27 Three nines (or nine threes) are 27.*

: ('the division sign')

This is spoken as divided by or over. $9:3=3$ could be spoken as: *9 divided by (or over) 3 equals 3 3 into nine is/goes 3.*

% ('the percentage sign')

This is usually said per cent. $3\% =$ three per cent $3\frac{1}{2}\% =$ three and a half per cent $3.5\% =$ three point five per cent.

Ex. 3. Write these numerical expressions in words.

1. $32^\circ = 0^\circ \text{ C}$. 2. 36.8% . 3. $15.4 = 15\frac{2}{5}$. 4. $56 = 7 = 8 = 41 - 3 = 46$.
5. $66 \div 11 = 6$. 6. $8 \times 5 = 40$. 7. $68 - 13 = 53$. 8. $31 + 6 = 37$.

Ex. 4. Write in English: $\frac{3}{5}$ тонны. $\frac{1}{4}$ километра, $\frac{2}{3}$ процента, $1\frac{1}{3}$ часа, $\frac{1}{2}$ фунта, $4\frac{1}{2}$ пенса, $2\frac{3}{4}$ процента, $2\frac{2}{3}$ дюйма, 0.105 метра, 2.18 фунта, 17536 тонны, 5 процентов, 23 процента, 0.36 процента, 2.5 процента

6. Dates. 35 **B.C.** ('Before Christ'); **A.D.** ('Anno Domini', 'in the year of our Lord' in Latin) Pompey died in 48 B.C. Tiberius died in A.D. 37.

The name of the century is 'one ahead' of the way the years in it are written/said: e.g. 1500-1599 is the sixteenth century. We can refer to the fifteen twenties, etc. and in this century to the fifties, the sixties. We refer to 1900-1910 as the nineteen hundreds.

Years are said in two parts.

1066: ten sixty-six, 1917: nineteen seventeen

The early years of a century, e. g. from (19)01 to (19)12, have two forms: nineteen hundred and one, or nineteen-(oh)-one.

Years ending in '00' are said with 'hundred': 1900: nineteen hundred, but note 2,000: the year two thousand.

7.The time. Telling the time in everyday speech.

If a clock shows 10.00, the answer to the question "what's the time?" is: *It's ten o'clock, or ten, or it's ten.* The word o'clock is used only with exact hours, never with other times: *It's five past ten, etc.* When the hour is known, we can just say: *(It's) five past. (It's) five to.*

For past the hour we say: *(It's) five **past** (ten), a quarter **past** (ten).*

For before the hour we say: *(It's) twenty-five **to** (eleven), a quarter **to** (eleven).*

With all other combinations before the hour and past the hour, we say minutes: *three minutes to ten, twenty minutes to eleven.*

In AmE **after** is commonly used in place of **past** and **of** instead of **to**: a quarter of eleven. Informally, we sometimes say: *half ten* instead of *half past ten* and *ten fifteen, ten thirty* instead of using *a quarter and half*. Sometimes we say **a.m.** (ante meridiem, i.e. before midday) or **p.m.** (post meridiem i.e. after midday) for times before and after 12 noon. *I'll meet you at 5 p.m.* We also say **at noon** or **at midnight**. For 12 a.m. or 12 p.m.

The time in schedules and timetables.

The twenty-four hour clock is generally used for railway timetables.

These are written and spoken as follows:

09.00 nine hundred hours	21.00 twenty-one hundred hours
09.03 nine oh three	21.03 twenty-one oh three
09.10 nine ten	21.10 twenty-one ten
09.15 nine fifteen	21.15 twenty-one fifteen
09.30 nine thirty	21.30 twenty-one thirty
09.36 nine thirty-six	21.36 twenty-one thirty-six
09.45 nine forty-five	21.45 twenty-one forty-five

Which train do you want to catch? -I think I'll try to get the ten eighteen

1.6. Наречие / Adverb

The adverb is a word denoting circumstances or characteristics which attend or modify an action, state, or quality. It may also intensify a quality or characteristics.

There are **simple**, **derived**, **compound**, and **composite** adverbs.

Simple adverbs are *after, here, well, now, soon*, etc.

In **derived** adverbs the most common suffix is **-ly**, by means of which new adverbs are coined from adjectives and participles: *occasionally, lately, immediately, constantly, purely, slowly, charmingly*.

The less common suffixes are the following: *-wise -ward(s) -fold -like -most -way(s) clockwise, crabwise, corkscrew -wise, education- wise onward(s), backward(s), homeward(s), eastward(s) two-fold, manifold warlike innermost, outermost longways, sideways* Of these suffixes the first two are more productive than the rest.

Compound adverbs are formed of two stems: *sometimes, somewhere, everywhere, downstairs*, etc. **Composite** phrasal adverbs consist of two or more word-forms, as *a great deal, a little bit*,

far enough, now and then, from time to time, sort of, kind of, a hell of, a lot of, a great deal of.

There are three **degrees of comparison: positive, comparative**, and **superlative** degrees.

Adverbs that are identical in form with adjectives take inflections following the same spelling and phonetic rules as for adjectives:

early earlier earliest

late later latest

hard harder hardest

slow slower slowest

Several adverbs ending in **-ly** (quickly, loudly) form comparatives according to the same pattern, dropping their adverb-forming suffix. These adverbs acquired the form in **-ly** only recently and retained the older forms of the comparative and superlative:

quickly quicker quickest

loudly louder loudest

However most **disyllabic** adverbs in **-ly** and all **polysyllabic** ones form the comparative and superlative analytically, by means of **more** and **most**: wisely more wisely most wisely, softly more softly most softly, deeply more deeply most deeply.

The adverb often occurs with both types of comparison: *often oftener more often*

As with adjectives, there is a small group of adverbs with comparatives and superlatives formed from different stems (suppletive forms).

These comparatives and superlatives are identical with those for the corresponding adjectives and can be differentiated from the latter only syntactically: *well better best, badly worse worst, little less least, much more most, far further/farther furthest/farthest*

Which do you like best? This is least painful for you.

Either **farther (farthest)** or **further (furthest)** are used when speaking of places, directions, or distance: *He is too tired to*

walk any farther (further). But only further (furthest) is used with the meaning more, later: *Don't try my patience any further*.

Most of the adverbs, however, stand outside the degrees of comparison: pronominal adverbs denoting place and time (here, somewhere, there, sometimes, when), denoting manner (somehow, thus), and adverbs of manner denoting gradation (minimally, optimally, proximally - ближе к центру).

2. ГЛАГОЛ /VERB

2.1. Морфологическая структура глагола.

Основные формы глагола /Morphological structure. Basic forms

The verb is a part of speech which denotes an action. It has the following grammatical categories: **person, number, tense, aspect, voice and mood**. These categories can be expressed by means of affixes, inner flexion (change of the root vowel) and by form words.

Verbs may be **transitive** and **intransitive**.

Verbs have **finite forms** which can be used as the predicate of sentence and **non-finite forms** which cannot be used as the predicate of a sentence.

According to their **morphological structure** verbs are divided into:

- 1) simple (*read, live, hide, speak*),
- 2) derived, i. e. having affixes (*magnify, inherit, originate, undo, remarry*);
- 3) compound, i. e. consisting of two stems (*daydream, brow-beat*);
- 4) composite (phrasal), consisting of a verb and a postposition of adverbial origin (*sit down, look after, give up*).

The postposition often changes the meaning of the verb with which it is associated. Thus, there are composite verbs whose meaning is different from the meaning of their components: *to give up* — сдаваться, переставать.

The **basic forms** of the verb in Modern English are: **the Infinitive, the Past Indefinite and Participle II**: *to speak – spoke – spoken*. According to the way in which the Past Indefinite and Participle II are

formed, verbs are divided into three groups: **regular** verbs, **irregular** verbs, and **mixed** verbs.

Regular verbs. They form the Past Indefinite and Participle II by adding *-ed* to the stem of the verb, or only *-d* if the stem of the verb ends in *-e*.

to want — wanted, to open — opened, to live — lived

The pronunciation of *-ed* (*-d*) depends on the sound preceding it. It is pronounced:

/ / after *t, d*: *wanted* //, *landed* //;

/d/ after voiced consonants except *d* and after vowels: *opened* //, *played* //;

/t/ after voiceless consonants except *t*: *worked* //.

The following spelling rules should be observed:

(a) Final *y* is changed into *i* before the addition of *-ed* if it is preceded by a consonant.

to carry — carried to reply — replied

y remains unchanged if it is preceded by a vowel.

to enjoy — enjoyed

(b) If a verb ends in a consonant preceded by a short stressed vowel, the final consonant is doubled.

to stop — stopped, to plan — planned

to stir — stirred, to submit — submitted

Final *r* is doubled if it is preceded by a stressed vowel.

to occur — occurred, to prefer — preferred

Final *r* is not doubled when preceded by a diphthong.

to appear — appeared

Final *l* is doubled if it is preceded by a short vowel, stressed or unstressed:

to compel — compelled

Irregular verbs. Here belong the following groups of verbs:

(a) verbs which change their root vowel.

to sing — sang — sung to meet — met — met

(b) verbs which change their root vowel and add *-en* for Participle II.

to speak — spoke — spoken to write — wrote — written

(c) verbs which change their root vowel and add *-d* or *-t*.
to sell – sold – sold to bring – brought – brought

(d) verbs which change their final *-d* into *-t*.
to send – sent – sent to build – built – built

(e) verbs which have the same form for the Infinitive, Past indefinite and Participle II.

to put – put – put to set – set – set

(f) verbs whose forms come from different stems.
to be – was/were – been to go – went – gone

(g) special irregular verbs.
to have – had – had to make – made – made to do – did – done

(h) defective (anomalous) verbs.
can – could, may – might, will – would

Mixed verbs. Their Past Indefinite is of the regular type, and their Participle II is of the irregular type:

to show – showed – shown to sow – sowed – sown

According to the **syntactic function** of verbs, which depends on the extent to which they retain, weaken or lose their meaning, they are divided into **notional** verbs, **auxiliary** verbs and **link** verbs.

Notional verbs are those which have a full meaning of their own and can be used without any additional words as a simple predicate. Here belong such verbs as *to write, to read, to speak, to know, to ask*. e.g. *Ricky **surrounded** her with great care and luxury.*

Auxiliary verbs are those which have lost their meaning and are used only as form words, thus having only a grammatical function. They are used in analytical forms. Here belong such verbs as *to do, to have, to be, shall, will, should, would, may*. e.g. *I **don't recollect** that he ever did anything, at least not in my time.*

Link verbs are verbs which to a smaller or greater extent have lost their meaning and are used in the compound nominal predicate.

e.g. *The house **was** too big. The old face **looked** worn and hollow again.*

In different contexts the same verb can be used as a notional verb

and an auxiliary verb or a link verb:

e.g. ... *She **turned** her head sullenly away from me. (notional verb)*

*She... **turned** deadly **pale**. (link verb)*

There is a special group of verbs which cannot be used without additional words, though they have a meaning of their own. These are **modal verbs** such as *can, may, must, ought*, etc

The same verb in different contexts can be modal and auxiliary.

e.g. *I crouched against the wall of the gallery **so** that I **should** not **be seen**. (auxiliary verb)*

*I don't honestly think Lady Crowan was exaggerating when she said something **should be done** in **your honour**. (modal verb)*

2.2. Система видовременных форм глагола в активном залоге / Active voice tenses

The category of **tense** in English (as well as in Russian) expresses the relationship between the time of the action and the time of speaking. (Present, Past, Future)

The category of **aspect** shows the way or manner in which an action is performed. (Indefinite, Continuous, Perfect, Perfect Continuous)

INDEFINITE FORM

The Indefinite form merely shows that the action takes place in the present, past or future. The form of the verb gives no indication as to its duration or completion.

PRESENT INDEFINITE

The formation of the Present Indefinite.

1. The Present Indefinite is formed from the **infinitive** with-
out the particle to.

In the third person singular (**he, she, it**) the ending **-s** is added.

After a sibilant represented in spelling by *s, ss, ch, sh, tch, x, z* and after the vowel *o*, **-es** is added: *he writes, he reads, he speaks; he passes, he pushes, he watches, he teaches; he goes, he does.*

2. The pronunciation of the ending *-s (-es)* depends on the sound preceding it.

It is pronounced as: /əz/ after the sibilants /s/, /z/, /ʃ /, /ʒ /, /ʒ / : *passes, pushes, teaches, judges;*

/z/ after voiced non-sibilants and vowels: *reads /ri:dz/, lives /li:vz/, sees /si:z/;*

after voiceless non-sibilants: *works, wants.*

3. In the third person singular we find the following orthographical change:

A final *y* is changed into *i* if it is preceded by a consonant and then *-es* is added:

To study - he studies; to try - he tries.

After a vowel *y* is kept unchanged: *to play —he plays; to stay—he stays.*

4. The interrogative and the negative forms are formed by means of the Present Indefinite of the auxiliary verb *to do* and the infinitive of the notional verb without the particle *to*.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
<i>I work</i>	Do <i>I work?</i>	<i>I do not work</i>
<i>You work</i>	Do <i>you work?</i>	<i>You do not work</i>
<i>He (she, it) works</i>	Does <i>he (she, it) work?</i>	<i>He (she, it) does not work</i>
<i>We work</i>	Do <i>we work?</i>	<i>We do not work</i>
<i>They work</i>	Do <i>they work?</i>	<i>They do not work</i>

The use of the Present Indefinite.

The Present Indefinite is used to denote:

1. permanent states, customary and repeated actions and daily routines. This is its most characteristic use. e.g. He works in a bank. (permanent state)

He takes the train to work every morning. (daily routine/repeated actions)

The repeated character of the action is often shown by adverbials such as *often, usually, every day/week, sometimes, rarely/ seldom, always, on Mondays, in the evening, once a week*, etc.

2. Actions and states characterizing a given person.

e.g. She has many accomplishments: she **sings** and **plays** the piano beautifully.

3. universal truths and laws of nature, something which is eternally _____ true.

e.g. Magnet **attracts** iron.

The earth **rotates** round its axis.

4. actions going on at the present moment (with verbs not used _____ in _____ the _____ Continuous _____ form).

e.g. I **see** George in the street. Tell him to come in.

I **hear** somebody knock. Go and open the door.

5. _____ a _____ future _____ action:

(a) in adverbial clauses of time and condition after the conjunctions *when, till, until, before, after, as soon as, as long as, unless, on condition _____ that, _____ provided.*

e.g. Robert, will you mend me a pen or two **before** you **go**? (*Ch. Bronte*)

I promise not to try to see Robert again **till** he **asks** for me. (*Ch. Bronte*)

Note! It should be borne in mind that this use of the Present Indefinite occurs only in adverbial clauses of time and condition. In object and attributive clauses introduced by *when* the Future Indefinite is used.

e.g. I wonder when he **will give** us an answer. We are impatiently awaiting the day when our friends **will return** from their long journey.

(b) with verbs of motion, such as *to go, to come, to leave*, etc. The future action is regarded as something fixed - timetables (planes, trains, etc.) and programmes.

e.g. The train **leaves** at 10 to-morrow.

6. sports commentaries, reviews and narration.

a) Peterson **overtakes** Williams and **wins** the race. (sports commen-

tary)

b) Mike Dalton **plays** the part of Macbeth. (review)

c) Then the prince **gets** on his horse and quickly **rides** away. (narration)

Exercises: THE PRESENT SIMPLE TENSE

The use of the verb "to be" in the Present Simple tense.

I - am + He is a student.

He

She - is? Is he a student? It

We

You - are - He is not a student.

they

Ex.1. Find the proper end in the right column.

I is very young

† are foreigners

e

§ are at the University

he

I am hungry

t

\ is easy

e

\ is at work

ou

Ex. 2. Fill in the blanks with the required form of the verb "to be".

1. I... a student. 2. She ... a queen. 3. My cousin ... doctor.
4. We ... future interpreters. 5. Those people ... actors. 6. They ... my mother's friends. 7. Your dress ... nice. 8. His shoes ... awful. 9. The lectures in literature ... very interesting. 10. My dream ... to become a writer. 11. His family ... London. 12. Kate ... too young. 13. She ... seventeen. 13. The boys ... very funny. 14. I ... too tired to go with you.

Ex. 3. Make the sentences negative, interrogative.

1. The table is in the room. 2. I am crazy at tennis. 3. These windows are very dirty. 4. The girl is sad. 5. Cakes are tasty. 6. The street is too narrow. 7. My pencil is blue. 8. I am very young for this job. 9. There are four glasses on the table. 10. The sky is cloudless today. 11. Jane is a hard-working student. 12. I am married to John Smith. 13. The children are in the yard. 14. Our dog is under the tree. 15. Computers are very helpful. 16. My husband is in the garage. 17. I am glad to meet you here.

Ex. 4. Make a written translation of the text into Russian.

My name is Edward. I am eighteen and I am a first year student. I am from New Orleans, which is in America. It is not a very big city, but nice and green, especially in spring and summer.

Today is Monday. It is summer. The weather is not very hot, the sky is blue, the nature is beautiful, but as for me I am not happy. I am at home, at my books. I am cramming maths. Tomorrow is my exam in it. Frankly speaking maths is not my favourite. It is rather difficult and not very interesting. Most students are not good at it and we are afraid of the exam....

Ex. 5. Close your book and make a "hack-translation. Then check what you have with the original.

Ex. 6. Translate into English.

1. Детей нет дома, они в школе. 2. Где мой пенал? - Он на твоём столе. 3. Мама сейчас на работе. 4. Я учитель, я мой муж инженер. 5. Где твой учебник по истории? - Он в сумке. 6. Уже поздно. Пора спать. 7. Сейчас раннее утро, воздух свеж и прохладен. 8. Мои родители пенсионеры. 9. Ваш рассказ и очень интересен. 10. Я так рада с Вами встретиться. 11. Дети очень устали. 12. Почему ворота открыты? 13. Кто в доме? 14. Мы сегодня дежурные. 15. У нее такие красивые и густые волосы.

The use of the other verbs in the Present simple.

I – sleep + I work
he eats
he

She – sleeps? **Do** I work?

It **Does** he eat?

We

You - sleep - I **do not** work.

They He **does not** eat.

Ex. 7. Put the verbs into The Present Simple.

to write, to build, to watch, to brush, to appear, to have, to wear, to put on, to buy, to try, to spend, to change, to get back, to walk, to prefer, to go, to do, to say, to be, to earn.

Ex. 8. Open the brackets.

I'm Becky Smith. I (to work) as a postwoman. I (to deliver) magazines, newspapers and letters to different houses every morning. I (to like) my job and people (to say) I (to do) it not badly.

My day (to start) at 6 a.m. and (to be over) at 8.30 a.m. I usually (not to go to bed) early, so it (to be not easy) to get up in the morning. But when you (to know) how many people (to depend) on you, you (to feel) great responsibility. My clients often (to become) my friends, especially elderly people. They (to be) so lonely in this world and often (to need) tenderness and attention. Recently I've acquainted to one old gentleman. He (to live) alone and sometimes even (to have) nobody to talk to. So when I (to be) free I (to drop) into his house for a chat. He (to tell) me much interesting about his life and sometimes (to give) good advice. He (to say) he (to feel) happy after my visits.

Ex. 9. Read the text to yourself. Read it again quickly in singular.

My friends, the Bells, are very funny. They don't like to wear casual cloths. They prefer extravagant and bright ones. They say, they express themselves in this way. Though not very young, they can still put on yellow jumpers, red ties or purple blouses. They are even going to buy a bright green suit for their dog, Dolly. They believe it'll make her look smart. But the best time for their irrepressible fantasy is in October when they organise an annual fancy dress party on Halloween. All their guests wear funny masks, cloaks, pointed hats and disguising glasses. People dance, play tricks on each other, sing songs

and have a very good time. The Bells say they would like all people to follow this wonderful tradition.

Ex. 10. Put the questions to the italic words.

1. Jane *likes* her job very much. 2. *Students* do not attend classes in summer. 3. Police protect *people* from criminals. 4. Margaret *speaks* English fluently. 5. Our sportsman win golden medals *every year*. 6. Grey colour *seems* to be dominating this season. 7. Mr. Hugh has his *own* shop in the suburbs of Athens. 8. *A good actor* creates a new character every play. 9. *For twenty years* the curtain in the theatre rises and falls every evening. 10. Fashion in this season again draws *inspiration* from folklore. 11. Small hats *fit* stylish people. 12. *My Dad* cuts the grass in front of our house every Sunday. 13. Rita doesn't believe *in God*. 14. Many people feel sorry for *the fall* of Russia.

Ex. 11. Your neighbour, Mr. Hesitation, always doubts everything. When he says something, he always adds " do you?" or "isn't she?" etc. Play Mr. Hesitation in a talk with a friend:

Pattern: 1) - Mary takes after her father, doesn't she? - She does. Every time I look at her she reminds me of young Jack.

2) - I think pale colours don't become me, do they? - But they do. To my mind you look charming in your sky-blue costume.

Ex. 12. Pretend you are Mr. (Mrs.) Curiosity. You're always not satisfied with the facts you are given. You ask too many questions and interrupt people, but always make them speak. Try to squeeze as much information from your group-mate's story about his working day as you can (try to ask him all types of the questions).

Ex. 13. Mrs. Diana is a celebrity. You admire her talent and want to convince your friends, that you resemble her in everything. When you hear or read something about her, you always tell; "So do I" or "Neither do I".

Pattern: She never gets up early. - Neither do I.

Diana walks along the beach every evening. - So do I.

1. Diana hates going by planes, especially on isleseat5. 2. She says cars are most reliable and comfortable means of transport. 3. From her trips, she usually brings back necklaces, earrings, charms, and pictures. 4. She never dreams of anything, but theatre. 5. Mrs. Diana enjoys changing her image. 6. She never gives up things she wants to succeed in. 7. Diana never keeps to a diet, but manages to keep fit. 8. She doesn't fall ill in winter. 9. She hates doctors, hospitals and injections. 10. Mrs. Diana doesn't play the piano, but sings well.

Ex. 14. Open the brackets and put the verb in the required form.

Cars (to be) one of the most convenient and fastest means of transport. They (to be) very comfortable, but at the same time very dangerous. Unfortunately they can kill. I have just hardly come into my own after that terrible accident on M-5 in May. Now I can (to write) you everything.

You know, such accidents always (to change) the lives of people, the same happened to us. I still can't believe, but Johnson (to be dead). His mother (to take) a treatment course in hospital now, her face (to be) badly hurt. She can't get used to the idea that her son has died. She (to cry) every night.

Frank (to look after) Ruth. She (to be) too weak to walk herself and he kindly (to teach) her to. He (to be) a very devoted friend. He (to say), he (to be afraid) of cars now and will never drive the one again. He (to be going) to sell his.

Charles (to be) at home, but he (not to go) to the University and (to keep) saying he has changed his mind to become a doctor. After that accident he (to have)

problems with his eyes, so he (to stay) at home now. It (to be) strange, but he (not to remember) the accident well.

As for Carol, she (to come) to see him every day. She (to read) books, (to talk) to him or even (to sing) him songs sometimes. They (to watch) TV together, (to listen) to the music. I (to hope) Charles (to feel) comfortable with her. So now you (to understand), that just one little car and one glass of wine (to be) enough some-

times to break lives of many people. (To be) careful and always (to remember) that cars (can) kill." (After Ph. Prows " Accident")

Ex. 15. Translate into English.

1. Белл всегда злится по мелочам. 2. Неужели ты не понимаешь, что я люблю эту девушку. Она такая милая, добрая, симпатичная, наконец. 3. Каждый год с родителями мы ездим в горы. Ты не можешь себе представить, какое это удовольствие - мчатся на лыжах вниз по склону в морозный солнечный день. 4. Мне очень нравится твоя новая квартира, Джо. Она такая просторная, светлая и имеет все современные удобства, вот только, мне кажется, что желтый цвет обоев в гостиной не совсем подходит к мебели. Но может быть, я и не права. 5. Ты обязательно должен прочесть эту статью. Она такая забавная. Автор утверждает, что дельфины похожи на людей. 6. Мой рабочий день начинается в 9 и длится 7 часов. Вечером, когда возвращаюсь домой, я чувствую себя уставшей. Я принимаю душ, ужинаю, смотрю телевизор или читаю, затем иду спать. 7. Мой отец говорит, что каждый образованный человек должен владеть иностранным языком. Вот почему мы с братом учим английский. 8. У меня уходит пол часа, чтобы добраться до института. Обычно я езжу на трамвае или автобусе. Занятия – начинаются в двадцать минут четвертого, и я почти никогда не опаздываю, 9. В будние дни у Питера почти нет свободного времени, но он всегда старается прочитывать газеты, чтобы знать о новостях в стране. 10. Для многих людей комфорт в путешествии важнее скорости. Для меня же самый важный фактор - это безопасность. 11. Сегодня в продаже есть рубашки всех цветов и размеров. 12. Где работает Ваша жена? - Их компания занимается продажей недвижимости. Она работает агентом. 13. Один мой знакомый собирает работы молодых, но талантливых художников. Он надеется сделать на них состояние. 14. Уже много лет каждый сентябрь мы собираемся с друзьями в этом кафе. 15. Мой друг не любит хвастаться, но он действительно потрясающий музыкант.

PAST INDEFINITE

The Past Indefinite Tense of regular verbs is formed by adding **-ed** to the Infinitive: *to work – worked, to live – lived, to rain – rained*

The irregular verbs have a special form of the Past Indefinite Tense: *to go – went, to begin – began, to sit – sat*

The interrogative and negative forms are formed by means of the auxiliary verb did and the Infinitive of the notional verb without to:

Did you see the demonstration in Moscow yesterday?

He didn't take part in the meeting yesterday.

The past Indefinite is used:

1) to denote an action performed within a period of time which is already over. The time of the action is indicated by the adverbial of past time: ago, last year, yesterday, the other day, in 1995, etc. = a complete past action e.g. Last night my neighbours celebrated their wedding anniversary.

2) to denote repeated, habitual past actions or states. e.g. Every week he took his girl out. When I was a child I usually went to bed at 9.

When a habitual past action or state is in contrast with the present, the expression —used to+Infinitive is used. e.g. He used to like comedies (but he doesn't now) We didn't use to go to concerts (but we do now).

The construction —would+Infinitive is also used to describe repeated past actions (but not states). It is more common for written language and often occurs in reminiscences. e.g. On Sundays, when I was a child, we would get up early and go fishing.

3) to denote a succession of single past actions (events, facts) or states. e.g. He got out of bed, opened the window and lay down again.

4) to denote reported present-time actions (according to the rules of Sequence of Tenses). e.g. Kate said to me: —I'm a first-year

student. (direct speech) Kate told me (that) she was a first-year student. (indirect/reported speech) Jane asked: —Do you have dinner at home as a rule? Jane wondered if I had dinner at home as a rule.

5) to denote an action occupying a period of time in the past, when the fact that the action took place is more important than its duration. e.g. He lived in Minsk for 2 years and then moved to Moscow.

Exercises: THE PAST SIMPLE TENSE

Ex. 1. Divide the given verbs into two columns (regular and irregular) and give three forms of the verbs.

To be, to blow, to wash, to ask, to choose, to play, to see, to put, to run, to come, to admire, to face, to fall, to steal, to grow, to keep, to relax, to wear, to agree, to cost, to learn, to have.

Ex. 2. Compose the sentences of your own in the past with the verbs given in exercise 1.

Ex. 3. Open the brackets and put the verb into the Past Simple tense.

1. Professor Openshore (to give) the whole life to studying Psychic Phenomena. He always (to lose) his temper if anybody (to say) that he (to believe) in ghosts. But he also (to go furious) If anybody (to say) that ghosts (not to exist). He (to use) to say to his friend Father Brown, that he (to try) to explain psychic phenomena scientifically. Professor (can) explain the appearance of ghosts almost in all cases, but cases of disappearance of people (to be) much more difficult. Only yesterday he (to receive) a letter about the most mysterious one - a man (to read) a magic book and (to be kidnapped) by the devil.

2. Author Conan Doyle (to be born) in Edinburgh, Scotland 1859. He (to go) to school in England and in Austria. He then (to study) medicine at Edinburgh, University. He (to become) a doctor in England, but he also (to find) time to write. He (to spend) almost a year as a ship's doctor, travelling around the world. In 1891 he (to stop) practicing medicine and (to become) a full-time writer. Conan Doyle (to write) many different kinds of books. Some of them (to be)

historical, some he (to devote) to the war, but those, which (to make) him famous (to be) the stories about Sherlock Holmes. Later the author (to collect) them together as The Adventures of Sherlock Holmes. People immediately (to fall in love) with that clever gentleman, who (to solve) big mysteries using tiny details and his devoted friend, Dr, Watson, who (to follow) him everywhere, but (to be) not as quick to understand as Holmes.

Soon the author (to get tired) of his famous heroes, and (to create) a story of Holmes mysterious death. He (to die) in the violent streams of the water -fall. Under such circumstances (to perish) the cleverest man of all times.

Ex. 4. Render the story in the Past Simple Tense.

Peter wakes up. He opens his eyes. He is in the house. He is lying on the floor in Mary's room. Mary isn't there. The room is dark. There's a big piece of wood near the window.

Peter's head hurts. He tries to move his hands. He can't. His hands are tired behind his back. His feet are tired too. Peter doesn't know what the time is. He doesn't know what day it is. His mouth is dry. He makes an attempt to shout, he calls for somebody. No one comes. Only dead silence comes as an answer. Then a brilliant idea strikes his mind. He moves his legs to and fro. Slowly he approaches the window.

Ex. 5. Finish the story given above. Imagine how Peter managed to escape and what happened then.

Ex. 6. Make the following sentences negative or interrogative.

1. I saw him coming into the room. 2. There was another child in the waiting- room. 3. Our horse won the race. 4. Jack was the only soul who wanted to save my life. 5. My aunt took all possible care of her husband. 6. We called her manly woman for the strong mind and will. 7. Holmes looked impatiently at watch. 8. A stranger seated himself into a big armchair. 9. A brilliant idea struck my mind. 10. He had a fine-cut wooden stick in his hand.

Ex. 7. Ask your friend if he did the same before.

Pattern: I am a student.- Were you a student last year?

Jack is in London now. - Was he there two years ago?

1. Look, it is raining. 2. My stepsister is a very easy-going girl. 3. I think, I'm very close to my mother-in-law. 4. Now I'm always in a hurry in the morning, guess Bobby will be an honest and devoted friend for our daughter. 6. Jill's band is rather absent-minded, but all in all he is a kind fellow. 7. Well, people in Italy are fun-loving and friendly. 8. Every morning I have a cup of coffee and a toast. 9. She visits the morning service in the church every day. 10. Lessy often shows me her notes. 11. He seems rather strange to me. 12. I support the head's decision.

Ex. 8. Pretend you do not hear well. Ask your interlocutor to repeat, don't forget being polite.

Pattern: At the lesson we wrote a composition. -I beg you pardon, did you composition?

1. Jane seemed to me rather independent and extravagant. Mr. Done drove a car and took goods to Clivdon. 3. On her knees Mrs. Jason held a bright red hand bag. 4. We had a fight and he ripped all my pictures up. 5. When we were young she was energetic and creative enough to carry this project on. 6. To tell you truth, it was rather difficult to keep to such a strict diet. 7. Though having a sore tooth, I managed to cut down on cakes and lost three kilos. 8. Helen couldn't stand his behaviour any longer. 9. She was fed up with Nick's thoughtless tricks. 10. My father-in-law tried that suit on, but it did not become him, though fitted perfectly. 11. Her parents thanked us by giving enormous bunches of flowers.

Ex. 9. You are in a very bad mood and just give short answers on the less questions your curious neighbour asks on the phrase he has heard you.

Pattern:

- I was going to travel around Europe, but didn't, because of a
- Did you catch cold? -I didn't.
- Where exactly were you going to travel?

Ex. 10. Choose the Present or Past Simple.

Dear, Patric,

I'm (to enjoy) myself very much in Athens. The people (to be) very friendly here. The weather (to be) fantastic. The whole atmosphere of this place and the ancient air (to make) me feel dizzy.

Yesterday I (to go) to The Acropolis. It really (to charm) me. The walls (to be) so white. You (can) see all the way to Piraeus from there. I (to spend) at that place some unforgettable minutes and (to take) many photos. I also like Greek food very much. The restaurants (to work) until late at night. And Greek wine (to be) wonderful. I (to taste) it on the very first day of my coming. They say, it (to treat) all diseases, especially heart ones. Frankly speaking, I (not feel) it.

How (to be) things in London? I (to think) about you a lot. Why you (not come) out here for a holiday? Last Saturday I (to make up one's mind) to stay here for another two weeks.

I (to hope) you (not to miss) me too much,
Love, Mary.

Ex. 11. Give the literary translation of the story below.

Do it in writing.

This story was told by a friend of mine several years ago. It happened in those times when he was young and worked at one hotel in Boston where he lived with his family. He didn't think, his job was very interesting. It was rather difficult and sometimes boring to help visitors with their endless problems.

But one day he remembered best of all. It was very exciting. A famous millionaire, John D. Rockefeller, visited his small hotel. My friend said that though Rockefeller was very rich and gave away millions, he himself was very mean about small sums of money. He never wasted his money on luxury.

At the hotel he asked for the cheapest room they had. He inquired about its conveniences, what floor it was on and again about the price. He said that he was going to stay there himself and that he didn't care comfort much. He was just interested in the room with the lowest price.

After filling all the necessary papers, Rockefeller got the key from the smallest and the cheapest room. To tell you the truth, my friend, the manager, was very surprised with his behaviour. He didn't

expect the richest man booking the cheapest room and he dared to ask him a question. He wondered why he had chosen such a poor apartment. He also added, he had heard that Rockefeller's son always booked the most expensive rooms at the hotels. The millionaire smiled to my friend and said: "His father is a wealthy man; mine isn't."

Ex. 12. Make the back-translation of the story.

Ex. 13. Translate the sentences into Russian and explain the difference in their use.

I used to skate in winter when I was young. 2. Yesterday we drank coffee with milk. 3. We used to talk every evening, but now he is too busy. 4. I finished reading this book last months. 5. He used to reread his notes every week, but then gave up this habit. 6. We ate too much yesterday. 7. Jack used to oversleep. 8. I took a taxi to work last morning. 9. Our family used to have dinner together. 10. He called me "fatty" and I took offense. 11. My sister-in-law used to be fat, but now she's as slender as a model. 12. Maggie used to be extremely naughty, but yesterday she Was unbelievably quiet.

Ex. 14. Change the statements.

Pattern: I don't eat chocolate. - I used to eat chocolate when I was a child.

1. I never sleep in the daytime. 2. People don't often go to the cinema these days. 3. My husband hates getting up early. 4. Liz doesn't play with puppets any more. 5. She has few close friends now. 6. German is not so difficult for me now. 7. Rostov isn't clean and green nowadays. 8. The Tower in London is a museum. 9. I'm not a great fan of basketball. 10. Jody doesn't like to speak of her private life. 11. We don't go out much nowadays.

Ex. 15. Translate into English.

1. На Рождество я надеялась получить новую куклу но родители подарили мне книгу о животных 2 В тот день Мэг вернулась рано из школы 3. Когда мы встретились на углу улицы Моншери, она была одета в футболку и джинсы 4. Когда мы были детьми, мы обычно очень хорошо ладили 5. Единственное что я помню о своей мачехе - это то, что она была довольно доброй и

привлекательной женщиной средних лет 6. Я плохо помню своего отца. Я лишь знаю, что они развелись с мамой, когда я был грудным ребенком 7. Я нашла ее в магазине примеряющей шляпку. Было забавно смотреть, как она надевала то ту, то другую. Одна не подходила ей по размеру, другая - к цвету ее глаз, третья не гармонировала с ее пальто. Мы провели в магазине целый час и очень устали, а она все не могла решиться. 8. Джек был слишком молод, чтобы быть свидетелем на их свадьбе. 9. Раньше, когда я был подростком, я часто вел себя неприлично. Я любил шокировать публику, особенно англичан, ведь они такие чопорные. Ужас на их лица! был для меня лучшей похвалой. 10. На собеседовании он спросил меня каким должен быть начальник. Я была абсолютно не готова к такому вопросу. Что я могла ответить? - Ответственным, сообразительным, честным.... Последнее качество произвело на него впечатление. Так я получила эту работу. 11. Когда мой племянник был маленьким, он часами слушал мои сказки. 12. Он уверен, что Элен сделала все, что было в ее силах, чтобы оградить семью от краха. 13. Ник настоял, чтобы я открыла ему свои планы. Они показались ему довольно смелыми и амбициозными. 14. Мэгэн купила это платье на свои первые заработанные деньги. 15. Раньше я много занимался спортом сейчас у меня нет времени. 16. Микки потерял равновесие и упал. 17. Эта новость вывела меня из себя, и я не помню, как я выбежала из комнаты и бросилась к телефону. 18. Мне было тринадцать, когда на вечеринке я впервые поцеловал девушку. Мой старший брат увидел это. Я ужасно смутился и покраснел. 17. Когда папа узнал, он страшно рассердился. 18. В воскресенье я смотрела потрясающий концерт, посвященный дню учителя. 19. Раньше мы много путешествовали. 20. Куда вы ездили летом в отпуск? 21. Когда Вы были за границей в последний раз? 22. Раньше моя сестра ходила с ума по кино, но сейчас у нее другие увлечения.

FUTURE INDEFINITE

The Future Indefinite Tense is formed by means of the auxiliary verb **will + infinitive** of the notional verb without to.

He will help her. They will study better.

The Future Indefinite Tense is used:

1) to denote a pure future action (which is inevitable and out of anybody's control). Reference to the future is indicated by the adverbials of future time tomorrow, in a week, next year, etc. e.g. It will snow a lot in winter. She'll be 30 next Friday.

2) to denote decisions taken at the moment of speaking (an action which is not part of a plan). = a spontaneous decision. e.g. It is cold in here. I'll turn on the heating.

3) to denote actions or predictions (hopes, fears, threats, offers, promises, warnings, requests, comments, etc.) which may or may not happen in the future. = a probable future action. e.g. I think they will easily win the match. I'm sure you'll enjoy your visit to the Zoo.

4) to denote things we are not yet sure about or we haven't decided yet. e.g. Maybe I'll buy a car.

5) in object clauses to denote future actions. e.g. She is anxious to know if they will manage to enter the hall before the performance begins.

6) to denote refusals, resistance, reluctance to do smth (with will in the negative form) and typical behaviour (in the affirmative sentences with will for all persons). e.g. The door won't open. She'll sit for hours.

Note: Shall is used with I/we in questions for an instruction, recommendation, advice or to offer help. e.g. Shall we do it right now? Shall I send him a fax? Shall I help you? Shall we play tennis? but : Will you be quiet, please? Will you get me a paper?

The Future Indefinite Tense is not used: in adverbial clauses of time and condition introduced by when, till, until, as soon as, as long as, before, if, unless:

I shall go for a walk if the weather is fine.

We shall phone him as soon as he arrives in Moscow.

The construction There is is used in the Future Indefinite in the following way:

There will be a holiday party tomorrow.

There will not be any holiday party tomorrow.

There will be no holiday party tomorrow.

Will there be a holiday party tomorrow?

The construction to be going to is often used to express an intended future action:

I am going to take part in the concert on Sunday.

Exercises: THE FUTURE SIMPLE TENSE

Ex. 1. Open the brackets to render future.

1.1 (to be) fourteen next year. 2. He (to come) to visit us on Tuesday. 3. You (to miss) your exam if you don't study hard. 4. John (to come) to our party tomorrow. 5. We (to be) back in several days. 6. My cousins (to buy) this picture on the exhibition on Sunday. 7. I (to go) to London the day after tomorrow. 8. You (to feel) better after this medicine. 9. Mother (to bake) the cake as soon as she is back from the shop. 10. She (to meet) him at the meeting next week.

Ex. 2. Put questions to the words in italic.

1. My mother will *punish* me for this. 2. *You* will recognize him at once. 3. Michel will book *the tickets* beforehand. 4. I will get up *tomorrow* at 6 a.m. 5. *They* won't answer your questions. 6. There will be some of his *new* paintings on sale. 7. We won't be able to finish it *before Monday*. 8. You will *learn* about the time of her arrival later. 9. *The plain* will land on time. 10. This evening will be *the best* in your life. 11. Gill won't pass her *examination*. 12. You will find *much Interesting* in this lecture.

Ex. 3. Open the brackets and put the verb in the required tense.

Dreaming about future is a great pleasure and a kind of spending my free hours for me. I believe that our life (change) greatly and I hope not to worse. There (lie) no wars and diseases in the 21st century. People (become) healthier, stronger and more kind-hearted. They (care) each other more than themselves and (stop) polluting

environment. Their looks (stay) the same, but the souls (be) more noble and pure. People (get) also cleverer and (make) many great discoveries, which (turn) our life to the absolutely new way.

Besides we (face) great changes in technics and science. Super-sonic planes (cut) the sky above our heads, super-powerful space-ships (fly) to the new planets and probably we (find) there human-like creatures and (start) relations with them. New technologies (help) our doctors to find medicine against all possible diseases and people (cease) suffering.

The climate (become) warmer and our planet (sink) in trees in blossom and flowers with beautiful fine scent. New types of birds and animals (appear).

I (change) too. I (grow) older and I hope wiser. I think I (feel) happy in my old years because I (can) see all these changes with my own eyes and probably to participate in some of them. But I'm absolutely sure that one thing (remain) the line for ever- love. My grandchildren (fall in love) as I did when I was young. They (have) all these magic feelings in their hearts, but I hope they (be) more talented than me and (turn) them into beautiful sonnets....

Ex. 4. Turn the text into the Future Simple tense;

One day Brother Fox invited some of the other creatures to us house. He asked Brother Bear, Brother Wolf and Brother Raccoon to come. But he didn't ask me, Brother Rabbit. All the same, I learnt about this dinner-party and got offended. I decided to play a trick on Brother Fox and his guests. The creatures who received his invitation gathered at his house, sat down at the table and started eating, laughing and talking. By-and by Brother Fox took out a bottle of wine and opened it.

And what do you think I was doing at that time, while they were entertaining themselves? I was preparing my tricks. I took my old drum with two sticks and marched to their house. Then I started drumming so loudly that they could not hear anything. Poor creatures begged me to stop, but I didn't. I threatened to do it until they gave up and let me in. I made them sit me down at the table and treat with their tasty strawberry cake. Then I helped myself with a glass of wine

and felt revenged at last, but I still kept my drum near-by in case they might ask me out. Don't you think, it was one of the most brilliant ideas that had ever come across my tricky mind? (Negro folk tales)

Ex. 5. You are a fortune teller.

A young and pretty girl comes to you to learn her future. Tell her the story using the following prompts to be on holidays, to visit a faraway country, to have a very good time, to enjoy exotic food and traditions, to miss home, to meet a very handsome young man, to fall in love, to become rich, to have many children, to make a career, to live long and happily.

Future action

fixed arrangements decisions taken at the moment of speaking

I **am going** to play tennis at five. I **am playing** tennis at five. I **will play** tennis at five.

Ex. 6. Translate the sentences into Russian and explain the use of tenses.

1. I'm meeting my brother at the station tomorrow evening.
 2. Today the weather is fine, we'll play football.
 3. It is so hot, I'll drink something cold.
 4. We are taking an exam in French on the 15-th of October.
 5. The staff is discussing the results of the term at the sitting of the chair.
 6. I shall read this book as soon as I have time.
 7. Kate is going to spend her vacation with her Granny.
 8. Don't worry. I will find them.
 9. Mrs. Green is going to pick me up the evening.
 10. What a pity Gill won't be able to see Oxford.
 11. Mike is going to quit this business.
 12. We are leaving for Glasgow on Tuesday

Ex. 7 Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. Dad says we will leave by the six o'clock train.
 2. The day is so lovely, **I'm** going to swim in the river a little.
 3. What an awful news) I'm telling it immediately to Jack.
 4. Sorry, but I will go to the theatre tonight. I've already promised.
 5. Liz will graduate from the University this year.
 6. The waiter says we are beginning in a minute.
 7. Look, I don't love him any more. We are divorcing.
 8. Bar bara will visit us tomorrow in the evening. We've invited her.
 9. Will you read a lecture on Wednesday? We've read your ad and will come.

Ex. 8. Pretend you are a curious journalist interviewing a famous film star who is going to Los Angeles next week. Ask him/her as many questions as you can and make her open her plans to you.

Pattern: So you are going to Los Angeles. Will it be a business or just a kind of a relaxing trip?

S.: I don't know yet Time will show

J.: But still, will you sign any contract: and by the way, where will you stay: at the hotel or at your villa?

Ex. 9. Match sentences in the left column with those in the right one.

If the weather is rainy	I'll nick it from you.
If I were younger	I would marry her
When I'm free	he'll buy tickets to the theatre
If you don't present me this mug	Jane'll have to take her umbrella
Until my niece recovers	I'll definitely read this poem
If Phillip eats much ice-cream	you'll find this definition
If we had more money	they'll become famous
When you look into the dictionary	Mary won't excuse you
As soon as Mike gets his salary	he'll fall ill
If our team wins this match	I'll quit his business
Until you apologize	We would buy a car
If they sign this contract	I won't leave the city

Ex. 10. Translate the sentences into Russian and explain the use of tenses.

1. If something is wrong, we will call you. 2 If I could marry this girl, I would be the happiest man in the world. 3. If I spoke Eng-

lish fluently, I would have no difficulties in England. 4. When Robert tells you this story, you will get angry 5. If I had enough power, I would stop all the wars. 6. They won't send a telegram, unless there is something urgent. 7. There would be a lot of tourists if they built a comfortable hotel. 8. If you don't follow what I say you will fail your exam. 9. If she watered the flowers, they wouldn't fade. 10. As soon as the lecture is over. I'll have a talk with you.

Ex. 11. Open the brackets and put the verb in the required tense.

1. If he (to buy) the ticket on the plane, he will be in time. 2. When I graduate from the University, I (to start) to work 3. If they (to get) some news, they old let me know. 4. If you don't know German well, you (to be able) to work as an interpreter. 5. If you ever (to fall in love), you'll forget of everything, in the world. 6. When Mike has birthday, he (to invite) you. 7. As long as she (to love) him, she will forgive him everything. 8. He will be under suspicion until he (to confess). 9. If we knew about his cruel plans, we (can) prevent the crime. 10. We will be enemies until he (to change his mind).

Ex. 12. Complete the sentences.

A. 1. If I agreed then ... 2. When Mum learns. ... 3. When I meet the girl of my ' dream... 4. Until it stops... 5. If she were me... 6. If he doesn't discuss the problem... 7. If Jill didn't leave me alone... 8. After the postman brings the magazine... 9. If your story were not so unbelievable...

B. 1. Mike would never agree... 2. She will follow your advice... 3. They would regret of their behaviour... 4. I will understand nothing... 5. We won't disturb him... 6. It would be great... 7. Helen would stop being obsessed... 8. They1 will buy a dog... 9. You will enjoy your trip ... 10. Kit would present her the best flowers...

Ex. 13. Continue the following chain stories.

1. If I were a millionaire, I would have much money. If I had much money I would... 2. As soon as I graduate from the University... 3. If I live long to be one hundred ... 4. If I met a lion... 5. When I have my holidays... 6. As soon as I come home... 7. If I were a president...

Ex. 14. Translate these sentences into English.

1. Как ты думаешь, что случится, если она не последует его совету. 2. Завтра я ей все расскажу. 3. Джейн говорит, что в следующие выходные она поведет детей в зоопарк. 4. Как только мы получим какую-либо информацию, мы свяжемся с вами. 5. Поезд отправляется через три часа. 6. Как только мы закончим ужинать, я помою посуду и позвоню тебе. 7. Мы с мужем собираемся поменять обстановку в квартире, поэтому в понедельник мы идем в мебельный салон, чтобы выбрать новую стенку. 8. Что будете заказывать? - Я, пожалуй, возьму свекольник и отбивную с картошкой пюре на, второе. 9. Мама скоро придет с работы, а у нас такой беспорядок. 10. Если бы я была моложе, я бы показала тебе, как это делается. 11. В субботу я повешу эти новые гардины и постелю ковер. 12. Если ты не прекратишь слушать эту кошмарную мелодию, я сойду с ума. 13. Я уверена, Кейт удивится, когда узнает такую новость. 14. Если они подпишут этот контракт, они провалят все дело. 15. Обещаю, что в Нью-Йорке я постараюсь придерживаться диеты и есть только здоровую пищу. Но если я поправлюсь, я урежу себя в сладком. 16. Мой брат не сможет пойти с нами на вечеринку, потому что он участвует в концерте. Но даже если бы он и не участвовал, он все равно бы остался дома. Он не любит шумных компаний. 17. Я прочитала в газете, что Уитни споет свою новую песню на концерте в Августе. 18. Боюсь, она не сможет удержаться и съест пару пирожных. 19. В моем багаже лишних пять килограмм, мне придется заплатить за перевес в аэропорту. 20. Завтра в три она играет в теннис с Генри. 21. Ес-

ли я не растеряюсь, я решу все задачи на экзамене. 22. Не беспокойся, если бы у нас закончились деньги, мы бы дали тебе телеграмму. 23. Мег сделает все возможное, чтобы уберечь семью от развала. Для этого-то она и едет в Манчестер завтра первым же поездом. 24. Если ты будешь ему противоречить, он разозлится. А если он разозлится, ты уже никогда не сможешь его убедить. 25. Если бы люди думали не только о настоящем, но и о будущем, они бы не загрязняли природу, а сохранили бы ее для своих внуков. 26. Помните, когда последняя рыба будет отравлена и спилено последнее дерево, вы поймете, что деньги это ничто.



Summary table on Indefinite Tense

Meaning	Time Indicators	Present	Past	Future
A habitual repeated action	every day, every other day, often, frequently never, sometimes, as a rule, regularly, always	<i>They go to the seaside every summer. She seldom reads in the evening</i>	<i>They visited picture gallery every day last summer</i>	<i>I don't think it will rain often this month. She will help you with grammar twice a week</i>
The manifestation of the fact itself	present-now, nowadays, at the present time past-yesterday, the day before yesterday, a year ago, last year future-tomorrow, the day after tomorrow, next year, tonight, soon	<i>Nowadays people eat a lot</i>	<i>We met her at the station yesterday</i>	<i>They will meet soon.</i>



Практическая грамматика первого иностранного языка

<p>An action going on at the present moment/with the verbs not used in the Progressive/.</p>	<p>The verbs of sense perception and mental activity :to see, to hear, to understand, to realize, to smell....</p>	<p><i>I hear somebody knocking. Open the door</i></p>	<p><i>She felt well at 5.</i></p>	<p><i>You will see me approaching the house at 6</i></p>
<p>Universal truth</p>		<p><i>Light is more than sound. Water boils at 100 degrees</i></p>		
<p>A succession of the past action</p>			<p><i>He put on his coat, took the umbrella and left the house</i></p>	



Практическая грамматика первого иностранного языка

6

<p>An action in the very near future</p>	<p>tomorrow, the day after tomorrow, soon, in a day, next morning..</p>	<p><i>Tomorrow I leave for London. His brother arrives in two days</i></p>		
<p>An action that points out the beginning of another action</p>	<p>since, when, before + Clause</p>		<p><i>The children were playing when Nick came</i></p>	
<p>A future action in the adverbial clauses of time and real condition</p>	<p>when, till, until, as soon as, if, unless + Clause</p>	<p><i>Our granny will visit us when the weather improves</i></p>		



CONTINUOUS TENSE

The continuous form expresses an action going on at a certain moment or for a certain period of time in the present, past or future. All the Continuous Tenses show the process of the action itself.

PRESENT CONTINUOUS

The Present Continuous is formed by means of the Present Indefinite of the auxiliary verb to be (**am/is/are**) and **Participle I** of the notional verb.

In the interrogative form the auxiliary verb is placed before the subject.

In the negative form the negative particle *not* is placed after the auxiliary verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I am reading	Am I reading?	I am not read-
He is reading	Is he reading?	ing
She is reading	Is she reading?	He is not reading
We are reading	Are we reading?	She is not reading
You are reading	Are you reading?	We are not reading
They are reading	Are they reading?	You are not reading
		They are not reading

The present continuous is used:

1) to denote an action taking place at the present moment:

a) at the moment of speaking. The moment of speaking is indicated by the adverbials: at the moment, now, at present, just now, right now, etc. e.g. The woman is wearing a white blouse and a black skirt. Nell is putting down the examples on the blackboard.

b) during the present period of time or around the present moment (in this case now obviously has a broader meaning) = a temporary situation.

The durative character of the action may be expressed by the adverbial modifiers all day/night/morning, the whole day, still, etc.



e.g. They are very busy all this time, they are preparing for exams. David is collecting material for his new book now. She is working in Paris this week.

There might be two simultaneous (parallel) actions in progress: e.g. I'm writing the letter while the children are playing in the garden.

2) to denote the nearest future action which is planned or arranged. e.g. I'm seeing Rachel tonight. We aren't going anywhere for Christmas, we are staying at home. The construction —to be going to is often used for the same purpose. e.g. I'm going to explore the neighbourhood.

3) to show the unusual frequency of an action in the present. It is often used with the adverbials of frequency always, constantly, never, again, etc. The speaker conveys the feeling of irritation, surprise or criticism (wants to give emotional colouring to his sentence). e.g. Mr. Stone is always grumbling. He is constantly making comments about my weight.

4) to denote actions or states having a dynamic character. = changing and developing situations. e.g. The climate is getting warmer. Mary is putting on weight. His health is improving.

5) to express a continual process. It is often used with the adverbials of frequency always, constantly, ever, etc.12 e.g. The earth is ever moving. The sun is ever shining

Some verbs do not usually have the forms of the continuous aspect.

They are referred to as state/stative verbs.

Verbs expressing sense perception: to see (видеть), to watch (смотреть), to notice (замечать), to hear (слышать), to smell (чувствовать запах), to taste (чувствовать вкус), to feel (чувствовать).

Verbs expressing emotional state: to care, to detest, to envy, to fear, to hate, to hope, to like, to love, to prefer, to want, to wish.

Verbs expressing mental state: to assume, to believe, to consider, to doubt, to expect, to find, to forget, to imagine, to know, to



mean, to mind, to notice, to perceive, to remember, to suggest, to suppose, to think, to understand.

Note: Care should be taken to distinguish between some of these verbs denoting a mental state proper and the same verbs used in other meanings. In the latter case continuous aspect forms also occur. Compare, for example, the following pairs of sentences:

I consider (believe) her to be a very good student. I'm still considering (studying) all the pros and cons.

I expected (supposed, thought) you'd agree with me. I could not come for I was expecting (waiting for) a friend at the time.

I feel (suppose) there is something wrong about him. I'm feeling quite cold.

I think (suppose) you're right. I am thinking over (studying) your offer

I am forgetting things more and more now (beginning to forget).

She is understanding grammar better now (beginning to understand).

Moreover, all the verbs stated above can occur in the continuous aspect when the ideas they denote are to be emphasized: *Don't shout, I'm hearing you perfectly well! Why are you staring into the darkness? What are you seeing there?*

Exercises: THE CONTINUOUS TENSE

Ex. 1. Form Participle I. Mind the spelling rules.

Beat, wait, catch, drink, carry, hurry, enjoy, write, come, have, make, ride, use, agree, see, run, hit, let, put, sit, begin, forget, prefer, occur, differ, upset, label, travel, quarrel, signal, kidnap, worship, panic, picnic, traffic, lie, die, tie.

Ex. 2. Divide the verbs into two groups, a) form the Continuous, b) don't form the Continuous. Explain why. Give



the correct translation into Russian. Make up some sentences of your own.

read, be, talk, look, see, clean, leave, work, sweep, hear, think, drink, slop, know, write, understand, make, want, love, put, fall, walk, sew, shut, hate, print, paint, belong.

Ex. 3. Make up as many sentences as possible.

I be writing a letter
You be listening to the radio
They not be painting be raining not be snowing
Pete be telling a joke not be smiling
My sister not be reading

Ex. 4. Ask as many questions as possible (general, alternative, disjunctive, special).

1. I am taking an exam in English now. 2. He is walking in the park with his, friend. 3. Her cousin is playing the piano in the next room. 4. We're studying. English writers this week. 5. They are reading a new novel of this writer.

Ex. 5. Transfer the sentences using the Present Continuous. Change the adverbials. Mind the adverbials used with the Simple (rare, often, etc.) and those used with the Continuous (now, still, at the moment, today, this week just (как раз), etc.). Translate.

1. Jane often helps her sister. 2. He rare reads detective stories. 3. Sometimes I listen to rock music. They usually do their homework after dinner. She cleans her room once a week. My sister washes the floor two times a month. Tom writes a letter to his parents on Sundays. They always laugh at his jokes. Nelly plays the piano every day. He sleeps till 7 o'clock on weekdays. All the time he wears his old jeans.

Ex. 6. Make up ten sentences with the Present Simple Tense basing on the unit and transfer them into the Present Continuous.

Ex. 7. Explain, why the Present Continuous is not used in the following sentences despite the fact that the action in them take place at the of speaking. Translate:



1. The phone is ringing. Who's it for, I wonder? 2. You talk as if your son is a little boy 3. Your plan sounds dull. 4. There was a burst of laughter. «They have a good time». 5. The whole thing must be done quickly. That leaves us no alternative 6. Sam, do you hear me? 7. Why do you talk to me like that? 8. I feel that I am guilty. 9. Do you think there may be some mistakes here? 10. Why do you ask me?

Ex. 8. Explain the use of the tense with the verbs, which usually don't take the Continuous Translate into Russian. Mind that they are polysemantic (have more than one lexical meaning). Example: to see - видеть, провожать, to think - думать, обдумывать, размышлять, to admire - восхищаться, любоваться.

1. I have three brothers. 2. They are having lunch now. 3. I see that you are busy. 4. Jack is seeing Nelly home. 5. He is seeing his English friends off. 6. She sees a beautiful flower. 7. We are seeing the New Year in at our relatives'. 8. We are seeing the sights of London. 9. They think that you are right. 10. I'm thinking of the future meeting. 11. We think the same. 12. He's thinking about the situation. 13. He admires her character. 14. She is admiring the view. 15. She is looking very tired. 16. She looks pale. 17. I feel something is wrong. 18. I'm feeling weak. 19. I hear you. 20. Don't shout, I'm hearing you quite well. 21. I hate being late. 22. I'm hating your rude behaviour. 23. She wears fashion clothes. 24. She is wearing a blue hat.

Ex. 9. Explain the use of the Present Continuous for repeated actions. It impresses exaggeration (you do smth. more often than it is necessary) when we are irritated, surprised, pleased. Use the adverbials: always, continuously, constantly, repeatedly, perpetually, all the time. Translate into Russian.

1. You are always losing your things. 2. She is always pitying everybody! 3. They are constantly being late for the lecture. 4. He is always telling lies. 5. You are always writing without mistakes. 6. We are always quarrelling. 7. She is constantly thinking about you. 8. My



aunt is always grumbling. 9. I'm repeatedly hearing strange stories about him. 10. She is continually mocking at me.

Ex. 10. Speak about the irritating habits of your relatives, friends.

Ex. 11. Explain the use of the Present Continuous to denote future actions (planned and arranged). Translate.

1. She is leaving tomorrow. 2. The boat is sailing next week. 3. He is returning on Monday. 4. We are having dinner at the Browns next Saturday. 5. He is playing football at the weekend. 6. We are spending next winter in Australia. 7. He is leaving tomorrow morning on the 9.00 train. 8. The train is leaving in ten minutes.

Ex. 12. Look at Diana's diary and speak about her plans for the nearest future.

Monday play a game of tennis with Mike

Tuesday go to the hairdresser Friday visit granny

Wednesday watch a new film at Rita's

Thursday take a guitar lesson

Saturday go to the pool

Sunday prepare for the exam

Ex. 13. Make up your own diary and speak about your plans.

Ex. 14. Use the Present Simple or the Present Continuous in the following sentences.

1. He has a terrible pain. You (not to think) he (to behave) very well? 2. I (not to drink) coffee now I (to write) an English exercise. 3. I (not to drink) coffee in the evening. I (to drink) coffee in the morning. 4. Don't speak loudly. The baby (to sleep). 5. The baby always (to sleep) after dinner. 6. My grandmother (not to work) She is on pension. 7. My father (not to sleep) now. He (to work) in the garden. 8. I usually (to get up) at seven o'clock in the morning. 9. What your sister (to do) now? - She (to wash) dishes. 10. When you usually (to come) home from school? - I (to come) at three o'clock. 11. My mother (to play) the piano now She (to play) it in the morning. 12. I (to read) books in the evening. 13. I (to write) an exercise now. 14. He (to help) his mother every day. 15. You (to go) to school every

day? 16. My friend (not to like) to play football. 17. The children (to eat) soup now. 18. You (to play) volley-ball well? 19. Kate (to sing) well. She (to sing) at the moment. 20. Where John (to live)? - He (to live) in London. 21. What you (to do) here? - We (to listen) to the cassettes. 22. Mike (to know) German rather well. 23. What magazine you (to read)? - It's a French magazine. 24. My sister usually (to prepare) her lessons at the Institute. 25. Who that man (to be) who (to stand) in the doorway? 26. I (to have) no time now I (to have) dinner. 27. Tom and Nick (to have) a talk 28. She still (to do) her work in the room. 29. It still (to rain)? 30. My granny still (to cook) lunch. 31. She (to wear) a new coat today 32 Peter never (to wear) a hat. 33. I (to get up) at 8 in the morning. 34 It's 8 o'clock. He (to get up). 35. What you (to say)? 1 (not to hear) well. 36. It (to get) dark. It's time to go home. 37 It (to get) dark earl^ in winter 38. Listen! Somebody (to sing) in the room. 39 She (to sing) well and (to have) a pleasant voice. 40. When it is foggy in London cars (to move) slowly. 41. **Our** train (to move) very fast.

Ex. 15. Translate the sentences into English. Explain the use of the Present Continuous Tense.

1. Прекрати игру, в которую ты играешь 2 Они переехали в новый дом и Теперь покупают мебель. 3. Ты вся трясешься. Ты хорошо себя чувствуешь? 4. Он всегда проверяет, что я делаю. 5. Я встречаюсь с Джоном 25-го. 6. Поезд как раз отправляется. 7. Одень плащ. На улице дождь. 8. Возьми зонт. Начинается дождь 9. Том остается у нас. Он слишком устал чтобы ехать домой. 10. Почему ты все время заказываешь пудинг в это! ресторане? 11. Я так по ней скучаю. Я все время думаю о ней. Иногда мне кажется, что я слышу ее голос. 12. Почему ты вечно придираешься ко мне? Я ничего не делаю плохого, 13. Мэри, чем ты занята? Ты слушаешь меня? Да, я слышу тебя прекрасно. Я как раз заканчиваю письмо Нику. 14. Извините, я такая неловкая. 15. Почти все время он проводят в своем кабинете. Он работает над своим изобретением. 16. Мы как раз обсуждаем эту проблему. 17. Мой отец все время говорит такие вещи, что я чувствую себя неловко. 18. Я пойду к себе. Я чувствую себя уставшей. 20. Мы не



сможем прийти к вам в воскресенье. Мой муж работает. 21. Нелли все ей» одевается? 22. У него хорошо идут дела в его бизнесе. Он по-прежнему! работаем в модельном бизнесе. 23. Сегодня вечером мы принимаем гостей, 24. Присаживайся.⁴ Мы как раз обсуждаем наш отпуск - Вы все сие обдумываете, куда поехать? 25. Привет, Элис. Ты выглядишь чудесно! 26. Я слышал эту историю много раз. Весь город говорит об этом. 27. Посмотри, как красиво они танцуют. Я люблюсь ими. 28. Я знаю, что утомляю вас, но я не уйду без вашего ответа. 29. Вы оба так глупо себя ведете. 30. Кто это смеется в саду?

PAST CONTINUOUS

The Past Continuous Tense is formed by means of the auxiliary verb **to be** in the Past Indefinite Tense (**was** - 1st,3d person singular, **were** – 2d person singular, and in plural) and **Participle I** of the notional verb: *He was still sleeping at seven o'clock.*

The contracted negative forms are:

wasn't [wɒznt], weren't [wɛ:nt]

The Past Continuous Tense is used:

1) to denote an action which was going on at a definite moment in the past or during a definite period of time in the past. The definite moment or period in the past can be indicated by an adverbial phrase (at 2 p.m., at that time yesterday, from 5 till 7, all evening, the whole day, in the afternoon, between one and two, etc.), by another past action or prompted by the context. e.g. What were you doing at 1 p.m. yesterday? – I was having a lunch with my friend. I looked out of the window. The sun was shining.

Note 1: When a past action in progress is interrupted by another past action, the longer background action is in the Past Continuous and a shorter action (a single event) is expressed by the Past Indefinite. e.g. As/when/while my dad was painting the ceiling he spilt some paint on the floor.

Note 2: It is used to express two parallel simultaneous situations (actions) in the past. e.g. While John was sitting doing nothing, I was working out a plan to get us home.

Note 3: When two actions are not simultaneous, i.e. when one action happened one after another, only the Past Simple is used for both the verbs. e.g. When the teacher came, we wrote a dictation.

2) to denote past actions of unusual frequency to convey a feeling of annoyance, irritation or criticism with adverbials of permanence always, constantly. e.g. In those days he was always borrowing money and forgetting to pay it back.

3) Reported present-time actions in progress (according to the rules of Sequence of Tenses). e.g. Ann asked: —Is Jane talking on the phone?|| (direct speech) Ann asked if Jane was talking on the phone. (indirect/reported speech)

4) The Past Continuous of the verbs to expect, to intend, to hope, to plan, to mean may be used to show that the planned action was not carried out. e.g. I was meaning to go there.

Ex. 16. Transfer the sentences into the Past Continuous. Mind the adverbials for the Past Continuous: at 6 o'clock yesterday, from 5 till 7 yesterday, the whole evening:

1. I am writing an exercise now. 2. My little sister is still sleeping 3. My friends are just doing their homework. 4. They are playing volley-ball at the moment. 5. You are eating ice-cream now. 6. My father is still repairing his car. 7. She is just reading this article. 8. They are having tea in the garden at the moment. 9. He is buying bananas now. 10. She is still talking on the phone. 11. I am just tidying up my room. 12. He is taking the dog out for a walk at the moment.

Ex . 17. Complete the sentences expressing shorter actions by clauses with longer actions.

1. When I came home, (my little sister to sleep). 2. When Nick came home, (his brother to play the computer games). 3. When mother came home, (I to do my homework). 4. When father came home, (Peter to listen to music). 5. When mother returned from work, (the children to play on the carpet). 6. When I got tip (my parents to have coffee). 7. When I came to my friend's, (he to watch TV).



8. When I saw my friends, (they to play football). 9. When I opened the door (the cat to sit on the table). 10. When Kate came into the room, (the children to dance round the fir-tree). 11. Tom fell when (to cross the street). 12. I met my friends when (to go to school). 13. I saw my granny, when (to hurry to club). 14. He found a bear-cub, when (walk in the wood). 15. We saw a fox, when (to drive across the country-side). 16. I found my old picture, when (to clean my room). 17. She fell asleep when (to read a book). 18. I saw my old friend, when (to play in the yard). 19. He hurt his knee, when (to run about the yard). 20. I saw her when (to pass) her house

Ex. 18. Use the Past Continuous for simultaneous actions.

1. While (to walk) alone the river I (to think over) the situation. 2. While she (to sleep) in her room he (to watch a now film). 3. I (to make some notes) while (to listen) to an interesting lecture. 4. We (to copy out the new words), while the teacher (to write) the task on the blackboard. 5. While we (to get ready) for the lesson, Nick (to talk to our Dean). 6. While it (to rain), we (to play) in our room. 7. I (to dress), while mother (to speak) on the phone 8. I (to wait) for him while he (to finish his work). 9. While Granny (to bake) a cake, I (to make) coffee. 10. While Dad (to have lunch), we (to tell) him all our news.

Ex. 19 Use the Past Simple or the Past Continuous:

1. I (to go) to the cinema yesterday. 2. I (to go) to the cinema at four o'clock yesterday. 3. I (to go) to the cinema when you met me. 4. I (to do) my homework the whole evening yesterday. 5. I (to do) my homework when my mother came home 6. I (to do) my homework yesterday. 7. I (to do) my homework from five till eight yesterday. 8. I (to do) my homework at six o'clock yesterday. 9. I (not to play) the piano yesterday I (to write) a letter to my friend. 10. I (not to play) the piano at four o'clock yesterday I (to read) a book. 11. He (not to sleep) when father came home. He (to do) his homework. 12. When I (to go) to school the day before yesterday I (to meet) Mike and Peter They (to talk) and (to laugh) They told me a funny story Soon I (to laugh) too I still (to laugh) when we (to come)

to school. After classes I (to tell) that story to my parents They (to like) it very much. 13. When I (to ring) my friend up, he (to help) his dad. 14. While my mother (to watch) TV, I (to play) the computer games. 15. When my aunt (to come to see) us, we (to work) in the garden. 16. When I (to go) to the stadium. I (to meet) Ann. 17. While he (to wash the floor); his sister (to water) the plants. 18. When Mike (to play) in the yard he (to find) his old ball. 19. While he (to draw) a picture his cousin (to watch) the kitten. 20. I (to break) my favourite cup, when (to make) tea.

Ex. 20. Translate using the Past Simple or the Past Continuous.

1. Мы шагали в молчании. Никто не хотел говорить первым. 2. Когда мы сошли с поезда, шел сильный дождь. 3. Лето в этом году было холодным. Часто шел дождь. 4. Был сильный туман. Машины двигались медленно. 5. Пока я укладывал вещи, он вызвал мне такси. 6. В доме было тихо. Мальчики играли в шахматы, а Мэри читала книгу. 7. Когда ты видел его в последний раз? - Я встретил его на прошлой неделе, когда шел в клуб. 8. Я купил эту книгу в Лондоне. Она привлекла мое внимание, когда я проходил мимо книжного магазина. 9. Два года назад Питер был в Сибири. Они строили новую железную дорогу. Позже он написал об этом статью. Сейчас он пишет об этом книгу. 10. Кто говорил по телефону в 5 часов вчера? Линия была занята полчаса! - Это я говорила с Джоном. Мы обсуждали новый клип. - Вечно вы обсуждаете какие-то глупости! 11. Вся семья сидела перед телевизором и смотрела новый детектив, когда я вошел в комнату. 12. Я посмотрел в окно и увидел, что мой кот спит на подоконнике, дети бегают по двору, а сосед чинит машину. 13. Когда они приехали, братья играли в бадминтон в саду. 14. Телеграмму принесли, когда уже темнело. 15. Все еще шел дождь, когда мои дядя вернулся домой. 16. Я делал кофе на кухне, пока отец работал в кабинете. 17. Наш поезд шел очень быстро, я не успевал читать названия станций, которые мы проезжали. 18. Когда поезд тронулся, он что-то крикнул мне, но я ничего не расслышал. 19. Когда я добрался до станции уже темнело. 20. Мы вызвали врача,

когда поняли, что ее состояние ухудшается 21. Вчера в это время мы были еще в поезде и ехали по Украине. 22. Когда он включил свет, то увидел, что его двоюродный брат спит на диване. 23. Когда поезд подошел к станции, мы стояли на платформе. 24. Я завтракал в маленьком кафе, когда увидел его в окне. Он стоял на углу и ждал кого-то. 25. Был ужасный день. Опять шел дождь. 26. Я как раз заканчиваю завтрак. Я буду готов через 10 минут. 27. Вчера он писал сочинение с 3 до 5 часов дня когда родители вернулись домой он как раз проверял его. 28. Я повторяю одно и то же сто раз! Почему ты не слушаешь меня? 29. Ты много читаешь по-английски? - Да. Сейчас я как раз читаю Агату Кристи. 30. Он сегодня в новом пальто Он купил его на прошлой неделе. 31. Не шумите. Ребенок просыпается. 32. Он говорит очень громко. Они обсуждают свои планы на будущие каникулы. 33. Возьми зонт, Погода меняется! - И почему она меняется так часто? Вечно идет дождь когда я собираюсь в парк. 34. Я не имею ни малейшего представления, о чем вы говорите. 35. Он слышал, как она говорила с кем-то по телефону. 36. У него появились седые волосы. Это значит, что он стареет. 37. Их фирма работает над новым автомобилем. 38. Давай я налью тебе воды. Ты ведь дрожишь! 39. Мы никогда не доберемся до Лондона, если ты будешь вести машину так медленно. 40. Удивительно, как легко он заводит друзей! 41. Ты помнишь Джеймса? Он теперь работает на новых издателях и дела у него идут неплохо. 42. Я очень занят новой школой, которую мы строим. 43. Сэм, поиграй в своей комнате Твой отец не очень хорошо себя чувствует. 44. Я не знаю, почему я плачу. 45. Это моя ошибка. Я приношу извинения. 46. Он знает что мы у ходим? 47. Пока шофер укладывал вещи, он закурил сигарету. 48. В этот момент он увидел брата. Тот стоял по другую сторону дверей. 49. Женщина что-то сказала мальчику который шел рядом с ней. 50. Когда мальчик заснул, он все еще держал новую игрушку в руках. 51. Он проснулся, Возле кровати звонил телефон. 52. Джо был доволен, что его брат вел теперь машину медленнее 53. Она сидела лицом к двери и смело смотрела на него. 54. Когда Джек подошел к ней, она улыбнулась ему. 55. Он ясно чувствовал, что трое мужчин наблюдают за ним. 56. Дверь



была открыта, и он увидел, что служанка моет окно. 57. Он заметил, что Джейн переводит испанское стихотворение. 58. Мы уезжаем завтра утром. 59. Они мало разговаривали, пока ехали домой. 60. Когда я выходил из машины, я заметил незнакомого человека, который выходил из дома.

FUTURE CONTINUOUS

The Future Continuous Tense is formed by means of the auxiliary verb **to be in the Future Indefinite Tense (will be)** and **Participle I** of the notional verb (will be working). The contracted negative form is: won't be working.

The Future Continuous Tense is used:

1) to denote an action which will be going on at a definite moment in the future. The definite moment can be indicated by another future action expressed by a verb in the Present Indefinite, by an adverbial phrase (at 2 p.m., at this time tomorrow, all evening, from October to November, etc.) or is understood from the situation. e.g. I'll already be working when you return. At 12 o'clock I'll still be working. I'm sure you won't be able to speak to him, he will be working.

2) to talk about events that are a result or part of an arrangement made in advance. (There is, in fact, little difference between this usage and the use of the Present Cont. for future arrangements.

The Future Cont., however, is used to distance the arrangement a little, making it more fixed and less open to change.) e.g. Buses won't be running here this weekend due to essential track repairs. The band will be performing live in Warsaw next summer. (Compare: When are you moving to Leeds?)

3) It can have a modal colouring: it can denote an action which is sure to take place, often independently of the will of the speaker and the doer of the action. To show the speaker's certainty about the predicted events, states, etc. parenthetical phrases such as I am sure, I know, I believe are often used. e.g. I hope you will not be using the car tomorrow evening; I'd like to borrow it if you don't



mind. I feel I'll be asking the same question tomorrow. Mike is sympathetic because he knows his successor will be having a hard time doing the job.

4) to denote a future action which is part of a regular routine (a matter-of-course event), which doesn't need any special arrangement. e.g. I'll be passing the post-office on my way home from work, so I'll buy you a newspaper. Now that Nick is in Helen's department they will be seeing a lot of each other. **Compare:**

statements

- I'll see him about it tomorrow. (a promise or a decision)
- I'm seeing him about it tomorrow. (a pre-arranged plan)
- I'll be seeing him about it tomorrow. (a matter-of-course event)

questions

- When will you move? or When are you moving? (straight-forward enquiries)
- When will you be moving? Will you be starting tomorrow? (polite enquiries)

Exercises: FUTURE CONTINUOUS

Ex. 21. Complete the following sentences, using the Future Continuous Tense:

Pattern: My holiday is coming to an end. (to return to the University in two days) - My holiday is coming to an end. I'll be returning to the University in two days.] 1. I can't discuss the matter with you now. But (to see you tomorrow)? 2. He will be here in time He (to come by the fast train). 3. She is on a visit She (not to dine with us today). 4. I don't think they will come. They (to move to a new flat). 5. There are a lot of people here and more (to arrive next week). 6. Let's wait. He (to wake up soon). 7. Look, it's getting dark. It (to rain in a minute). 8. There's nothing he likes better than to tell stories. I wonder what he (to tell us next). 9. Who (to give a talk) on the



problem next Friday? 10. Don't go. We (to have dinner in about twenty minutes).

Ex. 22. Mind the "softening effect" of the Future Continuous. Translate into Russian.

1. I'll work on it tomorrow (intention, probably a promise) - I'll be working on it tomorrow (futuraity) 2. When will you finish these letters? (boss to assistant) When will you be seeing Mr. White? (assistant to boss) 3. Mary won't pay this bill (she refuses to) - Mary won't be paying this bill (futuraity) 4. Will you join u for dinner? (invitation) - Will you be joining us for dinner? (futuraity) 5. Won't you come with us? (invitation) - Won't you be coming with us? (futuraity).

Ex. 23. Translate into English using the Future Continuous.

1. Скоро вечера станут длинее. 2. Я думаю, он скоро уедет. 3. Мы встретимся с вами сегодня вечером. 4. Я буду искать кого-то на эту работу. 5. Я знаю, что я буду встречаться с ним в Оксфорде/ 6. Вы знаете, что вы будете делать вечером? 7. Интересно, когда ваш брат снова придет в Москву. 8. Мне очень жаль, что я не приду. 9. На будущей неделе мы будем готовиться к экзаменам. 10. Кто из вас будет встречать завтра гостей? 11. Вы все еще будете работать, если я приду в 9? 12. Сегодня вечером я поведу своего друга в кафе. 13. Если вы придете в 5, я буду упаковывать вещи. 14. Они будут обсуждать этот доклад в это же время завтра. 15. Я буду встречаться с инженерами завтра днем/ 16. Они поженятся следующим летом. 17. Давайте пойдем быстрее, через минуту начнется дождь. 18. Я не буду писать ему. Я увижусь с ним. 19. Приходите, пожалуйста. Он будет рассказывать о своей поездке в Англию. 20. Скоро мы переезжаем на новую квартиру. 21. Завтра ты будешь проходить мимо театра, купи два билета. 22. Летом вы опять будете путешествовать?

Summary table on Continuous Tense

Meaning	Time	Present	Past	Futu
---------	------	---------	------	------

	Indicators			re
An action going on at the definite period of time	now, at present, at this moment, at 5, at that time, while	<i>George is going to the University at this moment</i>	<i>George was going to the University at 5</i> <i>The phone rang while I was having a bath</i>	<i>George will be going to the University at 5</i>
An action filling up the whole period of time/limited duration/	now, from 5 to 6, from morning till night, the whole day, all day long	<i>He came to England last month and now he is writing a new novel</i>	<i>It was raining the whole day yesterday</i>	<i>Kate will be writing the report the whole day tomorrow</i>
An action thought of as a continual process, as an emotional coloring, such as exaggeration, irritation	always, ever, constantly	<i>He is always writing with a special pen just because he likes to be different</i> <i>He is forever losing his keys</i>	<i>My grandfather was always forgetting things</i>	
An action in the very near future	tomorrow, the day after tomorrow, in a day, next week, one of these days, soon, tonight, on Sunday, in February	<i>I am leaving for London tomorrow</i>		

PERFECT TENSE

The Perfect Form expresses an action completed before the present moment (and connected with it) or before a definite moment in the past or future.

PRESENT PERFECT



The Present Perfect Tense is formed by means of the auxiliary verb to have in the Present Indefinite (**have/has**) and **Participle II** of the notional verb. *She has already written the letter. They have just come in.*

The present perfect is used:

1) to denote an action completed in the past but connected with the present in its result:

a) due to the actual recentness of the event and evidence of its result e.g. I have broken my pencil. I can't write. My dream has come true. I am a student of BSU. The tomatoes haven't ripened yet.

b) due to a special importance for the present of the effect (result) of an action which happened at an indefinite time in the past e.g. How many times have you been in love? (throughout your life) The Prime Minister has announced that taxes are to increase from the beginning of the year. (remote from the moment of speech)

The Present Perfect is frequently used with the adverbials *recently, lately, just* to indicate the recentness of the event; *already* (in affirmative sentences; in questions – to give an additional meaning of surprise that smth has happened sooner than expected), *yet* (in negative sentences and questions), *still* (=yet but slightly stronger and emphatic) to express the result of a completed action.

The Present Perfect is often used with *today, this morning, this week, this year, etc.* when these periods aren't completed at the moment of speaking. e.g. He's written a lot of books this year.

The typical use of the Pr. Perf. denoting a complete past action is in the attributive clause of a complex sentence with superlative constructions, ordinal numerals or *—the only* in the principal clause. e.g. It is one of the most boring news I've ever read. That's perhaps the tenth cup of tea he has drunk. This is the only time he has been away from home.

2) in adverbial clauses of time after the conjunctions *when, till, until, before, after, as soon as* to denote an action completed before a definite moment in the future. e.g. I am not going till you have



answered me. Don't play the chess until you have done all your homework.

Note1. Verbs of sense perception and motion (to hear, to see, to come, to arrive, to return, etc.) in adverbial clauses of time are generally used in the Present Indefinite and not in the Present Perfect. e.g. I'm sure he will recognize the poem when he hears the first line. When the completion of the action is emphasized, the Present Perfect is used. e.g. He will know the poem by heart when he has heard it twice.

3) Present Perfect Inclusive is used:

- with verbs not admitting of the Continuous form
- in negative sentences (in this case the Present Perfect Continuous is not possible)
 - with verbs of a dynamic character to live, to work, to study, to teach, to travel, etc. (in this case the Present Perfect Continuous is possible)

It is used to denote an incomplete action which began in the past, has been going on up to the present moment and is still going on with emphasis on the result of the activity:

With *since (ever since)* to indicate the starting point of the activity,

with *for, over, in* to indicate a certain period of time,

with *ever, never, always, often, all my life, so far* to indicate an indefinite period of time.

e.g. I haven't heard anything from him since he moved to London. Brian had a bad fall last year and has been off work ever since. They have known each other for a long time. I've never tasted papaya. I have often wondered where she gets her money from.

Exercises: THE PRESENT PERFECT

Ex. 1. Give the four forms of the verbs.



be, do, have, see, strike, get, open, turn, wash, take, dry, clean, go, dress, put, make, sweep, clear, stay, say, hurry, begin, prepare, come, work, press, iron, gather, play, repair, knit, listen, hang, change, want, finish, know, help, fire, show.

Ex. 2. Insert have/has. Translate into Russian. Say, what Russian tense is used.

1. As for me I...already had coffee. 2. What...you cooked for dinner. Mum? 3.... you had a shower yet? 4. We... already practiced this exercise. 5. I...just done it myself. 6. ...Mary left for London yet? 7. It...taken me too long to get there. 8. Nelly... made a lot of mistakes in her test. 9. You... not corrected everything in the dictation. 10. He., not come often here of late,... he? 11. Who... bought this book already? - We.... 12. Nobody...seen her since morning.

Ex. 3. Put the adverbs of indefinite time into the right place. Translate.

1. He has finished his coffee (already). 2. He hasn't finished dinner (yet). 3. I have seen him (just). 4. Have you spoken to her about it (ever)? 5. I have been to the library (already). 6. We have been here (never). 7. They haven't finished breakfast (yet). 8. I have done my homework (already). 9. Have you made the beds (already)? 10. They have left (just). 11. She hasn't finished cleaning the room (yet). 12. I have finished my translation and now I am free (just). 13. She has seen the sea (never). 14. Have you packed your things (yet)? 15. Have you been to England (ever)? 16. I have seen him looking so pale (never). 17. Has she helped you (ever)? 18. He has been lucky (so far). 19. She has been very polite (up till now). 20. I have planted fourteen rosebushes (so far).

Ex. 4. Change the sentences into the Present Perfect using the adverbs of indefinite time.

1. I wrote a letter ten minutes ago. 2. He came home not long ago. 3. We met last Sunday. 4. He worked in a bank the previous year. 5. She bought a new hat at 5 o'clock yesterday. 6. They got up early yesterday morning. 7. I returned to St Petersburg on the fifth of

January. 8. We went to the country last summer. 9. He played in the yard last evening. 10. She entered the University two years ago.

Ex. 5. Complete the sentences (past action but connected with the present situation).

1. It's cold in the room, (the window to be open for a long time). 2. It's warm (the weather, to be fine, all week). 3. Peter is absent, (he, to be ill, for a week). 4. She can't show you the way there, (she, to be there, never). 5. He may go. (he, to do his homework). 6. I can't say anything about the film. (I, not to see it). 7. Let's go for a walk, (the rain, to stop). 8. She knows English well, (she, to live there). 9. Don't describe the place to me. 1 (to be there, myself). 10. I know him well, (we, to work together).

Ex. 6. Translate into English (completed actions but connected with the present time).

1. Ты чудесно выглядишь! - Да, я хорошо отдохнула. 2. С каждым днем становится все холоднее. Чувствуется, что пришла зима. 3. Почему ты возвращаешь книгу? - Я ее прочитал. 4. Я не могу повторить вопрос. Я не слышал его. 5. Они уезжают? - Да, они поменяли свои планы. 6. Что с тобой? - Мне кажется, я простыл. 7. В доме так тихо. Все ушли. 8. Я спешу. Я опоздал на автобус и теперь пытаюсь успеть на лекцию. 9. Где вчерашняя газета? - Я ее выбросил. 10. Я не могу попасть домой. Я потерял ключ. 11. Я не могу вспомнить его адрес/ Я забыл его. 12. Сэлли дома? - Нет, она ушла. 12. Она не может найти свою сумку. Ты не видел ее? 13. Помоги мне. Я порезал палец. 14. Дорога закрыта. Произошла авария. 15. Зачем тебе нужны деньги? - Я купил новую машину. 16. Нога Маргарет в гипсе Она поломала ее. 17. Мария сейчас говорит по-английски намного лучше. Она много работала и над своим английским. 18. Вот письмо от мамы. Его принесли с утренней почтой. 19. Сейчас билет стоит 3 рубля. Оплата повысилась.



Ex. 7. Give two answers (with prep, for and since) to the questions.

1. How long have you lived here? 2. How long have they known each other? 3. How long have you had this coat? 4. How long has this film been on? 5. How long has he been out? 6. How long have you been a student? 7. How long has he been absent from classes? 8. How long have you been here? 9. How long have the children stayed with their aunt? 10. How long have you been like that?

Ex. 8. Translate using for or since.

1. Я не видел своего школьного друга, с тех пор, как окончил школу. 2. Я не был в своем родном городе три года. 3. Кто из вас был в Москве после Олимпиады? 4. Я видел очень мало интересных фильмов за последние пять лет. 5. Я тут с утра. 6. Сколько месяцев прошло со времени последней вечеринки? 7. Сколько лет вы уже с ним дружите? 8. Я не был в театре с осени. 9. Мы не встречались с ним целую вечность. 10. Я прочитал много книг, с тех пор, как начал учить английский. 11. Этот актер не играл в спектаклях с прошлой зимы. 12. Я давно не получал писем от моего кузена. 13. Он не написал ничего нового с тех пор. 14. Я не был там с тех пор. 15. С тех пор мы не виделись.

Ex. 9. Give the answers using never.

1. Have you ever been to Tashkent? 2. Has he ever told you the story of his life? 3. Have you ever translated books from English into Russian? 4. Has it ever been so warm in April before? 5. Have you ever read anything by John Updike before? 6. Has he ever been to the Far East? 7. Has she ever shown her pictures to anybody? 8. Have they ever spoken to you about their plans for the future? 9. Have they ever studied this problem? 10. Have you ever thought about such a possibility?

Ex. 10. Give the answer.

Pattern: Have you finished the book yet? - No, I haven't finished it yet. I'm still reading it.

1. Have you translated the article yet? 2. Have they finished discussing the problem? 3. Has she had her lunch yet? 4. Have they written their papers yet? 5. Has she made breakfast yet? 6. Have you decided on the problem yet? (to think over). 7. Has he woken up? (to sleep). 8. Has the weather improved? (to rain). 9. Have they found Peter? (to look for). 10. Has Phil left yet? (to wait).

Ex. 11. Practice the following according to the pattern:

You may leave the child with her. She is fond of children. She has always been. 1. I don't like their parties. They are dull. 2. It's difficult to ask him for anything. He is a hard man. 3. Let's buy flowers for her. She is fond of flowers. 4. He is an unpleasant man. He is too sure of himself. 5. I can't say anything bad about her. She is a nice girl. 6. It's a beautiful place, but it is rainy.

Ex. 12. Insert lately; for the last few days; last time; last. Mind the Tenses.

1. When you (to get) a letter from him...? 2. He (to change) for the better.... 3. She will recognize him at once though she (not to see) him... 4. He (to visit) his native place ... when he was a student. 5. How often he (to miss) the classes...? 6. This film (to be on) at this cinema... 7. I (to watch) this film on TV several times. 8. She (not to call) on us... 9. There (not to be) much rain... 10. When you (to see) him...?

Ex. 13. Translate using lately, for the last few days, last time, last,... ago, before:

1. Когда вы были в Петербурге в последний раз? 2. За последний год наш район очень изменился. 3. В прошлый раз ему не хватило времени на подготовку. 4. Прошлый раз ты обещал зайти к нам. 5. Последние несколько недель не было дождя, и земля совсем сухая. 6. Когда вы получили от него известия в последний раз? 7. За последнее время он прочитал много интересных книг. 8. Почему он опаздывает? За последнее время это случается с ним довольно часто. 9. Последние несколько дней он много работает. 10. Прошлый раз мы подробно обсудили этот вопрос. 11. Я давно не видел его. 12. Я видел его давно. 13. Мы давно не слы-

шали о нем. 14. Я читал о нем давно. 15. В последний раз мы встречались очень давно. 16. Мы раньше не встречались. 17. Раньше ты не был так груб. 18. Кто этот человек? Я не встречал его ранее. 19. Жаль, что я раньше этого не знал. 20. Ты не делал столько ошибок раньше.

Ex. 14. Use the Present Simple. Continuous. Perfect. Explain the use of the tenses.

1. Will you give me your pen for a moment? I (to leave) mine at home. -I (to be) sorry. I (to write) with it now. Ann (not to write) and can give you her. 2. You (to read) « The Gadfly»? - I (to read) now. I (not to finish) it yet. 3. We (to have) dinner in the new cafe tonight. You (to be) there already? - Yes, we (to go) the day before. 4. Where (to be) Ann? - She (to be) in the kitchen - What she (to do)? - She (to wash up) -I (to do) all my duties and (to be) free now. 5. What the matter (to be)? You (to look) very pale I never (see) you so pale before -I (to have) u very tiring day - You (to work) too much this month! 6. Who (to play) the piano? Mary still (to have) a music lesson? - No, the lesson (to be) over and the teacher (to go) Mother (to play) for little Kitty. 7. I (not to hear) this news yet. I (to switch on) the radio this morning. 8. I (to speak) to Jane just now. She (to return) already from New York and (to come) to us this evening. 9. What you (to look) for? -I (to put) my dictionary somewhere and can't find it now. 10. Nick (to be) at home since morning. He (to play) hockey with his group-mates.

Ex. 15. Translate using the Present Perfect:

1. Вы бывали когда-либо в Карелии? - Нет, но я очень много слышал о ней и собираюсь поехать туда как-нибудь летом. 2. Почему вы ничего не сделали, чтобы организовать поездку в эти места? 3. Мы условились встретиться на станции. Тебе это удобно? 4. Я заходил к нему на этой неделе. Он чувствует себя гораздо лучше. 5. Мне нравится, как вы расставили книги на полки. 6. Что с ним случилось? Я давно его не вижу. 7. Я уверен, что простудился. Погода так быстро изменилась. Сразу стало холодно. 8. Ему очень нравится книга, которую вы ему дали. Ему всегда

нравились такие книги. 9. Мы еще не решили, кто из нас пойдет на конференцию. 10. Этот фильм идет с понедельника. 11. Я уже заплатил за билет. 12. Я здесь новый человек. Я здесь всего несколько дней. 13. Она только что позвонила. Она придет немного позже. 14. Я вижу, что ты не сказал мне всю правду. 15. Его лекция очень интересная. Они всегда были интересными. 16. Сыну моей сестры только четыре года, но он уже научился читать. 17. Вы слышали когда-нибудь об этом? - Я никогда об этом не слышал. 18. Вы уже переехали на новую квартиру? 19. Он мне еще не рассказывал о своих планах. 20. Вы сделали много ошибок, поэтому у вас плохая оценка. 21. Вы читали когда-нибудь книги Голсуорси? - Да, в этом месяце я прочитал две его книги. 22. Мой приятель уехал в Киев, теперь я хожу в бассейн один. 23. Он уехал неделю назад, но еще не писал мне. 24. Я не видел своего дядю за последнюю неделю. 25. Вы читали сегодня в газете статью о нашем институте? 26. В этом году я очень редко бывал в кино и театре. 27. Его дочь окончила институт и работает врачом. 28. Вы были когда-нибудь в Риге? - Да, пять лет назад. 29. Я положил сюда рисунок и не могу его теперь найти. 30. Он такой рассеянный. Он всегда был таким.

Ex. 16. Translate into English using the Present Simple, Continuous, Perfect:

1. Надень пальто и шапку. На улице холодно, дует сильный ветер. 2. Видишь человека на углу? Почему он на нас смотрит? 3. Сегодня на обед придет Елена. - Я давно ее не видела. Она очень изменилась? 4. Когда учитель объясняет новое правило, он обычно пишет примеры на доске. 5. Ты что-нибудь слышишь? - Я слушаю внимательно, но ничего не слышу. 6. Ты читал эту книгу, папа? - Да, но много лет назад. 7. Кто только что вышел из комнаты? - Не знаю, я никого не заметил. 8. По дороге на работу я обычно встречаю детей, которые идут в школу. 9. Я думаю, вам нужно выпить горячего кофе, прежде чем вы уйдете. 10. Ты видела Гвен сегодня? - нет, она больна. Она больна уже три дня. 11. Что ты собираешься делать после занятий? - Я иду в кино с

сестрой. Мы уже сто лет не ходили в кино. 12. Вы встречались с Джоном на этой неделе? - Нет, всю неделю я очень занят. 13. Вы часто ходите в театр? - Да. Но последнее время у меня было мало времени для этого. 14. Я давно не был в этом городе. Он очень сильно изменился. Много красивых зданий было построено за последнее время. 15. Они уже уехали? - Пока нет, но уезжают через два часа. 16. Я только что закончил работу и читаю газету сейчас. 17. Мой сын еще не вернулся. Я думаю, что он все еще играет в футбол. 18. Я уже позавтракал и готовлюсь к занятиям. 19. Я прочитал несколько рассказов этого писателя и готовлю доклад по ним. 20. Мы получили новую квартиру и переезжаем на нее.

Ex. 17. Use the Past Simple or the Present Perfect:

1. How long you (to know) him? - I (to know) him since 1984. He (to live) in Moscow for two years and then (to go) to Siberia. 2. When he (to arrive)? - He (to arrive) at 2 o'clock. 3. I (to read) this book, when I (to be) at school. 4. I can't go now. I (not to finish) my work. 5. You (to have) dinner yet? 6. The lecture just (to begin). You (to be) a little late. 7. We (to miss) the tram. Now we have to walk. 8. You (to be) here before? - Yes. I (to spend) the last holiday here. 9. You (to see) Kitty on Monday? - No, I (not to see) her this month. 10. Where Tom (to be)? - I (not to know). I (not to see) him since last night. 11. I (to lose) my pen. You (to see) it anywhere? 12. You ever (to try) to give up smoking? -I (to-try) several times but failed. 13. Why you (to switch) on the light? It (not to be) dark yet 14. When it (to happen)? -I (to think) last weekend. 15. He (to leave) for the far East two years ago and I (not to see) him since. 16. The last post (to come). I (to expect) a letter from my cousin. 17. You (to find) the key which you (to lose yesterday? - Yes. I (to find) in the pocket. 18. I (to see) him in the library this afternoon. 19. I (to make) a mistake, I want to rub it out. 20. Can you give me the textbook? - No, I (to leave) it at home. 21. You (to see) pictures by Picasso? Yes, I (to see) them not long ago. 22. You (to be) to St. Petersburg? - Yes, I (to be) there last winter. 23. You (to do) the translation? - No, I (not to fin-

ish) yet. I (to begin) it 20 minutes ago. 24. When you (to come) to Moscow? -I (to arrive) this morning.

Ex. 18. Translate into English with the Past Simple or the Present Perfect:

1. Он жил Лондоне пять лет, когда был маленьким. Он там родился. 2. Он живет в Лондоне пять лет. Его семья переехала туда из Манчестера. 3. Это Люся? Как она выросла! 4. Сколько времени вы в Москве? - Около шести месяцев. Мы приехали сюда в Апреле. 5. Я знаю Джорджа всю жизнь. Он очень хороший человек. 6. Большое спасибо за информацию, которую вы мне дали. 7. Спасибо, что ты привез меня сюда. Я никогда не видела таких красивых озер. 8. Я сегодня много сделал, теперь могу отдыхать. 9. Он сделал перевод в читальном зале, Там много словарей. 10. Привет! Я не видел тебя с прошлого лета. Где ты был? 11. Приходи ко мне. Я привезла много интересных книг из Англии. 12. Студент, которого мы видели вчера в библиотеке, пришел снова сегодня. 13. Ты никогда не рассказывал мне о своей прошлой жизни. 14. Я довольно часто встречаю се имя в газетах за последнее время. 15. Дождь прекратился. Пойдем покатаемся на велосипедах. 16. Ты нашел работу? - Работы нет. 17. Вы все уже подготовили для вечеринки? - Да, продукты мы купили в понедельник. 18. Ты все подготовила для отъезда? 19. Его отец заболел неделю назад. Но ему сообщили об этом только позавчера. 20. Ты привел нового друга? - Да, мы познакомились на дне рождения Джейн в прошлое воскресенье. 21. Барбара, ты получила Образование леди, а вела себя вчера как обычная девчонка! 22. Где газета? Я не прочитал еще главную статью. 23. Я полагаю, ваш босс еще не вернулся из командировки? - Еще нет. Он уехал на прошлой неделе. 24. Это самая безрассудная идея, которую я когда-либо слышал. 25. В последний раз он звонил нам пару недель назад. С тех пор мы не разговаривали. 26. Вы написали контрольную работу? Покажите мне ее. 27. Она написала последнюю контрольную без ошибок. 28. Я давно видела эту пьесу. Я ее уже забыла. 29 Я давно с ним познакомилась. 30. Я давно ее не видела. 31. Я давно пришла сюда. 32. Вчера у нас была интерес-



ная лекция. Были все студенты. 33. Когда вы начали читать эту книгу? - Неделю назад. 34. Хотелось бы знать, куда она положила мое кольцо. 35. Я встретил Энн 10 лет назад в доме ее отца. С тех пор мы почти не виделись.

Ex. 19. Make up situations to justify the use of the Present Perfect or the Past Simple in the following pairs of sentences:

1. I left the car outside the gate. I've left the car outside the gate. 2. We settled everything. We've settled everything. 3. You behaved like a naughty girl. You've behaved like a naughty girl. 4. The child took his toys to the park. The child has taken his toys to the park. 5. I taught little children. I've taught little children 6. I hurt my ankle. I've hurt my ankle. 7. I had a letter from home. I've had a letter from home. 8. Did you speak to him? Have you spoken to him? 9. We were engaged for nearly two years. We've been engaged for nearly two years. 10. He brought his collection of stamps. He has brought his collection of stamps.

Ex. 20. Make up situations to justify the use of the Present Perfect or the Past Simple in the following pairs of sentences containing the indication of a period of time:

1. I haven't read the paper this morning. I didn't read the paper this morning. 2. I haven't seen them for years I didn't see them for years. 3. He has gone to the country for two days He went to the country for two days. 4. He has been a teacher for ten years. He was a teacher for ten years 5. I've had a letter from him today. I had a letter from him today. 6. Have you seen him this afternoon? Did you see him this afternoon? 7. We haven't corresponded for months. We didn't correspond for months. 8. He has called me three times this week. He called me three times this week. 9. I've met them both this afternoon 1 met them both this afternoon.

Ex. 21. Translate using the Present Perfect or the Past Simple with the indication of time:

1. Вы не можете мне сказать, уехала ли мисс Смит лондонским поездом сегодня утром? 2. Они проговорили около двух часов, и затем он сказал, что ему надо кое-кого повидать. 3. Его

мать умерла. Она долго работала учительницей. 4. Послушай-ка, Джон, твоя хозяйка говорит, что ты сегодня целый день сидишь дома. Это ведь не годится, правда? 5. Ты ведь не водила машину так много месяцев. - Я еще не забыла, как это делается. 6. Мы все трое пошли по улице. В течение некоторого времени мы молчали. 7. Дядя Том приезжает. Мама получила от него телеграмму сегодня утром. 8. На этой неделе у меня едва было время, чтобы посмотреть газету. 9. Тебе следует навестить Вилли. Ты не видел его три недели. Вы поссорились? 10. Они долго сидели рядом. Джек первым нарушил молчание.

Ex. 22. Use the Present Perfect in the model: It is the first time something has been done.

1. Он ведет машину первый раз. Никогда раньше он не водил машину. 2. Линда опять потеряла свой паспорт. Это уже второй раз. 3. Какой вкусный обед. Это первый вкусный обед за долгое время, который я ел. 4. Билл опять звонит своей девушке. Это уже третий раз за сегодняшний вечер. 5. Первый раз я встречаю такого веселого человека. 6. Это только второй раз, когда я еду на горном велосипеде. 7. Я уже прихожу сюда пятый раз. 8. Вы когда-нибудь ранее играли в теннис? - Нет, это первый раз. 9. Вы когда-нибудь летали на вертолете? - Нет, Это первый раз. 10. Сюю едет верхом на лошади. Она выглядит неуверенной. - Конечно. Это ведь первый раз, когда она едет на лошади верхом. 11. Посмотри. Он не очень хорошо играет в крикет. - Конечно, он не знает хорошо правил. Он играет в крикет первый раз в своей жизни.

Ex. 23. Use the Present Perfect in the adverbial clauses of time and condition:

1. What brings you here before I (to get up)? 2. I'll go there after I (to finish my breakfast). 3. The doctor will do it if you (to agree) to the operation. 4. You will marry her, when you (to make) a fortune. 5. I can't say you more till she (to tell) everything herself. 6. I'll leave the house as soon as I (to pack) some things. 7. I'll know my disease when the doctor (to examine) me. 8. We are going for a



walk as soon as Dick (to finish) his letters. 9. She will be your guide when you (to come back). 10. I must talk to you before you (to leave).

Ex. 24. Translate using the Present Perfect for the future actions in the adverbial clauses of time and condition:

1. Если он об этом узнает, он придет в ярость. 2. Я не смогу ответить вам, пока не поговорю с менеджером. 3. Мы выедем в пять вечера, если дождь к этому времени перестанет. 4. Я переведу текст после того, как проанализирую его. 5. Я приду, как только закончу работу. 6. Он поедет на юг, как только допишет статьи для журнала. 7. Я смогу дать вам ее, когда прочту сам. 8. Если мы решим вопрос положительно, я позвоню вам. 9. Я тут могу читать настоящие стихи, пока не буду знать их наизусть. 10. Я не переживу, если с тобой что-нибудь случится.

PAST PERFECT

The Past Perfect Tense is formed by means of the auxiliary verb to have in the Past Indefinite (**had**) and **Participle II** of the notional verb: *She had gone to the station when you rang her up. He had read twenty pages by seven o'clock.*

The past perfect is used:

1) to denote a past action completed before another past action or before a certain moment in the past. This tense-form is not used simply to describe an action in the distant past. There must be another action, less far away in the past, with which it contrasts as a **prior action**. The priority of an action is normally indicated:

a) by an adverbial phrase with the preposition *by*: e.g. *By the end of the year they had finally got their long-awaited pay rise.*

b) by an adverbial clause of time (with the conjunctions: *before, after, by the time ..., when, no sooner ... than, hardly ... when, scarcely ... when, barely ... when*): e.g. *After he had finished breakfast he sat down to write some letters. The children had cleaned everything up by the time their parents returned. The game had hardly begun when it started to rain. The ride had lasted about ten minutes, when the truck suddenly stopped.*

2) to denote a complete past action which had visible results in the past e.g. He was delighted because he had found a new job. We didn't feel like playing Scrabble because we had just finished a long game of Monopoly.

3) Past Perfect Inclusive is used to denote an action which began before a definite moment in the past, continued up to that moment and was still going on at that moment. The starting point of the duration is indicated by the preposition *since*, the whole period of duration – by *for*.

The Past Perfect Inclusive is used:

- with verbs not admitting of the Continuous form
- in negative sentences (in this case the Past Perfect Continuous is also possible but not common)
- with verbs of a dynamic character (in this case the Past Perfect Continuous is possible)

e.g. I knew the Horns had been married for nearly 50 years. George made no answer and we found that he had been asleep for some time.

Note: The use of the Past Perfect for a prior event is often prompted by the lexical and syntactical structure of the sentence. The tense-form is found, in particular:

a) after the construction *this/it/that was the first/second/only/best/worst case/time*, etc. smth. had happened. e.g. It was the second serious mistake he had made in that job.

b) With the verbs *hope, intend, plan, expect*, etc. to describe past intentions which were unfulfilled. e.g. I had intended to make a cake, but I ran out of time.

c) In Indirect Speech in the object clauses after verbs like *say, tell, ask, inform, wonder*, etc. in the Past Simple. e.g. I wondered if Jim had had a chance to discuss the issue with Mr Kelly.

Exercises: PAST PERFECT



Ex. 1. Complete the sentences using the Past Perfect

Tense:

1. He learned that they (to buy a new car the year before).
2. When they arrived at the station the train (to leave).
3. She was upset because she (not to get letters from him yet).
4. It was already winter but they (not to meet for some weeks).
5. He understood that he (to get off at the wrong station).
6. He loved the country because (he to spend his childhood there).
7. By three o'clock yesterday she (to come back).
8. He didn't remember how it all (to happen).
9. I didn't know that she (to change her address).
10. We were sure that they (not to tell the truth)

Ex. 2. Use the Past Simple or th Past Perfect:

1. When I (to come) home, mother already (to cook) dinner.
2. When father (to return) from work, we already (to do) our homework.
3. When the teacher (to enter) the classroom, the pupils already (to open) their books.
4. Kate (to give) mc the book, which she (to buy) the day before yesterday.
5. Nick (to show) the teacher the picture which he (to draw).
6. The boy (to give) his sister he flowers which he (to bring) from the field.
7. Mother (to see) that Nick (not to wash) his hands.
8. The teacher (to understand) Ann (not to do) her homework.
9. I (to bet) that my friend (not to come) yet.
10. I (to finish) my work at 7 o'clock 11 I (to finish) my work by 7 o'clock.
12. He (to think) that he (to lose) his money.
13. When the children (to wake up) yesterday, the father already (to leave) for work.
14. Yesterday she (to write) a letter to a friend, whom she (to meet) in the summer.
15. He (to study) French before he (to enter) the University.
16. Every boy (to know) that their teacher (to get) an education in Paris.
17. He (want) to play the main role, because he (to organize) the theatre.
18. Lanny (not to know) who (to attack) him in the darkness.
19. The girl (to be) glad that she (to find) a window seat.
20. By the time the tram (to reach) the station he (to make) friend with many passengers.

Ex. 3. Translate using the Past Simple or the Past_Perfect.

1. Вдруг он вспомнил что не позвонил ей утром. 2. Когда дядя ушел. Том поспешил на вокзал купить билеты. 3. Ей показалось что они поссорились. Лэнни выглядел очень расстроенным. 4. Во время каникул он съездил в тот город, где когда-то познакомились его родители. 5. К тому времени, как они добрались до гостиницы, снег уже прекратился. 6. Все мои друзья были рады что я успешно сдал экзамены. 7. К двум часам все студенты уже; сдали экзамены. 8. Он попытался вспомнить что же произошло. 9. К восьми часам я уже управился со своими делами. 10. К шести вечера папа вернулся с работы. 11. Гвен плохо спала последние несколько ночей, и под глазами у нее были черные тени. 12. Когда он вернулся в свою комнату он увидел, что кто-то там уже побывал и оставил записку. 13. Они прошли большой путь, прежде чем добрались до места которое искали. 14. Луна уже взошла, и деревья казались очень красивыми в ее свете.

Ex. 4. Translate into English:

1. Я понял, что ребенок простыл. 2. Она надеялась, что билеты уже куплены. 3. Когда он выглянул в окно, он увидел что дождь шел всю ночь. 4. Когда мы вернулись, телеграмму уже принесли. 5. К тому времени как я закончил школу, моя сестра работала в школе уже два года. 6. Когда мы отправились в путь, дождь только что уже начался. 7. Уже все было готово до того, как он приехал. 8. Я сразу же узнал ее, потому что брат описал ее подробно. 9. Полицейский остановил его, так как он ехал с большой скоростью. 10. Я не было голодна, потому что поела незадолго до этого. 11. Никто не знал, как он вошел. Он прошел в дом через заднюю дверь. 12.. Он хорошо говорил по-английски, потому что жил в Англии несколько лет. 13. Это произошло, потому что он был всегда слишком самоуверен. 14. Как только они приняли это решение, они смогли обсудить менее важные вопросы. 15. После того, как мы развели костер, стало гораздо теплее. 16. Я освободил полку, когда выбросил все старые газеты и журналы. 17. У него почти не осталось денег, после того, как он

оплатил все счета. 18. Я встретил ее почти сразу же как приехал в Лондон. 19. Когда он закончил свою работу, он отправился спать. 20. Все знали, что они дружат с детства. 21. По радио объявили, что поезд уже прибыл. 22. Когда я нашел их дом уже стемнело. 23. Когда она пришла на собрание, мы уже обсудили первый вопрос. 24. Когда он вернулся, гости уже разошлись. 25. В комнате было холодно, потому что окно было открыто всю ночь. 26. Он был взволнован так как получил неприятное письмо. 27. К вечеру он уже все закончил. 28. К утру следующего дня он добрался до деревни. 29. Он абсолютно поправился к лету. 30. До начала следующего учебного года они закупили много учебников.

Ex. 5. Translate using the conjunctions hardly ... when, scarcely, no sooner than.

1. Не успела она и присесть как в дверь опять позвонили. 2. Они молчали до тех пор пока он не закончил свой обед. 3. Не успел он дочитать письмо до конца, как вошла Эмма. 4. Едва он только закончил свой кофе, она зачала задавать ему вопросы. 5. Не успел. он войти в офис все начали говорить ему что-то. 6. Едва он только взял свой стакан, как вошла Китти. 7. Не успел он пообедать, как ему позвонил приятель. 8. Он не прочел и трех страниц, как его прервали. 9. Не успела мисс Бетси узнать всю правду как уехала из дома. 10. Я не пробыл и пяти минут в комнате как дверь отворилась и вошла она. 11. Он пробыл в доме не более получаса как вернулся мистер Браун. 12. Когда мы приехали в город, мы прежде всего пошли и морю. 13. Едва дверь за ним прикрылась Пола бросилась ко мне. 14. Я не успел заснуть, как услышал тот же голос. 15. Они проплыли несколько метром, как вдруг он почувствовал боль в груди.

Ex. 6. Use the Past Continuous or the Past Perfect:

1. By eight o'clock yesterday I (to do) my homework and at eight I (to play) the piano. 2. By six o'clock father (to come) home and at six we (to have) dinner. 3. By nine o'clock my granny (to wash) the dishes and at nine she (to watch) TV. 4. When I (to meet) Tom,

he (to eat) ice-cream which he (to buy) on his way to school. 5. When I (to come) home, my sister (to read) a book which she (to borrow) from the library. 6. When mother (to look) into the room, the children (to play) the game which she (to present) them the day before. 7. When I (to ring up) Mike, he still (to learn) the poem which he (to begin) learning at school. 8. By ten o'clock the children (to settle) comfortably on the sofa and at ten (to watch) TV. 9. When father (to come) home we (to cook) mushrooms which we (to gather) in the forest. 10. When I (to see) Ann she (to sort) the flowers which she (to bring) from the field.

Ex. 7. Translate using the Past Simple, the Past Continuous or the Past Perfect:

1. Он даже не посчитал деньги, которые ему дали. 2. Я наблюдал за ней. Она улыбалась сама себе и не ответила на вопрос, который я ей задал. 3. Некоторое время она не могла понять где находится и что случилось. 4. Тишина в комнате говорила, что все давно разошлись. 5. Он уехал в тот же день, когда я приехал. 6. Мама готовила бутерброды я кухне и не услышала звонка. 7. Это было первый раз, что он так волновался перед встречей. Руки его дрожали. 8. После того, как он закончил школу, он не мог найти работу. 9. Трава была мокрая, потому что ночью был дождь. 10. Он все время думал, что где-то встречал ее. 11. После того, как он прочел этот роман, он решил, что никогда не читал ничего лучше. 12. Это было уже второй раз, как он поспорились. 13. Он уже читал в течение получаса, когда зазвонил телефон. 14. Он был очень уставшим, он много работал весь тот день. 15. Некоторое время мы сидели молча, прежде чем Том заговорил первым. 16. Она долго работала в саду. Она не знала, что происходит в доме. 17. Он болел две недели перед экзаменами. 18. Она смотрела на меня с минуту, прежде чем сказать правду. 19. Лекция еще не началась, и студенты болтали и смеялись. 20. Я увидел его прежде, чем он меня. Он смотрел на картину и не замечал людей вокруг. 21. Он настроил скрипку и сыграл сонату.



ту. 22. Он настроил скрипку и играл сонату. 23. Мистер Мелл отложил книгу в сторону и играл на флейте. 24. Мистер Мелл отложил книгу и стал играть на флейте. 25. Том принес воды и побужал играть с приятелями. 26. Том принес воды и играл с приятелями. 27. Сэм закрыл за ним дверь и сел у камина. 28. Сэм закрыл за ним дверь и мешал огонь в камине. 29. В доме было тихо. Дети уснули. 30. В доме было тихо. Дети спали. 31. Когда я проснулся, солнце уже взошло и ярко светило. 32. Когда я вышла из дома, ветер уже стих и накрапывал дождик. 33. На днях, когда я провожала брата, я встретила приятельницу. Мы вместе учились в школе и давно не виделись. Она тоже провожала кого-то. 34. Когда он вошел. Ольга сидела за столом. Она читала статью, которую написала для журнала. 35. Он еще не читал статьи и попросил ее показать статью. 36. На улице было еще светло, но в комнате уже горел свет. 37. На улице темнело, и в комнате уже давно включили свет. 38. Он закончил завтрак и отдыхал в кресле. 39. Он вышел из дома. Солнце уже садилось. 40. Он вышел из дома. Солнце уже село и похолодало.

FUTURE PERFECT

The Future Perfect Tense is formed by the auxiliary verb **to have** in the **Future Indefinite (will have)** and **Participle II** of the notional verb: *I will have finished breakfast by eight o'clock.*

The Future perfect is used:

1) to denote an action completed before a definite moment in the future or before another future action. e.g. My sister will have left school by July. She will have left school by the time I graduate from the University.

2) The Future Perfect Inclusive is used to denote an action lasting over a certain period of time up to the given future moment. = It is used to denote an action which will begin before a definite moment in the future, will continue up to that moment and will be going on at that moment.

Практическая грамматика первого иностранного языка

The Future Perfect Inclusive is used with:

- verbs not admitting of the Continuous form
- in negative sentences
- with verbs of a dynamic character.

e.g. Kate will have been a student for half a year by March.

We will have had our old TV-set for ten years by the time the new TV-set is delivered.

Exercises: FUTURE PERFECT

Ex. 1. Complete the sentences using the Future Perfect.

1. By the time he arrives, they (to leave). 2. She is ill now. By the first of April she (to be) ill for three weeks. 3. He has bought this TV-set on credit. He (to pay) all the money by spring. 4. How long has she stayed with your family? - She (to stay) a fortnight by the end of the month. 5. She has lived here a long time. By 2000 she... 6. He is still a schoolboy, but by this time next year he (to leave school).

Ex. 2. Translate using the Future Perfect.

1. Я надеюсь, что к концу собрания мы уладим этот вопрос. 2. На будущий год к этому времени он проработает на этом заводе 15 лет. 3. К тому времени, как он приедет, я буду жить на юге уже две недели. 4. К тому времени, как ты приедешь домой, ты забудешь все, что я говорил тебе. 5. К первому мая они переедут на новую квартиру. 6. Они закончат строительство школы к началу следующего года. 7. Я закончу этот перевод к вечеру. 8. К тому времени матч закончится. 9. К 9 она уже уйдет на работу. 10. Фильм начнется к тому времени, когда мы придем. 11. В следующем году будет 10 лет, как они женаты. 12. Следующим летом будет год, как они помолвлены. 13. Осенью 2000 будет 15 лет, как она работает в Университете. 14. Я доберусь туда к завтрашнему дню. 15. Я легко закончу работу к твоему приходу. 16. К тому времени, как ты приедешь, я уже пообедаю. 17. Я отправлюсь в командировку к тому времени, как ты приедешь.



18. Они закончат ремонт к концу года. 19. Не звоните в 11. Я уже буду спать. 20. Позвони в 7. Я уже освобожусь к тому времени.

Ex. 3. Translate using different tenses for future actions.

1. Они начнут строительство клуба в ближайшие дни и закончат в августе. 2. Когда вы вернетесь, я еще буду работать. 3. Я позвоню тебе часиков в 7, Что ты будешь делать в это время? - Боюсь что к этому времени я еще не вернусь. Я все еще буду работать в офисе. 4. В субботу вечером я вас жду. К тому времени я подготовлю все документы, и во время встречи мы все обсудим. 5. Доктор ждет вас в 4 часа - Но в это время я буду делать доклад на конгрессе. - К которому часу вы освободитесь? - Я думаю, что к 7 часам я приеду к вам. 6. Приходите завтра на спектакль в 2 часа. Мы будем играть новую пьесу. Я не уверен, что закончу важное собрание к этому времени. 7. Завтра мы идем в цирк. - К какому времени вы вернетесь? 8. Мы вернемся в 6 часов. 9. Что вы будете делать сегодня вечером? - Смиты приходят к нам на обед сегодня, а в 8 часов я буду вести переговоры с компанией. 10. Я весь вечер буду писать сочинение. 11. Сколько страниц ты прочитаешь до конца недели? - Я буду читать эту книгу всю неделю, но не прочитаю ее до конца.

Ex. 4. Translate using Future tenses.

1. Вечером я пойду и закрою калитку. 2. Я позвоню тебе завтра. 3. Я думаю. я поговорю с ним об этом. 4. Я не думаю, что пойду куда-нибудь сегодня. 5. Я помогу тебе с переводом. 6. Конечно же я дам тебе эту книгу. 7. Я заплачу в пятницу. 8. Я никому не расскажу что случилось. 9. Ты закроешь окно? 10. Ты будешь себя тихо вест и? 11. Что мне сделать, чтобы помочь тебе? 12. Мне прийти завтра? 13. Я устал Я думаю я возьму такси. 14. В комнате холодно Я включу отопление. 15. У нас нет молока Я пойду и куплю немного. 16. Мне помыть посуду? Не надо. Я мою сама. 17. Я научу тебя работать на компьютере. 18. Счастливого отдохнуть! - Спасибо. Я пришлю открытку. 19. Я уверен, она сдаст экзамен. 20. В следующем году я уже буду в Японии.

21. Осторожно, ты обожжешь руку. 22. Он не сдаст экзамен. Он плохо готов к нему. 23. В пять он будет смотреть футбол. 24. В это время на следующей неделе я буду плавать в море и загорать. 25. Между 6 и 7 мы будем обедать в ресторане. 26. В 10 она все еще будет работать. 27. Я увижусь с ней сегодня и передам ей. 28. Во сколько они приезжают завтра? 29. Ты будешь проходить мимо почты завтра. 30. Тебе нужна будет сегодня машина? 31. К этому времени фильм уже начнется. 32. В 9 ее не будет. Она уже уйдет на работу. 33. К двум часам я уже пообедаю. 34. К вечеру я закончу эту работу. 35. В следующем году будет 15 лет, как они женаты. 36. Осенью исполняемся три года как он работает тут. 37. Завтра будет ровно 7 лет, как мы дружин. 38. Уже будет два месяца как ты читаешь эту книгу. 39. В воскресенье будет год, как он живет в Англии. 40. Через 10 минут будет три часа, как он сдает экзамен. 41. К тому времени, как ты вернешься, я уже уйду. 42. Скоро будет уже 10 лет, как он работает врачом. 43. К тому времени, как мы доберемся до дома, уже стемнеет. 44. Скоро будет месяц, как он в командировке 45. Через три дня исполняется 5 лет, как они помолвлены.

Ex. 5. Translate using different tenses for future actions.

1. В понедельник он играет в теннис. 2. Что ты делаешь в субботу вечером? - Я иду в театр. 3. Когда она приезжает завтра? - В 10. Я ее встречаю. 4. Я завтра не работаю. Мы можем пойти куда-нибудь. 5. Алекс женится в следующем месяце. 6. Куда ты едешь в отпуск? 7. На сколько дней ты едешь в Лондон? 8. Ты едешь один? 9. Я еду в отпуск на машине. 10. Мы останавливаемся в отеле. Я уже заказал номер. 11. Поезд отправляется в 7 и приезжает в Москву в 2 часа. 12. Фильм начинается через полчаса. 13. Я начинаю свою новую работу завтра. 14. Во сколько ты завтра заканчиваешь работу? 15. Ты собираешься посмотреть этот фильм? 16. Я собираюсь пораньше лечь спать. 17. Она собирается купить новую машину. 18. Мы собираемся поехать на поезде. 19. Собирается дождь. 20. Я собираюсь помыть машину завтра. 21. Я собираюсь прочитать статью после обеда. 22. Я как раз

собираюсь пообедать. 23. Сегодня днем я собираюсь пойти за покупками. 24. Я позвоню тебе, когда вернусь, с работы. 25. Мы пойдем на прогулку, когда прекратится дождь. 26. Когда будешь в Лондоне, зайди ко мне. 27. Кем ты хочешь стать, когда вырастешь? 28. Я дам тебе эту книгу, когда закончу ее. 29. Я расскажу тебе, что случилось, когда он уйдет. 30. Когда я позвоню Кейт, мы пообедаем. 31. Если я увижу ее, я приглашу ее на вечеринку. 32. Если мы не поторопимся, мы опоздаем. 33. Если они скоро не придут, я уйду.

Summary table on Perfect Tense

Meaning	Time Indicators	Examples
With a period of time which has not yet ended	today, this week, this month, this century, this year	<i>I have read this book today.</i> <i>Have you read this article this morning?</i>
With an adverbs of indefinite time of frequency	always, ever, never, since, yet, just, now and ten, now and again, from time to time, for, already	<i>I have never read this book.</i> <i>I have already read this book.</i> <i>I have just read this book.</i> <i>He has always preferred to go on foot</i>
With no formal marker/we are interested in the result/		<i>She has broken her leg!</i>
In adverbial clauses of time and real condition	when till until before after as soon as + CLAUSE as long as if unless on condition that	<i>Don't leave us until you have spoken to my brother</i> <i>I'll let you know in case he has translated this text by 5 p.m.</i>

	providing/provided in case	
An action began in the past and continued up to the present	since + Clause for, since + Noun	<i>I have known her since we came to this town.</i> <i>She hasn't played the piano for some days.</i> <i>She has studied at this Institute since 1999</i>
The action accomplished before a given moment in the Past/Future • The moment is indicated by the phrase "by + Noun" "By the time + Clause" • The past moment is indicated by another action in the past/future • In the models: Hardly, scarcely + Noun + Part 2 When + Noun + Verb/past/ No sooner.....than	by that time, by the end of the year	<i>They had done it by 5.</i> <i>They had done it by the time she came.</i> <i>They had done it before the storm began.</i> <i>Hardly had they done it when the child began to cry</i> <i>No sooner had he done it than the child began to cry</i>
The action began before the given past/future moment and continued into the past/future moment • With verbs not used in the Progressive forms • In negative sentences • With non-terminative verbs such as: to work, to teach, to live, to travel, to study, to learn	since + Clause since, for + Noun	<i>They had been friendly since the very first meeting</i> <i>They had not done their work since he returned home</i>

PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS



The Present Perfect Continuous is formed by means of the auxiliary verb to be in the Present Perfect Tense (**have/has been**) and **Participle I** of the notional verb.

I have been writing. Has she been writing? They have not been writing

1) The Present Perfect Continuous Inclusive is used to denote an action which began in the past, has been going on up to the present and is still going on.

The emphasis is put on the continuation of a long activity at the present moment.

The period of duration is indicated by an adverbial with **for**, whereas an adverbial with **since** shows the starting point of the action (if the conjunction since introduces a clause, the verb in this clause is in the Past Indefinite), these two days, etc. e.g. *I have been looking for your white dress for the last ten minutes. This youth organization has been doing a lot of charity work since the mid-nineties. She has been telling lies all her life.*

With verbs not admitting of the continuous form the Present Perfect Inclusive is the only tense possible. 2) The Present Perfect Continuous Exclusive is used to denote an action which was recently in progress but is no longer going on at the present moment.

The fact of the result of a long activity itself is more essential than the period of its duration, which may not be even mentioned. = Actions stopping just before the present moment. e.g. *Look! It has been snowing. Sorry, I'm late. Have you been waiting for me?*

The Present Perfect Continuous Exclusive is used to express repeated actions in the past. e.g. *I have been buying pictures. I have been getting letters from him.*

PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

The Past Perfect Continuous Tense is formed by means of auxiliary verb to be in the Past Perfect Tense (**had been**) and **Participle I** of the notional verb.



1) The Past Perfect Continuous Inclusive is used to denote an action which began before a definite moment in the past, continued up to that moment and was still going on at that moment.

Either the starting point is indicated (**since**) or the whole period of duration (**for**). e.g. *We couldn't go out because it had been raining since early morning. When you saw us, we had been running for 6 miles – and we still had a mile to go!*

The **difference** between the **Past Perfect** and the **Past Perfect Continuous Inclusive** is that the latter refers to **earlier past activities** of certain duration that were either still **in progress** at a given later time in the past **or completed** by that time.

The Past Perfect Inclusive is used with verbs not admitting of the Continuous form and in negative sentences.

The **Past Perfect Continuous** shouldn't be confused with **Past Continuous**. The Past Continuous is used to denote an action going on at a definite moment in the past, no previous duration is expressed. e.g. *And now it was raining, had been raining for days the miserable fall rains of Eastern France. The car was waiting at the kerb. It had been waiting for two hours.*

2) The Past Perfect Continuous Exclusive denotes an action which was no longer going on at a definite moment in the past, but which had been in progress not long before. = a past action of certain duration which had visible results in the past. e.g. *All roads were blocked: it had been snowing all night long. Her fingers hurt because she had been playing guitar all day. She looked tired because she had been exercising all morning.*

FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS

The Future Perfect Continuous Tense is formed by means of auxiliary verb to be in the Future Perfect Tense (**will have been**) and **Participle I** of the notional verb.

It is used to denote an action which will begin before a definite moment in the future, will continue up to that moment and will be going on at that moment. = It denotes an ac-



tion lasting for a period of time up to or including a certain future moment.

This moment can be indicated by an adverbial with the preposition *by* or by another future action.

The Future Perfect Continuous (not the Future Perfect) is normally used to emphasize the process rather than the future result.

As with all Continuous tenses the Future Perfect Continuous is not used with stative verbs which take the Future Perfect instead. e.g. *By the end of the year, they will have been working at this project for two years. We will have been working at this problem for a month when you visit us for a second time. By this time next month he will have been studying the piano for 2 years.*

Exercises: THE PERFECT CONTINUOUS

Ex. 1. Explain the use of the Present Perfect Continuous:

1. You are looking pale, William. I fear, you've been overworking yourself lately. 2. I've been writing for this journal for so many years. 3. Your wife's been telling me, that you've not been sleeping very well lately. 4. Your clothes are dirty. -Yes, I've been playing football. 5. Rosemary, I've been thinking that we need another colour for the room. 6. I've been wearing spectacles since my childhood. 7. I don't want anyone to know I've been crying. 8. I'm hot. I've been running for a long time. 9. The baby has been sleeping since you left. 10. I've been saving up money to go to Italy.

Ex. 2. Explain the use of the Present Perfect in t n of the Present Perfect Continuous:

1. Then a year ago he disappeared and I've never heard from him since. 2. I haven't had a minute of rest since I came in. 3. He has made nothing but trouble for years. 4. He hasn't seen him for a week. 5. He hasn't changed in ten years I've known f n. 6. I'm hungry. I haven't had anything since last night. 7. Here I am' Have you waited long. 8. We haven't had lessons lately The teacher is 11. 9. This is the



happiest evening I have had in a long while. 10. I am not late I have been in for some time.

Ex. 3. Use the Present Perfect or the Present Perfect Continuous:

1. I (to be) busy since we last met. 2. I'm very fond of Alice but I (not to see) much other lately. 3. You look tired. - I (to walk) around all day I (to have) a few drinks and nothing to eat. 4. I (to cook, to clean) for three days preparing for the party. 5. I don't think that your mother is glad. What she (to say) to you? 6. Imagine how much they (to learn) since they (to be) here. 7. I (to sit) down in my office. So I am quite happy to stand. 8. There (to be) no guests at all since I left? 9. He quitted his job ten years ago and (not to work) since. 10. My son is not a bad boy. He is going through a difficult phase - He (to go) through his difficult phase for fifteen years.

Ex. 4. Use the Present Perfect Continuous or the Present Continuous:

1. What you (to look) at? - I (to look) at the picture. I (to look) at it for half an hour, but can't understand the idea of it. 2. What Mary (to do)? - She (to practise) the piano. She (to play) it since 12 o'clock. 3. Here you are at last! We (to search) you everywhere. 4. Why (to smile) Robert? - I (to watch) the kitten. I never (see) such a funny kitten before! 5. I see you (to write) letters the whole morning. Is the last letter you (to write) now? 6. You (to sit) here for a long time. You (to wait) for anybody? 7. How long you (to study) English? - I (to study) it for three years. 8. I (to work) at my report since Monday, I (to write) a conclusion now. 9. Mrs. Brown (to rest) in the garden the whole morning. She (to feel) tired. 10. She (to sleep) for ten hours! She always (to sleep) so long. 11. David (to repair) the TV set. He (to work) at it for an hour or so. 12. David (to wash) his hands. He just (to repair) it. 13. Why you all (to laugh)? - Jim (to tell) a funny joke. 14. It's six o'clock. I still (to sit) here. I (to wait) for Jane for so long.

Ex. 5. Translate using the Present Perfect or the Present Perfect Continuous:



1. Он мой старый приятель. Я знаю его много лет. 2. Я знаю имена всех жителей этой деревни. Я живу тут всю жизнь. 3. Ты видел Мэри в последнее время? 4. Я не читал ничего стоящего уже давно. 5. У него проблемы с желудком с тех пор, как я его знаю. А мы знакомы 15 лет. 6. Я сегодня иду на свидание. У меня не было свиданий уже целую вечность. 7. Мы с вашим братом говорили об этом деле сегодня утром. Поэтому я пришел поговорить с вами. 8. Я все думал об этой книге и пришел к выводу, что мы не можем ее напечатать. 9. Грузовик все еще там? - Да, Они уже два часа работают. Пытаются сдвинуть его с места. 10. Что ты делала, Пэт? Ты вся в земле. - Я сажала новые растения в саду. 11. Ну, ты ведь слышала о Молли, да? - Я слышу о ней одно и то же уже два года. 12. Последнее время ты ведешь себя странно. Я никогда не видела тебя таким. 13. Я немного устала. Я весь день прибиралась в доме. 14. Мальчишку надо наказать. Он уже много месяцев напрашивается на наказание. 15. Том и я так хорошо провели время. Мы просматривали альбомы. 16. Я очень доволен тем местом, которое выбрал. Я буду читать все те книги, которые давно хотел прочитать - А где вы их возьмете? - Я привез их с собой. 17. Эта больница оказалась очень хорошей для изучения языков. С тех пор как я здесь, я говорю по-французски с двумя докторами и по-немецки с нянями, и я выучила несколько слов по-испански от одного пациента. 18. Я практикуюсь на пианино каждый день. Последние несколько месяцев я беру уроки музыки. 19. Что здесь происходило? Почему все в беспорядке? 20. Какие у тебя холодные руки. - Я сидела у окна и проверяла тетради. 21. А вот ты где, Том. Я повсюду искал тебя. Какой-то молодой человек хочет видеть тебя. 22. При таких строгих родителях я только и слышал, что мне должно быть стыдно. 23. Извини, что я опоздал, мама. Мне нужно было поехать в город. Я попал под дождь и промок насквозь. Я переодевался. 24. Эй! Где же вы? - Я сейчас спущусь. Я закрывала окна. 25. Это как раз то, о чем я мечтал столько лет.

Ex. 6. Say, what has just happened to cause the state of things:

1. His clothes are wet. (to walk in the rain). 2. You look upset, (to say dreadful things about...). 3. I'm so glad to be able to talk to someone, (to have a very dull time). 4. Why do you think I ought to give up my job? (to talk to the doctor). 5. You look excited (to try to talk). 6. He is very tired, (to overwork). 7. The streets are wet. (to rain). 8. I can't write a long letter now (to write too many official papers). 9. The air in the room is hazy, (to smoke a great deal).

Ex. 7. Make up situations to justify the use of the Present Continuous or the

Present Perfect Continuous

1. We are having a good laugh over everything. We have been having a good laugh over everything, 2. I am doing it just this way. I have been doing it just this way. 3. What is going on in here? What has been going on in here? 4. He is saying funny things about you. He has been saying funny things about you. 5. What are you doing? What have you been doing? 6. I am wondering if you just dislike me. I have been wondering if you just dislike me. 7. She is accusing me of some things. She has been accusing me of some things. 8. He is behaving very well. He has been behaving very well.

Ex. 8. Use the Present Continuous or the Present Perfect Continuous,

1. There's a man, sitting at the window table. He (to look) at us. I (to meet) him everywhere of late. 2. Ever since my University days I (to study) the history of Russia. Now I (to read) on the Civil War. 3. I know you (to look) for someone experience for your staff. I just (to finish) the experiment now. 4. I (to visit) my friends. I (to stay) with them since Monday. 5. You are just in time. I (to make) some cakes, and your father (to have) dinner. 6. Where is Sue? - She (to speak) to a policeman. She (to drive) without a license. 7. I hope the business (to go) well? - Yes, we (to do) better since you left. 8. I am glad you (to have) lunch here. I (to want) to talk to you.

9. We (to stay) here for a week. - I hope you (not to think) of leaving.
10. The girl (to wait) to see you, doctor. - How long she (to wait)?

Ex. 9. Translate using the Present Continuous or the Present Perfect Continuous:

1. Она сейчас бежит в парке. - Как долго она уже бежит?
- Она бежит уже полчаса. 2. Они работают в читальном зале. Они работают там уже два часа. 3. Где он сейчас? - Он играет в волейбол в саду. Они играют с тех пор, как позавтракали. 4. Я живу в Петербурге с 1994 года. 5. Она делает домашнюю работу уже два часа. Сейчас она переводит текст. 6. Я жду Вас с двух часов. 7. Что ты делаешь? - Я читаю. Книга такая интересная, что я читаю ее с утра. 8. Этот человек - писатель. Он пишет книги с 15 лет. Он уже написал несколько книг. 9. Что ты тут делаешь? - Я жду Ника с утра. 10. Ее дети всегда помогают ей по дому. Сегодня они возятся в саду с утра. Они уже посадили несколько цветочных кустов и сейчас поливают деревья. 11. Тут работает мой отец. Он работает тут уже 15 лет. Где он сейчас? - Он ремонтирует машину в гараже. 12. Ты нашел свою тетрадь? - Нет, я все еще ищу ее. Я уже ищу ее 2 часа. 13. Ты уже играешь на компьютере очень долго. - Я как раз заканчиваю. 14. Я жду письма от моего кузена уже месяц. Я беспокоюсь, что случилось. 15. Этим летом часто идут дожди. Вот и сейчас идет дождь.

Ex. 10. Explain the use of the Past Perfect Continuous:

1. When I rang up your father, he said that people had been inquiring about you all day. 2. Pat's poodle now appeared, coming out of the stream where it had been cooling. 3. They had been driving for half an hour before Blair spoke. 4. He went to the theatre to see the play which had been running for a week. 5. The rain that had been threatening now began to fall gently. 6. Philip came into the room. He had been wandering about, not quite belonging anywhere. 7. When she came there to act as governess, the children had been running wild for a year. 8. Alice threw down the book she had been holding since she came into the room.

Ex. 11. Explain the use of the Past Perfect and the Past Perfect Continuous: :

1. I didn't remember much about Bob whom I had not seen for about ten years. 2. It had been freezing for the last few days, but it hadn't snowed. 3. He had not heard from her since the day she walked out of the office. 4. They had not been hunting for five months. 5. She was aware that they had been getting on each other's nerves lately. 6. I was happy ever since Max moved here. The place had been ringing with laughter. 7. He had been thinking about the offer for a long time but had not discussed it with his wife yet. 8. They had known each other since the accident and had been corresponding for years. 9. It seemed to me that I had done nothing since I came here. 10. I had been in all the evening. I had been waiting to talk to him

Ex. 12. Use the Past Continuous or the Past Perfect Continuous:

1. He (to read) his evening paper as usual when a friend of his called him. 2. He (to read) before the fire for half an hour when the phone rang. 3. When we went to see them last night, they (to play) chess, they (to play) since six o'clock. 4. She felt chilly after she (to swim) for an hour. 5. Ben still (to swim). 6. The boys (to play) football and didn't hear their mother. 7. They were tired because they (to play) since breakfast. 8. He (to look) at the fire. He (to think) about something for some time. 9. He (to look) at the fire for three minutes or so and then turned to me. 10. At last I found the note I (to look) for since morning.

Ex. 13. Use Past Tenses.

1. The cook (use) to snatch away the letters from home, before she (read) them. 2. As she (near) the kitchen, Chris (come) from the garage where he (attend) to a lorry. 3. She always (tell) herself that the only rational course was to make Edward obey. 4. I (realize) that he (come) away with me in order to discuss once more what he already (discuss) for hours with his sister-in-law. 5. I (see) that it (be) 2 o'clock. We (sit) there an hour and a half. 6. It long (be) dark when



Arthur (ring) at the front door of the great house. 7. It was three o'clock. The wind (fall), the moon (shine) over the quiet sea. 8. Every Sunday morning Ethel (read) aloud while Ma Parker (do) her washing. 9. We (get) to Ruby's room by then. She wasn't there, of course, but she (be) there, because the dress she (wear), (lie) across a chair. 10. To take off her boots or to put them on was an agony to her, but it (be) an agony for years. 11. Here I saw this man, whom I (lose) sight of some time; for I (travel) in the provinces. 12. When the Gad-fly (raise) his head the sun (set), and the red glow (die) in the west. 13. It was Sunday morning and they (be) back for three days. 14. Rainborough noticed that she (cry), her face was stained with tears. 15. Ann certainly (be) bravely cheerful that evening. 16. The moment the noise (cease), she (glide) from the room; (ascend) the stairs with incredible softness and silence. 17. We (not marry) a month before I (be) out of love with him. I simply (live) near him. 18. When Cowperwood (reach) the jail, Jasper (be) there. 19. Susan (stand) opposite to her young mistress one morning, as she (fold) and (seal) a note she (write). 20. The whole party (arrive) in safety at the Bush before Mr. Pickwick (recover) his breath. 21. She (say) something to him all the time. 22. He scarcely (have) time to form this conclusion, when a window above stairs (throw up). 23. The door just (go) to be closed... when an inquisitive boarder, who (peep) between the hinges, (set up) a fearful screaming. 24. Mr. Pecksniff and his fair daughters not (stand) warming themselves at the fire ten minutes, when the sound of feet was heard upon the stairs. 25. He forever (ask) questions with a keen desire for an intelligent reply. 26. He (turn) off the electric light. It (burn) all night. 27. She (go on) discussing a book she said she (read) but manifestly hadn't. 28. When Katie (bring) in the tea-tray, the boy (open) his eyes and (sit up) with a bewildered air. 29. When we (be) boy and girl we (call) each other by our Christian names. 30. There (be) bits of the work that, because I (do) them so long, I (know) better than anyone else. 31. He (sit) down with the child on his knees, and (help) her to put the flowers in order. 32. He (sit) ruminating; about the matter for some time, when



the voice of Roker (demand) whether he (may) come in. 33. He (seem) to be quietly and carefully deciding what he (go) to say. 34. There (be) no doubt that their arrival (transform) the factory for her. Rosa (work) in the factory for about two years. Before that she (be) a journalist. 35. After dinner Ruby (come) and (sit) with us in the lounge. She (remain) even after the dancing (start). We (arrange) to play bridge later, but we (wait) for Mark. 36. She (sit) with him and his family a lot. He (take) her for drives sometimes. 37. George (make) no answer, and we (find) that he (be) asleep for some time. 38. She (talk) and (laugh) and positively (forget) until he (come in.) that Fulton (not turn up). 39. Some years ago, when I (be) the Editor of a Correspondence Column, I (receive) heartbroken letters from young men asking for advice and sympathy. 40. I (take) the sculls. I (not pull) for more than a minute or so, when George (notice) something black floating on the water. 41. The voice no sooner (cease) than the room (shake) with such violence that the windows (rattle) in their frames. 42. The figure suddenly (retreat) from the gate, and (run) back hastily to the mill. 43. As he (be) in dinner dress, Fanny (ask) where he (dine).

Creative Tasks

Ex. 1. Give the similar dialogues.

Pattern:

- Is it raining? - No. it is shining.
- But the ground is wet
- It has been raining.

(you to watch TV - to be on,)

Ex. 2. Guess about the reason.

Pattern:

- You are out of breath. Have you been running?
- Yes. I have been running for half an hour



(your bags to be full - to go shopping; to be hot - to play tennis; eyes to be red - to work much on the computer, to look sunburn - to sit in the sun;...)

Ex. 3. Make up short situation using different tenses

Pattern:

- It is raining now. It began (to start) raining two hours ago and it is still raining, - So. it has been raining for two hours
- to learn English: to watch TV; to look for you; to feel well; to tell about his new job:

Ex. 4. Answer the questions giving the period of time.

Pattern:

- Amy is in hospital, isn't she?
- Yes, she has been in hospital for two weeks. She has been feeling bad since the tenth (to have driving lessons, to teach English, to work in the shop;)

Ex. 5. Complete the situations.

Pattern:

I was very tired when I arrived home.... I had been working hard all day

The two boys came into the house. They had a football....

There was nobody in the room but there was a smell of cigarettes....

Ann woke up in the middle of the night. She was frightened...

When I got home, Mike was sitting in front of the TV. It was switched off....

Ex. 6. Combine the two sentences into one.

Pattern:

We played tennis yesterday. Half an hour after we began playing, it started to rain. - We had been playing for half an hour when it started to rain. 1 arrived and waited for Tom. After 20 minutes I realised that I was in the wrong place.

Sarah got a new job in a factory. Five years later the factory closed down. The orchestra began playing. After about ten minutes a man in the audience suddenly began shouting. '



Ex. 7. Complete the sentences using the most suitable tense.

Pattern:

It was very noisy next door. Our neighbours were having a party.

We were good friends.... John and I went for a walk... Mary was sitting on the ground....

Everybody was sitting round the table with their mouths full....

Jim was on his hands and knees on the floor....

Kate was rather annoyed with me. ..

I was sad when I sold my car...

We were extremely tired at the end of the journey...



Revision: ACTIVE VOICE TENSES

	P resent	Past	Future
Simple/ Indefinite	<p>V /V_s (es) (3 л.ед.ч) - подл., don't/doesn't V ? Do/Does подл. V</p> <p>1. постоянные состояния; 2. повторяющиеся, повседневные действия; 3. непреложная истина, закон природы; 4. действия, происходящие по программе, расписанию;</p> <p>·Usually, always, every day/week/month/year, on Mondays/ Tues-</p>	<p>V₂ (ed) - подл. didn'tV ? Did подл. V</p> <p>1. действия, произошедшие в прошлом в определенное указанное время (when); 2. повторяющиеся в прошлом действия, которые более не происходят (always, often, usually) 3. действия, происходящие непосредственно одно за другим в прошлом;</p> <p>·Yesterdays, last night/ two days/</p>	<p>Will+V</p> <p>1. действия, ктр возможно произойдут, а возможно нет; 2. для предсказаний; 3. для угроз, предупреждений; 4. для обещаний, решений, принятых в момент речи; 5. со словами hope, think, believe, expect, I'm sure, I'm afraid, probably, perhaps</p> <p>·Tomorrow, the</p>



	days, in the morning/afternoon/ evening, at night/the weekend	weeks/months/years ago/, then, when, in1992	day after tomorrow, next week/month/year, tonight, soon, in a week/month/year
Continuous/ Progressive	Am/ is/ are +V_{ing} 1. действия, происходящие в момент речи; 2. временные действия, происходящие в наст. период времени, но не обязательно в момент речи; 3. действия, происходящие слишком часто и по поводу которых мы хотим высказать раздражение или критику (always); 4. действия, заранее запланированные на буду-	Was/were+ V_{ing} 1. временные действия, продолжавшиеся в прошлом в момент, о котором мы говорим. Мы не знаем, когда началось и когда закончилось это действие; 2. временное действие, продолжавшееся в прошлом, когда произошло другое короткое действие; 3. два и более одновременных действия;	Will +be+V_{ing} 1. для действий, ктр будут в процессе в определенный момент в будущем; 2. действия, ктр определено произойдут в результате режима дня или договоренности; 3. когда мы спрашиваем о чьих-то планах на ближайшее будущее (с корыстной целью)



	<p>щее;</p> <p>·Now, at the moment, these days, at present, always, tonight, still</p>	<p>4. для описания обстановки, на фоне которой происходили события рассказа;</p> <p>·While, when, as,</p> <p>all day/night/morning</p>	<p>·This time tomorrow</p>
Perfect	<p>Have/has+Vз(ed)</p> <p>1. действия, которые произошли в прошлом в неопределенное время. Время не важно, важен результат;</p> <p>2. действия, которые начались в прошлом и все еще продолжают в настоящем; (non-continuous verbs)</p> <p>3. действия, которые</p>	<p>+Vз(ed)</p> <p>действие, ктр произошло раньше другого действия в прошлом. Ктр раньше- Past Perfect, позже – Past Simple;</p> <p>2. действия, ктр произошли до указанного действия в прошлом;</p> <p>·Before, after, already, just, till/until,</p>	<p>Will+have+Vз(ed)</p> <p>1. для действий, ктр завершатся до определенного периода в будущем</p> <p>·By the time, until, before</p>



	<p>завершились совсем недавно и их результаты ощущаются в настоящем;</p> <p>4. со словами «today, this morning/ afternoon», когда обозначенное ими время еще не истекло, а действие уже совершилось.</p> <p>For, since, already, just, always, recently, ever, how long, yet, lately, never, so far, today, this morning/afternoon/ week/month/year</p>	when, by, by the time	
Perfect Continuous	<p>Have/has+been+ing</p> <p>1. действия, ктр начались в прошлом и продолжаются в настоящем;</p> <p>2. действия, ктр дли-</p>	<p>Had+been+Ving</p> <p>подчеркивает действие, ктр длилось какой-то период времени в прошлом и закончилось до другого действия или периода времени в про-</p>	<p>Will+have+been+Ving</p> <p>1. подчеркивает действие, ктр будет длиться какой-то период и завершится до определенного перио-</p>



	<p>лись какой-то период, завершились и от этого действия есть результат в настоящем;</p> <p>For, since, all morning/afternoon/week/day, how long</p>	<p>шлом;</p> <p>2. подчеркивает действие, ктр длилось какой-то период времени в прошлом и от этого действия в прошлом был результат.</p> <p>For, since, how long, before, until, by, by the time</p>	<p>да в будущем</p> <p>By the time, until, before</p>
--	---	---	--

Ex. 1. Translate using the Past Tenses: Simple, Continuous. Perfect, Perfect Continuous:

1. Уже подошло время обеда, мы еще и не завтракали. 2. Некоторое время они шли молча. Том курил сигару и думал, как начать разговор. 3. Корабль уже плыл неделю и все успели познакомиться. 4. Я позвонил ему. Его голос звучал странно. Что-то происходило в его офисе. 5. Он вызвал Мистера Кинли, который был давно его другом и врачом. 6. Завтрак уже давно стоял на столе, а он все еще говорил по телефону. Он уже говорил 15 минут. Это было первый раз, когда он так долго говорил по телефону. 7. Со времени своего приезда, Энн почти все время проводила с Ирэн. Они все делали вместе. 8. Она уже жила в этом доме два месяца, когда упала с лошади и повредила спину. Теперь она лежала в постели. Это был первый период в ее жизни, когда она лежала без дела. 9. Он стоял в ожидании уже полчаса, прежде чем заметил того мужчину. 10. Она смотрела на него несколько секунд, она все еще думала, как спросить его об этом. 11. Уже некоторое время она находилась в состоянии ожидания. 12. Они ехали уже несколько часов. Ник смотрел в окно и не мог понять, где они. 13. После того, как они прошли три часа, они наконец добрались до дома. 14. Я две недели гостила у приятельницы. Мы хорошо проводили время, много купались и ездили верхом. 15. Он уже целый час играл на скрипке, когда мы вернулись. 16. Девушка долго играла на рояле, и мы слушали ее с удовольствием. 17. Его отец работал в этом гараже уже пять лет. Сейчас его сын открывал свое дело. 18. Он долго лежал без сознания, прежде чем люди его заметили. Он услышал, как они обсуждают, звать ли полицию или нет. 19. Летом он много времени проводил за городом. Он жил так со времени своей болезни. 20. Это был уже третий раз, как он звонил Питу за этот вечер. Его не было на работе уже два дня. Он плохо себя чувствовал. 21. Она отложила в сторону письмо, которое написала и задумалась. 22. Она пошла на почту отправить письмо, которое написала накануне. 23. Все еще спали, когда зазвонил телефон. 24. Сад потерял свою прелесть.

Почти все деревья срубили. 25. К счастью, он не догадался, что она плакала. Сейчас она улыбалась. 26. Она написала письмо и сейчас читала газету. 27. Она некоторое время наблюдала за своей подругой, пока та варила кофе. 28. Она села за тот же столик, за которым сидела накануне. Люди вокруг оживленно разговаривали, пили кофе. Она смотрела на них некоторое время с завистью. У нее сейчас было тяжело на душе. 29. Они учили английский со школы и сейчас говорили по-английски достаточно бегло. 30. Она все утро собирала цветы в саду и сейчас расставляла их в вазы. 31. Он поднял голову от чашки кофе, который он все помещивал, но не пил. 32. Том никак не хотел, чтобы его мать знала, чем мы все время занимались. 33. Она видела по их мокрым костюмам, что они только что плавали. 34. Люди, которых она встречала, казалось, знали, где она была, и что там делала. 35. В машинку был вставлен лист бумаги, на котором кто-то учился печатать. 36. Когда он вернулся, мы постарались сделать вид, что мы говорили не о нем. 37. Макс поднял книгу, которую он перед этим читал, и загнул уголок страниц, чтобы отметить место. 38. Я сидела на кухне и курила. Флора, которая играла в гостиной, пришла посмотреть, что я делаю.

Ex. 2. Translate using different tenses.

1. Я видел его вчера. Он играл в футбол. 2. Дождь идет с утра. Когда я вышел из дома, он шел. 3. Какое на тебе красивое платье! Ты выглядишь замечательно! 4. Я звонил ему несколько раз, но его нет дома. 5. Подожди меня. Я уже заканчиваю. Я как раз дописываю последнюю строчку. 6. Поезд отправляется в пять часов. Если ты не поторопишься, то мы опоздаем. 7. Он вечно пытается убедить всех в своей правоте. Вот и сейчас он так ведет себя. 8. Не звони мне вечером. Я целый вечер буду работать над переводом. 9. В воскресенье у нас вечеринка. Ты присоединишься к нам, я надеюсь? 10. Ты выглядишь таким усталым. - Я готовился к экзаменам несколько часов подряд. 11. К утру я буду знать результаты. Я уже давно жду их. 12. Осенью будет три года, как я учу английский. 13. Он добрался домой до того, как стемнело.

14. Не успела она и позавтракать, как принесли эту телеграмму.
15. Едва он переступил порог дома, когда зазвонил телефон.
16. Вчера я два часа провел в его кабинете. Раньше я проводил у него не более пяти минут.
17. Не прошло и пяти минут, как он вернулся с ответом.
18. Я надеюсь увидеться с тобой до того, как я уеду. Мы с тобой редко видимся в последнее время. Я давно видел тебя.
19. Через два дня я разговариваю с боссом. Я не знаю, что он скажет мне. Скоро будет семь лет, как я тут работаю.
20. Он несколько раз разговаривал со мной по этому поводу. Но я все еще обдумываю его предложение.

Ex. 3. Translate using different tenses.

1. На следующей неделе я сдаю экзамен по английскому. Я надеюсь, что сдам его.
2. К понедельнику я закончу все свои дела. Я как раз заканчиваю первый рассказ.
3. Я знаю его уже давно. Скоро будет 10 лет, как мы живем в одном доме.
4. За последнее время он много читает. До того, как он поступил в университет, он не читал такие книги.
5. Какое на тебе красивое платье! Ты никогда раньше так хорошо не выглядела.
6. Поезд прибывает через 2 часа. Кто встречает Ника?
7. Ты вечно говоришь глупости, когда много людей! За последнее время над тобой уже несколько раз посмеивались.
8. Что вы делали, когда вернулся Джек? - Когда он вошел в дом, я все еще работал над статьей. Я работал над ней с самого утра.
9. Твое пальто мокрое. Ты шел по дождю?
10. С понедельника до среды на прошлой неделе он был в Лондоне. - Он никогда раньше не был там?
11. Едва только прозвенел звонок, как вошел мистер Смит.
12. Не успела она закрыть за ним дверь, как расплакалась.
13. Он едва успел окончить университет, когда его пригласили на работу.
14. Когда я впервые встретил его, его книга уже была опубликована.
15. Он никогда не бывает сердит, раньше он часто выходил из себя.
16. В следующем месяце будет 7 лет, как этот музей открыт для посетителей.
17. Он прождал около часа до того, как его пригласили в кабинет.
18. Он сказал, что не знает, как это произошло. Целый день он работал в гараже.
19. Моя машина поломалась. Я не смогу под-

везти тебя. 20. Тебя пригласили на концерт? - Да, меня пригласили уже давно. Но я не уверен, что смогу прийти, завтра я буду целый день убирать квартиру.

2.3. Пассивный залог / Passive voice tenses

Passive voice

Voice is the category of the verb which indicates relation of the predicate to the subject and the object. There are two voices in English: the **active** voice, the **passive** voice. The active voice shows that the person or thing denoted by subject is the doer of the action expressed by the predicate. The passive voice shows that the person or thing denoted the subject is acted upon.

Active				Passive			
Su	Pre	Ob		Su	Pre	Ob	
bje	dicate	ject		bje	dicate	ject	
<u>Th</u>	<u>da</u>	<u>the</u>		<u>Th</u>	<u>wa</u>	<u>by</u>	
<u>e storm</u>	<u>maged</u>	<u>roof.</u>		<u>e roof</u>	<u>s dam-</u>	<u>the storm.</u>	
					<u>aged</u>		
er		rec		er		rec	
	do	iever			do	iever	

It is formed with the auxiliary verb **to be** in the required tense and **Past participle (V3)** of the main verb.

PASSIVE VOICE			
	Present	Past	Future
In	am	was	will + be + V3 The students <i>will be examined</i> next
definite	is + V3 <i>The students are examined each term</i>	+ were V3 <i>The students were examined last month</i>	
Co	am	was	-----
ntinuous	is + being + V3	+ were V3	-----

	The students <i>are being examined</i> in room 10.	The stu- dents <i>were still</i> <i>being examined</i> when I left.	
Per fect	have (has)+been+V3 The students <i>have been examined</i> this month	had + been + V3 The stu- dents <i>had been</i> <i>examined</i> by July 15	Will + have + been + have + V3 The students <i>will have been</i> <i>examined</i> by July 15

Only the verbs which take an object can go into the passive (=transitive verbs). Intransitive verbs can't be used in the Passive Voice.

A feature of English is that a verb in the active form may have a passive meaning. e.g. *The cow milks well. The cardigan wears well. The dress washes badly.*

The passive is preferred to the active when we are more interested in the action than in the person who does it. It happens in the following cases:

1) when it is not necessary to mention the doer of the action as it is obvious who she/he is/was or will be. e.g. *The streets are swept every day.*

2) when the speaker doesn't know who did the action or when the doer cannot be named definitely. In such cases the subject of the active sentence would be typically expressed by the noun — *people* or by the indefinite pronouns — *one, someone, somebody, they, you*. e.g. *My car has been moved. =Someone has moved my car. A new public library is being built. =They are building a new public library.*

3) when the speaker wants to avoid an awkward or ungrammatical sentence (when the subject of an active sentence consists of a long expression). e.g. *Don's decision to give up his job and move to Sydney surprised me. (-) I was surprised by Don's decision to give up his job and move to Sydney. (+)*

4) when the speaker wants to disclaim responsibility for disagreeable announcements or when he wants to make a polite state-



ment. e.g. *You have opened the letter! (impolite) The letter has been opened. (polite)*

The passive is more widely used in formal English and in written English. It is common for official rules, news items, newspaper reports of accidents and crimes, instructions, advertisements, headlines, signs, science and technology, formal explanations.

If we want to say who did the action we introduce the doer by "by", the instrument which was used to perform an action is introduced by the preposition "with". "With" is also used to talk about materials and ingredients. e.g. *He was accompanied by his friend. The building was lit by lightning. The windows were broken with a baseball bat. He was killed with a knife. Irish coffee is made with whisky. The room was filled with smoke.*

Here is a list of **prepositional verbs (A), phrasal verbs (B) and phraseological units (C)** to be learnt:

A

- 1) account for – to give an explanation or reason for;
- 2) arrive at (a decision, conclusion, agreement) – to reach, to come to;
- 3) ask for – to make a request for;
- 4) approve of – to consider good, wise, right; disapprove of – to consider bad, wrong, unwise;
- 5) break into – to enter by force: to break into a house;
- 6) call for – a) to demand (e.g. to call for the waiter, to call for the bill); b) to collect (someone or something);
- 7) comment on – to make a remark, give an opinion;
- 8) deal with – to do business, to trade with;
- 9) depend on – to trust (usually someone);
- 10) hear from – to receive news from someone usually by letter;
- 11) hear of – to know or to hear about (a fact, existence of something or somebody);
- 12) insist on (upon) – to declare firmly (when opposed);



13) interfere with – to get in the way of another, to prevent from happening;

14) laugh at – to treat as foolish, worthless or an object of fun;

15) listen to – to give attention in hearing;

16) look at – to give attention in seeing, use the eyes;

17) look after – to take care of someone or something;

18) look for – to try to find;

19) look into – to examine the meaning or causes of something;

20) mock at – to laugh at (someone or something) when it is wrong to do so;

21) object to – to be against something or someone;

22) provide for – to support, supply with necessary things;

23) read to – to say printed or written words especially to give pleasure to others;

24) refer to – to mention, speak about;

25) rely on – to trust someone to do something;

26) send for – to give a command, request;

27) shout at – to give a loud cry, speak or say very loudly;

28. think highly (well, little, poorly) of someone or something – to have a good (bad, etc.) opinion of someone or something;

29) wait for – to stay somewhere without doing anything until somebody or something comes or something happens;

30) write to – to produce and send (a letter);

e.g. I hope the child will be looked after while the parents are away. She was well provided for in her husband's will. I hate to be shouted at. His foolish behaviour could not be accounted for.

B

1) blow down – to fall by blowing;

2) blow out –to (cause) stop burning;

3) break down – to destroy something, reduce to pieces;

4) bring up – to educate and care for the family until grown; to raise or introduce (a subject, a question);



- 5) call up – to order (someone) to join the armed forces;
- 6) give up – to stop believing that someone can be saved especially from death;
- 7) hold up – to delay;
- 8) knock down – to destroy a house by means of blows;
- 9) let down – to cause someone to be disappointed in one's loyalty; to fail to keep a promise to someone;
- 10) pick on – to choose someone to do an unpleasant job or blame someone for something, especially unfairly; to choose something or someone;
- 11) pick out – to choose someone or something carefully; to recognize someone or something in a group of people or things;
- 12) pick up – to lift something up from a surface; to collect someone who is waiting for you or something that you have left somewhere;
- 13) point out – to draw attention to something or someone;
- 14) pull down – to break to pieces and destroy something;
- 15) pull out – to remove by drawing out;
- 16) put off – to move to a later date, to delay;
- 17) run over (of a vehicle or its driver) – to knock down and pass over the top of (esp. a creature);
- 18) see off – to go to the airport, station, etc. with someone who is beginning a trip;
- 19) take down – to write down; to separate (a large machine or article) into pieces;
e.g. The mail will be picked up a bit later. Their wedding has been put off. The window was blown out by the explosion.

C

- 1) to do away with – to cause to end, abolish;
- 2) find fault with – to complain, perhaps too much or too often;
- 3) lose sight of – to cease to see; to forget;
- 4) make use of – to use well, to take advantage of;



5) make fun of – to laugh or cause others to laugh rather unkindly;

6) pay attention to – to take notice of;

7) put an end to – to stop from happening any more;

8) put up with – to accept an unpleasant situation or person without complaining;

9) set fire to – to light (something) not really meant to burn, set something on fire;

10) take (good) care of – to be responsible for someone or something;

11) take notice of – to pay attention to;

e.g. She said something but her words were taken no notice of. This state of affairs will be put an end to. At last the ship was lost sight of. The main purpose of the discussion mustn't be lost sight of.

Exercises: THE PASSIVE VOICE

Ex. 1. Tick the appropriate column according to the sound of the endings in the following Participles.

[t]

[d]

[id]

a) sorted

b) asked

c) worried

d) lifted

e) prepared

f) criticized

g) trapped

h) trained

i) discussed

j) labelled

k) cooked

l) mailed

Ex. 2. Give Participle II of the following verbs.

To drink, to do, to travel, to catch, to lead, to carry, to eat, to think, to taste, to cut, to pay, to pray, to lose, to leave, to follow, to investigate, to allow, to read, to smooth, to breed, to reduce, to beat.

Ex. 3. Complete the sentences in the table with the appropriate form of the verb *to translate*:

	Present	Past	Future
In-definite	This book in- to 14 languages.	The article only yester- day and I haven't had time to read it yet.	The report of the commission next week.
Per- fect.	All the corre- spondence by him this month.	All the mate- rials of the confer- ence by the end of the term.	The letter by 3 p.m., in case it's urgent.
Con- tinuous	The para- graph by the student now.	The para- graph still when I came.	

Ex. 4. Ask four types of the questions to the following sentences.

1. The Pyramids were built by the Ancient Egyptians.
2. A businessman was robbed in the street yesterday night.
3. The tree that used to cast shadow against the window has been cut.
4. The house was thoroughly cleaned and dusted before the parents' arrival.
5. Bill Clinton was elected President of the United States in 1993.
6. The exam was passed successfully.
7. You'll be informed about the changes in the schedule beforehand.
8. The terrorist had been caught before the festival began.
9. We were being invited for the party when Sarah entered the room.
10. They have never been visited by John's mother since they got married.
11. A new school is being built in our street.

Ex. 5. Put questions to the parts of the sentences given in *italic*. ¹.

1. The policeman's helmet fell to the ground and was picked up by *a toddler*. 2. A new railway is being constructed *across the desert*. 3. This record has been played *so many times* that it is no good any more. 4. A place *where people go skating* is called *a skating-rink*. 5. *Charles* was allowed *to make one phone call*. 6. The document has been signed by *the president* of the board. 7. The parcel will be delivered *tomorrow*. 8. A new movie theatre is being built *in this square*. 9. The story was typed by our best *typist*. 10. *Some students* are being examined over there. 11. It was explained to them *where to cross the river*.

Ex. 6. Transform the sentences using the Passive Voice.

a) 1. We looked through all the advertisements very attentively. 2. They won't give me the chance to explain, I'm afraid. 3. Soon we lost sight of the boat. 4. Great Britain imports a number of raw materials from other countries. 5. They will return the books in time. 6. People invent new ways of cooking vegetables every day. 7. Is it true that Mr. Trench expelled Garry from school?

b) 1. The gardener was gathering dry leaves when we arrived. 2. How long will the committee be considering the question? 3. He is still examining his students. 4. He bent over his toe with absorbing interest while the nurse was unwinding the bandage. 5. A police officer is interviewing her about the accident. 6. Was the doctor examining the child when you came? 7. Whom are they discussing now? 8. The studio is now dubbing a new French movie.

c) 1. He has just told me the news. 2. When they put the tea-things away men started a game of bridge. 3. They hadn't informed her of her mother's death until she arrived to Los Angeles. 4. We'll have planted the flowers by the next week. 5. Before we entered the house somebody had switched off the lights. 6. Since his mother's death his aunt had kept the house till he came back. 7. Have you mentioned these facts to your opponent?

d) 1. An impressive silence followed the answer. 2. I shall be typing your stuff when you come. 3. The police have been looking for him since last Christmas. 4. A bee stung him severely last summer. 5. The boss is interviewing Tony for a job. 6. She will have baked the cake by the time you come. 7. Now when they've opened a new bus line, it takes me only fifteen minutes to get to work. 8. The thieves made their escape through the kitchen where they damaged several pieces of equipment.

Ex. 7. Translate into English, using the Passive Voice.

1. Эти новости были только что переданы по радио. 2. Этот вопрос все еще обсуждается? — Да, его обсуждают уже два часа. 3. Так как мы вернулись поздно, ворота были уже закрыты. 4. Когда я поступил в университет, библиотека все еще строилась. 5. Книги, которые хорошо читаются, редко найдешь на полках библиотеки. 6. Мне еще ничего об этом не говорили. 7. Ничего удивительного, что цветы погибли: их не поливали целую неделю. 8. Почему в читальном зале так прохладно? — Его как раз проветривают. 9. Посылку послали туда по ошибке. 10. Наш старый бухгалтер ушел на пенсию, и на его место взяли нового. 11. Его нигде не видели в течение всей недели. Он болен? 12. Телеграмму послали поздно вечером, так что она будет получена только утром. 13. Миссис Лекки стояла в прихожей, держа в руках открытку, которую только что принесли. 14. Пожар начался ночью, и пламя было видно издалека. 15. Этот дом был построен до того, как началась война. 16. Я уверена, что вам помогут в вашей работе. 17. На скатерть пролили молоко, теперь ее надо стирать. 18. К свадьбе все приготовили заранее — наняли фотографа, разослали приглашения, купили подарки.

Ex. 8. Translate the sentences and give the corresponding active construction. using the word or group of words in italic as the subject of the sentence.

1. The cat was chased by *the dog*. 2. Many interesting experiments are carried out in *our laboratory*. 3. My patience was exhausted by *the child's behaviour*. 4. The Statue of Liberty was designed by

Gustave Eiffel. 5. The baby was nursed by *the elder sister*. 6. The other day I was entrusted with a new task (*the professor*). 7. Problems of parental love are touched upon in *this book*. 8. Soon the result of the game was declared (*the announcer*). 9. The robber was quickly caught by *the police*. 10. The bedroom was prepared for his reception (*the hostess*). 11. Monday was agreed upon as the most suitable day for the first rehearsal (*the actors*). 12. She hopes she will not be refused a visa (*the Embassy*). 13. I called to ask if the diamond brooch of mine had been found (*you*). 14. Many goods are exported from *Russia*. 15. The young lady was obviously depressed by *the news*. 16. You will be met at the station (*he*).

Ex. 9. Change the voice of the verb in italic. Give two passive constructions for each sentence.

1. The coach *gave* the boxer some instructions. 2. My parents *bought* me a bicycle for my last birthday. 3. *Have you shown* him the documents? 4. I *taught* you this rule yesterday. You can't have forgotten it. 5. The commander *charged* him with a very responsible mission. 6. The boss *granted* him a ten days' leave. 7. When the Portuguese rulers refused Columbus assistance, the Spanish Government *offered* him three ships. 8. His parents regularly *send* him parcels with fruit from their garden. 9. The doctor was worried by state of his patient's health and *prescribed* him a very powerful medicine. 10. His friends never *forgave* him his disloyalty. 11. The management *offer* me several jobs and I can't decide which to take. 12. They *paid* him a considerable sum of money for his car. 13. The case will be solved no sooner we'll *tell* him the truth. 14. The officer *showed* me the photo of the suspect. 15. They were spending this evening together and his granny *told* Larry a long story about her young year.

Ex. 10. Translate into English. Give two passive constructions where possible.

1. В агентстве ей пообещали хорошую работу. 2. Мне ничего не дали в библиотеке. 3. Ему не показали, как это делается. 4. В буфете вам дадут чашку кофе и бутерброд. 5. Вам покажут эту статью в редакции. 6. Отца уволили и не дали никаких объяс-

нений. 7. Эту работу дали кому то другому. 8. Мне даже ничего не обещали. 9. Вам показали как пройти на станцию? 10. Каждом; студенту дадут программу. 11. Вам предложили что-нибудь поест? 12. Что вам там показали? 13. Когда вам рассказали эту историю? 14. В этой компании всем обещают высокую зарплату. 15. почему нам этого не сказали? 16. Нам вчера дали несколько новых журналов и книг. 17. Мне показали проект нового театра

Ex. 11. Fill in the blanks with prepositions. Translate the sentences into Russian.

Note the use of prepositions with the following verbs:

To look at; to listen to; to fix one's eyes on; to talk about; to speak about; to take notice of; to refer to; to take care of; to bow to smb; to rely on (upon); to find fault with; to send for.

1. I shall be quite safe taken care ... well. 2. A man who is much talked ... is always very attractive. 3. I was told too that neither masters nor teachers were found fault ... in that establishment. 4. He could see that the bed was empty, and that it had not been slept.... 5. Klesmer bowed round to the three sisters more grandly than they had eve; been bowed ... before. 6. The man was again sent..., but would not come. 7. One child in a household of grown people is usually made very much ... of, and in a quiet way, I was a good deal taken notice ... by Mrs.Bretton, who had been left a widow, with one son. before I knew her. 8. I have been given to understand that you are to be relied ... 9. Sarah was looked ... with surprise. 10. For some time MrTipimns eyes were fixed .. the Doctor and the widow. 11. The speaker was listened ... with interest. 12. The poem was much spoken ... last year. 13. He was very glad that his late arrival wasn't taken notice... 14. That incident was never referred ... again

Ex. 12. Transform the sentences using the Passive Voice. Pay attention to prepositions.

1. I don't want anybody to talk to me like this. 2. Have they sent for the doctor? 3. We shall deal with this problem in the second chapter. 4. The hotel takes no responsibility for the loss of personal property. 5. Nobody took notice of his re mark. 6. I'm sure she'll take good care of the children. 7. The porter will look after your luggage.



8. They arrived at the decision after a long debate. 9. The press is widely commenting on the change of the government. 10. Why didn't the speaker dwell longer upon this question? 11. You should send the sick man to hospital. They will look after him much better there. 12. He was a brilliant speaker, and, whenever he spoke the audience listened to him with great attention. 13. Why did they laugh at him?

Ex 13. Translate into_English paving attention to prepositions.

1. Как вы думаете, можно положиться на эти данные? 2. Неужели за этими детьми не присматривают? 3. Не беспокойтесь, с вашим багаже позаботятся, и он будет вовремя доставлен в гостиницу. 4. Интересно, почему на эту книгу так часто ссылаются? 5. У бабушки сердечный приступ. — А за доктором послали? 6. А почему этих вопросов не коснулись в дискуссии? 7. Не удивительно, что об этом фильме так много говорят. 8. Я узнал, что в этом доме никогда раньше не жили. 9. Мы не знали, что его разыскивает полиция. 10. Со мной так еще не разговаривали. 11. Не говори таких вещей, а то над тобой будут смеяться. 12. О его новой книге много пишут. 13. Его никогда не слушали. 14. Дети любят, когда им читают. 15. На эту книгу никогда не ссылаются. 16. Послали за свежим молоком?

Ex 14. State where a combination *to be* + Participle II is a simple predicate and where it is a compound nominal predicate.

1. The woman was a little alarmed 2. My boxes are locked, strapped and labelled; I hate being hurried. 3. The dead silence was broken only by a regular beat. 4. Earnest was much distressed. 5. What I noticed first was that the window was broken. 6. When I came up to the gate, it had already been looked. 7. The exhibit in i already closed. 8. He was in the house when the diamond was lost. 9. The carriage rode away, the great gate.; were closed; the bell rang for the dancing lesson.

Ex 15. Make sentences out of the following words and word-combinations, using the passive or the active construction or both if possible.



1. Several people, to kill, huge hurricane, yesterday. 2. The garden, the secret, not to overhear. 3. A group of people, the guide, some pictures, to show. 4. Flowers, Jane, to present to, birthday party, friends. 5. The gardener, to ask, I, in the garden, to help him. 6. Nobody, the man next door, for several days, to see. 7. The company, all salaries, recently, to cut. 8 The bank manager, to keep waiting, I, for half an hour. 9. Everybody, the book, now, to look for. 10. To do that job, to use, nowadays, a computer. 11. You, your opinion, to ask for, ever? 12. The police, nobody, about the mistake, to inform. 13. Josephine, the news, to distress. 14. Where, your company, you, next year, to send. 15. Police, thieves, this morning, to arrest. 16. The baby-sitter, the kids, to look after.

Ex. 16. Think of the person whom you heard much about, but you are not sure that what you have heard is true. Discuss the person with your partner and report to the group.

Pattern: She is **said to work** 16 hours a day. They **are known to be really untidy**.

He **is supposed to have robbed a bank several years ago**. You can use this structure with a number of other verbs: thought, considered, reported, expected.

Ex. 17. Read the newspaper articles. Rewrite them using the Passive Voice where possible. Translate your variants into Russian.

a) The red double decker buses which are such a famous sight on London's streets will soon disappear. Londoners prefer small single decker buses which can move quickly through busy high streets. The new buses will carry forty people. Passengers will be closer to the driver and there'll be a better atmosphere. In the nineteenth century horses pulled double decker buses through London, but in the early 2010s computer screens at the bus stops will tell passengers exactly when the next bus will arrive. An electronic 'eye' at the front of the bus will be able to change traffic lights from red to green as the bus approaches.



b) People have been using the word 'dinosaur' now for more than 150 years. Before 1841, people knew about these enormous animals of the past from the bones they found. But no one had a name for them. Then in 1841, Richard Owen gave them the name we know now. He used the Greek words *denios* — terrible, and *sauros* — lizard, and joined them to make the new word.

In 1991, the British post office has issued a set of stamps to celebrate 150 years of the 'terrible lizards'. Now we know the dinosaurs were not all so terrible, but they still have a big place in our imagination.

c) When American countries celebrated the 500th anniversary of Columbus's 'discovery' of the New World, not everyone came to the party. Controversy is raging everywhere about whether it is right to celebrate Columbus. Although he began by trying to cooperate with the native Americans on friendly terms, his explorations brought about the destruction of native societies. He himself transported many Indians back to Europe in chains. Spanish conquistadors followed him.

They destroyed whole civilizations in Central and South America. And then the waves of European colonists pushed out the tribes in the north. A Cherokee Indian teacher of philosophy at the University of Florida has called Columbus 'one of the biggest mass murderers in history'.

d) People all over the world know the name Harley Davidson. In 1903, when Bill Harley and Arthur and Walter Davidson made their first motorcycle, the new machines were more or less what their name suggested - bicycles with engines. But by the 1930s the designers transformed them into solid machines we know now. Of course, customers had influenced the appearance of motorbikes very much. Before the 1970s, nearly all US police departments used Harley-Davidsons. Later on Japanese companies, such as Kawasaki, took over the American bikes, because they produces better-built and cheaper machines. But the American company recovered, improved its designs, and now again most US police departments use Harley-Davidson bikes.



Ex. 18. Compose short stories (10 sentences) using as many passive constructions as possible.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

In English the tense of the verb in a subordinate clause (mainly, an object clause) depends on that of the verb in the principal clause. This adjustment of tense-forms is called The Sequence of Tenses.

The following are the rules of the Sequence of Tenses:

1. A **present or future** tense in the **principal clause** may be followed in **the subordinate by any tense** that is required by the sense. *His horoscope reads that he has just had a rather difficult financial period, but that this week he will be lucky with money matters. It reads that today is his most successful day. They have informed us that hospitals and rescue services coped extremely well.*

2. A **past tense** in the **principal clause** must be followed by a **past tense in the subordinate clause**. The choice of the type of a past tense depends on the time relations between the principal and the subordinate clause.

A. If the action of the subordinate clause is **simultaneous** with the action of the principal clause the **Past Simple or the Past Continuous** is used in the subordinate clause: *I didn't know you two were related to each other. For a moment she didn't know where she was. I was sure the children were sleeping and didn't hear us.*

B. If the action of the subordinate clause is **prior** to the action of the principal clause or lasted a certain time before the action of the principal clause, the **Past Perfect or Past Perfect Continuous** is used in the subordinate clause: *I knew she had not played the piano for a long time. We were aware that they had been building a garage since last summer.*

C. If the action of the subordinate clause refers to a **future moment**, a Future tense-form is replaced by the so-called **Future-in-the-Past** (when the auxiliary **"will"** changes to **"would"**). *Susan's parents were happy that their daughter would marry into a good*



family. I knew they would still be reading for the seminar when I came. They were sure that they would have sold the house by the end of the year. He informed us that by March 2010 he would have been working for the company for 10 years.

If the verb in the principal clause is in a past tense, alongside with the tense changes the following **changes of adverbials and demonstrative pronouns** take place:

today, tonight	that day, that night
here	there
now	then/at that time/right away/at the moment/ immediately
this,	these
that,	those
tonight/this evening	that night/evening
yesterday	the day before/the previous day
the day before yesterday	2 days before/previously
ago	before
2 years ago	2 years before/previously
last night, week, month, etc the night, week, etc.	before/the previous night, week
tomorrow	the following/the next day/the day after
the day after tomorrow	in two days' time next week/year, etc.
the following/the next week/year, etc.	

NOTES:

1. If there are several subordinate clauses in a sentence the rule of the **Sequence of Tenses** is observed in **all of them**: *He explained he was sure you were in. She admitted that she knew what kind of person he was.* But when the reported sentence contains a

time clause, the tenses of **the time clause do not change**: *I'm sure she has been writing since she came home.* > *I was sure she had been writing since she came home.* *I know that she left when it was getting dark.* > *I knew (that) she had left when it was getting dark.*

The Sequence of Tenses may not be observed:

- if the object clause expresses **general truth**. *The pupil knew that water consists/consisted of oxygen and hydrogen.* *The teacher said that the sun sets/set in the west.*

- if the action in the object clause refers to what is (or was) believed to be a **regular occurrence or existing fact**. *He asked the clerk what time the earliest train to Manchester starts/ started.* *He explained to us very clearly how the computer works/ worked.*

- when the point of reference for the past tense in the principal clause is the **moment of speech** (absolute time). *I've just talked to Marilyn on the phone. — What did she say? She said there was an earthquake here (there) yesterday (last Monday).*

Compare:

Marilyn said on the phone last week that there had been an earthquake there the day before.

- if the statement is **still up to date** when we report it. *Angela wrote to me saying that her father owns (or owned) a supermarket.* *The speaker stressed that poverty is one of the most important global issues.*

Note, however, that we usually change the tense if the action in the principal clause is **out of date** or may be **untrue**. *Angela wrote to me years ago saying that her father owned a supermarket.* *The Prime Minister claimed that the government had made the right decision.*

2. When the action in the subordinate clause precedes the action in the principal clause but refers to a **definite past moment** or there is a **succession of past events, the Past Simple** is used.

I knew that his youngest son was born in 1960. He told me that they decided to go to the pictures, got a 63 bus, and got off at the Elephant Castle as the pictures were just next door.

3. Modal verbs in subordinate object clauses usually remain unchanged, but there can also be a tense change to some of them. See the table below:

must	must (or had to)
have to	had to
needn't	needn't/ didn't need to/ didn't have to
can	could/would be able to (future reference)
may	might
shall	should (asking for advice)
will	would

would, could, might, should, ought do not change

4. If the reported sentence deals with **unreal past, conditionals type 2 and 3 or wishes**, the tenses **remain the same**. "If I were you, I would apologise," he said. He said that if he were me he would apologise.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Change the verb in the principal clause into a past tense and make the necessary changes in the subordinate clause.

1. She always tells people that she is good at languages.
2. Everybody knows that Susan is strict about keeping things tidy.
3. I forget that she is always letting people down.
4. They do not realise how nervous she may be.
5. What he is saying is not true.
6. She knows for sure that honesty is the best policy.
7. Mary complains that she is bored with the same old routine day after day.
8. Max is sure that we all need a holiday.
9. He knows that his grandparents always go to church on Sundays.
10. It's remarkable that she thinks of Gerald as the black sheep of the family.
11. He wants us to see that he is not hostile.
12. We know that the bridge is unsafe.
13. She can't understand why they are trying to talk her into taking a dance course.



14. My sister agrees that she needs a shoulder to cry on. 15. I can tell from her face that she is lying. 16. We know that the company is re-organizing its departments.

Ex. 2. Open the brackets using the correct tense-form.

1. My daughter wanted to see the new film. She found out that many good actors (star) in it. 2. She complained that Jack always (get) on her nerves. 3. We were not sure that Paul would find Mary. We were afraid he (not/know) her address. 4. I didn't introduce Jack to Helen. I was sure they (know) each other, but it appeared they didn't. 5. It was a pity he no longer (care) in the least about Pat. 6. He proved to everyone's satisfaction that the drug (be) effective and harmless. 7. I knew she usually (get) in such a fuss before people (come) to dinner. 8. The Johnsons were away. We learnt that they (travel) about Canada. 9. She stayed in the whole evening. We were sure she (expect) guests. 10. I met Judy in the department store the other day. She explained that she (look) for a nice T-shirt for herself. 11. She mentioned to her colleagues that she (think) of retiring. 12. The teacher asked why we (not/read) up for our seminar. 13. She complained that she (have) a memory like a sieve. She constantly (forget) something. 14. The Prime Minister declared yesterday that the country (do) well. Things would get better soon. 15. No one could guess that she (be) Russian by birth and British by marriage. 16. Steve's parents were convinced that a lot of people (envy) his good looks and easy-going charm.

Ex. 3. Open the brackets using the correct tense-form in the subordinate clause.

1. When I came to the station I saw my cousin. I understood that she (miss) the 8 o'clock train. 2. Everybody praised the film. Mary was sorry she (not/see) it. 3. It was raining hard. Mrs Parker regretted she (not/take) an umbrella. 4. My friend called on me yesterday. He boasted he (get) two tickets for the match. 5. Harry didn't come to the party. We thought he (not/receive) our invitation. 6. We wanted to know where she (be) all that time. 7. I found out that a professional singer (be engaged) for the concert some days before. 8. Jack was



happy to have got a ticket. He didn't complain he (stand) in a queue for 2 hours. 9. The meeting was over at last. I looked at my watch and saw that we (discuss) the production plan for 3 hours. 10. We knew they (have) the house since they (move) there. 11. He explained that when he was born his parents (be married) for 12 years already. 12. We heard on the radio that only a minority of people (vote) for him, so he (lose) the election finally. 13. The family rejoiced that John and Helen officially (announce) their engagement. 14. I was sure it was the first time she (lie) to us. 15. Liz told me she (have) a really weird dream the previous night. 16. The Cribbs complained they (have) dreadful weather lately. 17. She couldn't tell us what she (spend) all her money on. 18. Ann said she (try) to phone me since she (arrive) home. 19. It suddenly crossed her mind that she (promise) to meet a friend that night. 20. She remarked that John always (have) a tendency to exaggerate the importance of minor problems. 21. He thought that I (interpret) his words wrongly. 22. I realized that the police (not/reveal) the full details of the case.

Ex. 4. Choose the right adverbial.

1. A few days (before, ago) we celebrated my mother's birthday. She was sorry her cousin wasn't present. He had gone away on business (yesterday, the day before). 2. I gave my friend my pocket dictionary (last week, the week before) and he promised he would return it (tomorrow, the next day). He kept his promise. 3. (Last month, the previous month) I saw John. He looked sunburnt. He had returned from the South (last week, the previous week). 4. Dick spent last Sunday in the country. We were sure he had had a good time (this day, that day). 5. When I was at Mary's some days (ago, before) she showed me a good pronouncing dictionary. She explained she had bought (this, that) dictionary in London 3 weeks (ago, before). 6. I've just phoned Bill and found out that he is leaving (tonight, that night). 7. I saw Mary at 5 (yesterday, the day before). She regretted she was very busy (now, at that moment) and couldn't help me. 8. He explained that he had rented the house 2 years (ago, before). 9. They seemed to be working from dawn till dusk (this, that) summer.

10. They informed us that the company had sent us all the details by express post three months (ago, before). 11. We were sure that it was quite possible to buy (this, that) house on credit (last, the previous) year. 12. Diana said (yesterday, the day before) that the last time she had seen Jean was 2 months (ago, before). 13. Tony's father told us that his son had been practising the clarinet (the previous night, the night ago). 14. We learnt that Alex and Sally had ended their relationship about months (before, ago). 15. He was sorry that he had made such a fool of himself (yesterday morning, the morning before).

Ex. 5. Use the verbs in brackets in the correct tense-form.

1. Nick didn't want to stay at his relatives. He explained he (put up) at a hotel. 2. He predicted that he (discover) the tiny particle when he conducted his next experiment. 3. I was not sure I (be able) to remember the exact details. 4. I hoped that she (mature) as the years went by. 5. I had always believed that one day I (see) him. 6. The company promised that they (reimburse) our expenses. 7. We decided that we (travel) to New York by sea rather than go by air. 8. He insisted that the reforms (save) the system, not destroy it. 9. Mrs Johnson was sure that she (still, work up) for that company the whole of next year. 10. John explained that he (wait) for his A-level exam results until next week. 11. We agreed to go to the pictures yesterday evening. My friend promised he (wait) for me outside the cinema at 6. 12. She was sure that her kids (like) a light breakfast. 13. He was told that if he (want) to continue working for the company he (have to) smarten up his appearance. 14. There was no doubt the government (make) every effort to avert an economic crisis. 15. When she said she (not/give) me my money back I got furious.

Ex. 6. Open the brackets using the right adverbials.

1. A couple of weeks ago my son asked me to take him to the circus. I promised that we would go there (next week, the next week). 2. I ran into Mike last Sunday in a fast-food restaurant. It was a surprise to us that he was leaving (tomorrow, the next day) for Paris



to participate in a forum. 3. John promised me yesterday that he will drop in on my parents (next, the following) Sunday and will tell them I'm O.K.51. 4. They've just announced that the exam on Linguistics will be put off till the end of (next, the next) term. 5. There was very strong hope that the wounded man would survive by (next, the next) morning. 6. Clare told Alan that they were allowed to pay the bills (in two days, two days later). 7. I had intended to visit Helen in hospital last Friday, but her husband phoned me on Thursday and said that the doctors would discharge her from hospital (the day after tomorrow, in two days time). 8. Last year he definitely promised his wife that (next, the next) summer they would spend at the seaside. 9. We arrived in Turin on Monday. (Next, the following) day we left for Rome. 10. That summer was very wet. (Next, the next) summer was even wetter. 11. I quite forgot that (the day after tomorrow, in two days time) we were leaving for the South. 12. The students understood they didn't have to leave until (the next day, tomorrow).

REPORTED (INDIRECT) SPEECH

We can report people's words by using direct speech or reported speech.

Direct speech is the exact words someone used. We use quotation marks in direct speech. e.g. „*It's nice to be home, Tom said.*

Reported speech is the exact meaning of what someone said, but not the exact words. We do not use quotation marks in reported speech. We can either use the word that after the introductory verb (say, tell, etc.), or we can omit it. e.g. *Tom said (that) it was nice to be home.*

We can use the verbs **say** and **tell** both in direct and reported speech.

Tell is always followed by a personal object (**told me**).

Say is used with or without a personal object. When used with a personal object it is always followed by the preposition to (**said to me**).

Study the following examples:



direct speech	reported speech
He said, „I’m Ted.“	He said (that) he was Ted.
He said to me, „I’m Ted.“	He said to me (that) he was Ted.
He told me, „I’m Ted.“	He told me (that) he was Ted. (NOT: He told that he was Ted)

Say and tell are also used with the following **expressions**: **say** good morning/afternoon, etc., something/nothing, etc., one’s prayers, so, a few words, say so, say no more, say for certain

tell the truth, a lie, a secret, a story, the time, the difference, sb one’s name, sb the way, one from another, one’s fortune

Reporting questions

When reporting a question, you should also change the question into an indirect question. In other words, you need to change this sentence so that it is a normal positive sentence, not a question. You can use the words **if** or **whether** for YES / NO questions.

Direct speech	Reported speech
She asked, "Are you well?"	She asked <u>if</u> I was well.
"Where do you live?" he asked me.	He asked me where I lived.
"Why don't we meet?" she asked me.	She asked me why we didn't meet.
I asked, "How does she make them?"	I asked how she made them.
They asked, "Where is the mall?"	They asked where the mall is.

Reporting orders and requests

When reporting an order or request we change them into an infinitive.

Direct speech	Reported speech
----------------------	------------------------



"Go home," she told me.	She told me to go home.
"Start talking," he told us.	He told us to start talking.
"Stop right there," they ordered us.	They ordered us to stop right there.
"Could you please open the door?" she asked me.	She asked me to open the door.
"Don't shout," I asked.	I asked them not to shout .

EXERCISES

Indirect statements

Ex. 1. Turn the following sentences into reported speech.

1. *He said, „I'm going to the station.“ ...He said (that) he was going to the station...*

2. Tina said, 'You should exercise regularly.' 3. They said, 'We had booked the room before we left.' 4. Tom said, 'This meal is delicious.' 5. 'I've written you a letter,' she said to her friend. 6. 'We've decided to spend our holidays in Jordan,' they told us. 7. Jill said, 'I'll go to the bank tomorrow.' 8. She said to him, 'We've been invited to a wedding.' 9. She told me, 'You must leave early tomorrow.' 10. 'They've gone out for the evening,' Jessie said to me. 11. They said, 'We may visit Joe tonight.' 12. She said, 'I can meet you on Tuesday.' 13. Keith said, 'There is a letter for you on the table.' 14. 'We won't be visiting Tom this evening,' Sam told us. 15. Eric said, 'They had been talking on the phone for an hour before I interrupted them.' 16. 'I haven't spoken to Mary since last week,' Gloria said. 17. They delivered the letters this morning,' she said. 18. He said, 'I'd like to buy this jumper.' 19. They aren't going on holiday this year,' he said. 20. Jane said, 'I haven't finished my homework yet.' 21. 'I'm going to bed early tonight,' Caroline said. 22. 'My mother is coming to visit us,' I said. 23. 'We don't want to watch a film tonight,' the chil-

dren said. 24. 'He's playing in the garden now,' his mother said.
25. She said, 'You must do your homework now.'

Ex. 2. Turn the sentences into reported speech. In which off the following sentences do the tenses not change? In which do they not have to be changed? Why?

1. *The article says, 'The artist only uses oil paints.' ...The article said (that) the artist only uses oil paints.... ...The tenses do not change because the introductory verb is in the present simple....*
2. 'They are working hard today,' he said.
3. 'I've done the things you asked me to do,' Mary said.
4. 'The sun rises in the east,' she said.
5. 'I've written you a letter,' she said to her friend.
6. 'We've never been on holiday abroad,' they said.
7. Mum says, 'Dinner is ready.'
8. 'I'll start cooking at six o'clock,' she said.
9. 'We went to the supermarket yesterday,' he said.
10. Mrs. Jones says, 'My daughter is going to have a baby.'
11. 'You're never going to get a job,' Dad always says.
12. 'Fish live in water,' he said.
13. 'We went to the beach last weekend,' they said
14. 'He showed me his photographs,' she said.
15. 'I'm working on my project now,' Billy said.

Indirect Questions

a) General and Alternative Question.

Ex. 3. Change the following sentences into indirect speech. Begin your sentences with: *I wonder/ want to know/etc.*

1. Are you fond of English?
2. Has he received my letter?
3. Does it often rain or snow in England?
4. Will he come here tomorrow?
5. Does she prefer tea or coffee?
6. Are you having a good time?
7. Did Mary get a letter yesterday?
8. Has John given up his job?
9. Will you be able to meet me at the station?
10. Have they ever been there?
11. Is he married or single?

b) Special Questions

Ex. 4. Change the following into indirect speech. Begin your question with: *Can you tell me/I would like to know -I wonder..*

1. How many students are there in your group? 2. Where do they live? 3. Why were you late yesterday? 4. How do you feel after your holiday? 5. What did she speak about at the meeting? 6. When are you going to have dinner? 7. When will you leave for Moscow? 8. What does the word mean? 9. Who teaches them English? 10. Why didn't you answer my letter? 11. Who can answer this question. 12. How did you manage to carry that heavy box? 13. Why are they making so much noise?

Indirect Commands and Requests

Ex. 5. Change the following into indirect speech

1. Mother (to her daughter): "Buy some bread and milk Helen." 2. Teacher (to the class)- "Don't speak Russian at the English lesson." 3. Jack (to me). "Please, give me your dictionary." 4. Doctor (to the boy): "Don't have cold drinks." 5. The teacher (to the student)- "Repeat this story from beginning to end". 6. Ann (to her girlfriend): "Will you help me with this exercise?". 7. Jack (to the policeman)- "Tell me the time, please." 8. Mother (to her child): "Don't speak so loudly." 9. The teacher (to the student): "Clean the blackboard, please." 10. Steven. "Andrew pass me some bread please".

Ex. 6. Use "say" or "tell" in the correct form:

1. He ... he hadn't been invited. 2. He ... to give his name. 3. Mother... Jim to wash up and clean the house when the guests had left. 4. I couldn't understand what she.... 5. In the taxi he ... to her he had quitted his job. 6. She ... she would return soon. 7. We ... that our examination would begin at eight. 8. I wondered who... her such nonsense! 9. She... it to me confidentially but I can't help sharing it with you. 10. They... they had enjoyed the concert. 11. Who... that smoking is harmful? 12. She .. her not to interfere.

Ex. 7. Translate into English.

Он сказал, что: 1. Они изучают испанский. 2. Она прекрасно знает английский. 3. У его брата новая машина. 4. Она красивая девушка. 5. Его родители не понимают его. 6. Они ходят в театр раз в неделю. 7. Том работает сейчас в библиотеке. 8. Мама готовит ужин. 9. Папа читает газету 10. Он потерял ключ.

11. Его сестра научилась водить машину. 12. Родители вернулись из отпуска. 13. Никогда не был в Америке. 14. Он ждет уже час.

Она сказала что: 1. Он может прийти пораньше. 2. Они не могут помочь, ему. 3. Он умеет говорить по-японски. 4. Она должна прийти в пять. 5. Они не смогут перевести этот текст. 6. Ему приходится рано вставать. 7. Мне следует бросить курить. 8. Может пойти дождь. 9. Они могут справиться с работой сами. 10. В дождь нельзя ездить на автомобиле с такой скоростью. 11. Умеет играть в шахматы с детства.

Он сказал, что. 1. Навестит родителей в субботу. 2. Они встретятся на следующей неделе. 3. Его отец будут встречать его на вокзале. 4. Они будут играть в футбол после уроков во дворе. 5. Родители будут смотреть этот фильм вечером. 6. На нем будет коричневый пиджак и серые брюки. 7. Он не закончит работу к этому времени. 8. Он починит мой телевизор к концу недели. 9. Его друг вернет ему деньги к завтрашнему утру.

Он сказал, что: 1. Написал им письмо на прошлой неделе. 2. Они звонили ему в понедельник. 3. Он потратил целый час чтобы добраться до нас. 4. Поезд пришел вовремя. 5. Никто не встретил его на станции. 6. Он старался изо всех сил в прошлом семестре. 7. Они уже были в итальянском ресторане. 8. Они знали друг друга два месяца, когда поженились.

2.4. Модальные глаголы / Modal verbs

MODAL VERBS

Modal verbs (**can, could, must, should, ought to, may, might, will, would, shall**) are modal auxiliary verbs that express ability, necessity, obligation, duty, request, permission, advice, desire, probability, possibility, etc.

Modal verbs express the speaker's attitude to the action indicated by the main verb.

Modal verbs take the **infinitive without** the particle "to". (The modal verb OUGHT TO consists of two parts: "ought" and "to".)



He must go. (must + simple infinitive)

He must be in the other room. (must + simple infinitive)

He must be sleeping. (must + continuous infinitive)

He must have gone home. (must + perfect infinitive)

He must have been sleeping. (must + perfect continuous infinitive)

It must be done quickly. (must + passive infinitive)

It must have been done already. (must + perfect passive infinitive)

Он должен идти. (must + простой инфинитив)

Он, должно быть, в другой комнате. (must + простой инфинитив)

Он, должно быть, спит. (must + продолженный инфинитив)

Он, должно быть, ушел домой. (must + перфектный инфинитив)

Он, должно быть, спал. (must + перфектный продолженный инфинитив)

Это должно быть сделано быстро. (must + пассивный инфинитив)

Это, должно быть, уже сделано. (must + перфектный пассивный инфинитив)

CAN

The modal verb "CAN" has two tense forms: **CAN** – Present, **COULD** – Past.

The construction "To Be Able To Do Smth" is an equivalent and it is used to denote some circumstances. For example:

She is not able to sing today. She has a sore throat

He will be able to get tickets if we ask him.

He was not able to come because he had some troubles

The modal verb "CAN" is used in it's three meanings.

Concrete	Imperative	Suppositional
<ul style="list-style-type: none">Physical or mental ability. <p><i>She can speak English fluently</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Permission <p><i>You can go now</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Strong doubt about the present <p><i>Can you know it?</i> <i>Could you know it?</i></p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none">To express circumstan-	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Request	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Strong doubt about the

<p>tial ability/ the ability is presented by some circumstances. <i>You can get books at any library.</i> <i>You can buy this dress at any shop</i></p>	<p><i>Can I go there?</i> <i>Could I go there?</i></p>	<p>past <i>Could you have done it? I don't believe.</i></p>
	<p>• Prohibition/forbidden by laws or rules/. <i>You can't speak with your mouth full.</i> <i>You can't cross the street here!</i></p>	<p>• Doubt about the present and the past <i>He can't be so silly.</i> <i>She couldn't have done so.</i></p>
<p>BE ABLE TO</p>	<p>Present and Future</p>	<p>Past</p>
<p>1. ability: affirmative and negative statements and questions; substitute for CAN in cases of ability or skill in the future</p>	<p>He is able to do it himself. (Он в состоянии сделать это сам.) Will he be able to walk soon? (Он скоро сможет ходить?) He will be able to do it tomorrow. (Он сможет это сделать завтра.) He won't be able to go with us. (Он не сможет пойти с нами.)</p>	<p>She wasn't able to drive when she was 15. (Она не умела водить, когда ей было 15 лет.) Was she able to drive when she was 18? (Умела она водить, когда ей было 18?)</p>
<p>2. ability in the past, with realized action: substitute for COULD</p>	<p>–</p>	<p>He was able to swim across the river yesterday. (Он смог переплыть реку вчера.) He was able to get out when the fire started. (Он смог выбраться, когда начался пожар.) He wasn't able to solve that problem. (Он не сумел решить ту проблему.)</p>



If there are **two negations** in the sentence we should use "**FAIL**". For example:

Could he have failed to return?

She could not have failed to notice it

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Fill the following spaces, using can for present, could for past and shall/will be able for future.

1 ... you stand on your head? ~ I ... when I was at school but I ... now. (2nd verb negative). 2. When I've passed my driving test I ... hire a car from our local garage. 3. At the end of the month the Post Office will send him an enormous telephone bill which he ... pay. (negative). 4. I ... remember the address, (negative) ~ ... you even remember the street? (negative). 5. When the fog lifts we ... see where we are ... 6. You've put too much in your rucksack; you never ... carry all that. 7. When I was a child I ... understand adults, and now that I am an adult I ... understand children, (negative, negative). 8. When you have taken your degree you ... put letters after your name? 9. Don't try to look at all the pictures in the gallery. Otherwise when you get home you ... remember any of them. (negative). 10. When I first went to Spain I ... read Spanish but I ... speak it. (2nd verb negative). 11. ... you type? ~ Yes, I ... type but I ... do shorthand, (2nd verb negative). 12. I'm locked in. I ... get out! (negative) ~ ... you squeeze between the bars? (negative) ~ No! I ...; I'm too fat. (negative)

could and was able

13. He was very strong; he ... ski all day and dance all night. 14. The car plunged into the river. The driver ... get out but the passengers were drowned. 15. I was a long way from the stage. I ... see all right but I ... hear very well. (2nd verb negative). 16. We ... borrow umbrellas; so we didn't get wet. 17. ... you walk or did they have to carry you? 18. I had no key so I ... lock the door. (negative). 19. I knew the town so I ... advise him where to go. 20. When the garage had repaired our car we ... continue our journey. 21. At five years old

he ... read quite well. 22. When I arrived everyone was asleep. Fortunately I ... wake my sister and she let me in. 23. The swimmer was very tired but he ... reach the shore before he collapsed. 24. The police were suspicious at first but I ... convince them that we were innocent.

polite requests and conditional.

25. ... I speak to Mr Pitt, please?~ I'm afraid he's out at the moment. ... you ring back later? 26. If you stood on my shoulders ... you reach the top of the wall? ~ No, I'm afraid I ... (negative). 27. If I sang ... you accompany me on the piano?~ No, I..., I... play the piano! (negative, negative). 28. If a letter comes for me ... you please forward it to this address? 29. She made the wall very high so that boys ... climb over it. (negative). 30. They took his passport so that he ... leave the country, (negative). 31. ... you tell me the time, please? ~ I'm afraid 1. ... I haven't got a watch. (negative). 32. If you had to, ... you go without food for a week?~ I suppose I ... if I had plenty of water. 33. ... you lend me J5? ~ No, I ... (negative). 34. They used to chain valuable books to library desks so that people ... take them away. (negative). 35. He says that he saw Clementine drowning but ... help her as he ... swim. (negative, negative). 36. If you had had the right tools ... you have repaired the engine?

Ex. 2. Express doubt, surprise or disbelief using the verb "can (could)"* according to the model, give reasons for your disbelief, surprise etc.

Model I: It looks as if she were still sleeping.

Can she be still sleeping?

She can't be still sleeping. It's time she were at work.

1. He seems **to be still writing** his course-paper. 2. They say he is **a fair man**. 3. The film is said **to be very bad**. 4. It seems she **is silent** on the matter for fear of making him angry. 5. He is **said to be good company**. 6. He appears **to be still waiting** for her. 7. They say she **is completely cured**. 8. Leave me alone. **I am tired**. 9. He **is still hesitating** about our offer. 10. They say he **is still a student**. 11. They say he **is very experienced**.

Model II: They say he put his idea into practice.



Can he have put this idea into practice?

*He **can't have put** his idea into practice. It's quite impracticable.*

1. I hear they treated her unkindly. 2. Everybody thinks her remark was intended for you. 3. He is said to have given up music. 4. Believe it or not, she hesitated before accepting his proposal of marriage. 5. I hear people say he has made a good doctor. 6. He was appointed secretary of the committee, they say. 7. He is said to have been promoted again. 8. She seems to have missed the joke. 9. I hear he sharply criticized your suggestion. 10. They put him off with some excuse and they gave the job to a different man. 11. He has guessed about our intentions, I think.

Ex. 3. Translate the following sentences according to the model.

*М о д е I: **He может быть**, чтобы он **не** пришел в условленное время.*

*He **can't have failed** to come **at** the appointed time.*

1. Не может быть, чтобы она не заметила, что он был расстроен. 2. Не может быть, чтобы он не проверил аппарат перед включением. 3. Не может быть, чтобы она не поняла, какую цель мы преследовали. 4. Не может быть, чтобы он не предусмотрел эту трудность. 5. Не может быть, чтобы они не убедили его. 6. Не может быть, чтобы она не изменила своего мнения после нашего разговора.

М о д е II: Неужели телеграмма не дошла до них?

Can the telegram have failed to reach them?

1. Неужели он не смог доказать свою точку зрения? 2. Неужели она не поняла его шутку? 3. Неужели он не проверил багаж прежде чем отправить его на станцию? 4. Неужели она так и не увидела разницы между оригиналом и копией?



Ex. 4. Express strong doubt about these negative statements.

Model: He didn't notice you.

Can he have failed to notice you? - Неужели он не заметил? He can't have failed to notice you. - Он не мог не заметить... He doesn't like it here. Can he dislike it here? He can't dislike it here.

1. You didn't understand me. 2. She didn't like the play. 3. They don't trust him. 4. They didn't notice the mistake. 5. They didn't receive the telegram in time. 6. They didn't realize the importance of the event. 7. She didn't see you. 8. He doesn't see in the distance.

Ex. 5. Express your doubt or disbelief. Use the sentences as a dialogue.

Model: - He phoned me yesterday.

a) - Can he have phoned you yesterday? b) - He can't have phoned you yesterday.

1. He brought me his essay that afternoon. 2. I have already heard this story repeated twice. 3. He is studying in the library now. 4. She will have translated this article by tomorrow. 5. It is still raining. 6. It has been raining since morning. 7. He injured his knee badly during the match. 8. He knows about it only too well. 9. She has broken her promise. 10. We were kept waiting at the door.

MAY

The modal verb "MAY" has two tense forms

MAY - present

MIGHT - past

and is used in it's three meanings:

Concrete	Imperative	Suppositional
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Possibility of the fact/only in the affirmative sentences/ <i>One may often see such faces in the north of Russia.</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Permission/mostly in the interrogative and the affirmative sentences/ <i>May I come in?</i> <i>May I go now?</i> <i>You may go.</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Supposition or uncertainty used only in the affirmative and negative sentences <i>He may come or he may not.</i> <i>They may be arriving!</i> <i>Why hasn't she come?</i> <i>He may have been hurt</i>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "Might" is used in the polite requests for permission. <i>Might I use your dictionary?</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "May" and "Might" are not used in questions. <i>We should use the constructions:</i> <i>Is it Likely....?</i> <i>Do you think....?</i>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prohibition <i>You may not leave the house.</i> 	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "Might" is used to express reproach/about the past and present/. <i>You might leave the child alone.</i> <i>You might have bought her flowers</i> 	
BE LIKELY TO	Present and Future	Past
possibility, probability: substitute for MAY, MIGHT, MUST in questions	Is he likely to be at the library now? (Вероятно ли, что он сейчас в библиотеке?) Is he likely to come back soon? (Похоже ли, что он скоро вернется?)	Was he likely to be at the library at four o'clock yesterday? (Вероятно ли, что он был в библиотеке вчера в четыре часа?)

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Insert the correct form of may/might except in 10 and 36, where a be allowed form is necessary.

1. It - ... rain, you'd better take a coat. 2. He said that it ... rain. 3. We ... as well stay here till the weather improves. 4. ... I borrow your umbrella? 5. You ... tell me! (I think I have a right to know). 6. Candidates ... not bring textbooks into the examination room. 7. People convicted of an offence ... (have a right to) appeal. 8. If he knew our address he ... come and see us. 9 ... I come in? ~ Please do. 10. When he was a child he ... (they let him) do exactly as he liked. 11. I think I left my glasses in your office. You ... ask your secretary to look for them for me. (request). 12. He ... be my brother (I admit that he is) but I don't trust him. 13. I ... never see you again. 14. He ... be on the next train. We ... as well wait. 15. If we got there early we ... get a good seat. 16. The police ... (have a right to) ask a driver to take a breath test. 17. You ought to buy now; prices ... go up. 18. I'll wait a week so that he ... have time to think it over. 19. He isn't going to eat it; 1 ... as well give it to the dog. 20. You ... at least read the letter. (/ think you should). 21. You ... have written, (I am annoyed/disappointed that you didn't). 22. We'd better be early; there ... be a crowd. 23. Nobody knows how people first came to these islands. They ... have sailed from South America on rafts. 24. You ... (have permission to) use my office. 25. He said that we ... use his office whenever we liked. 26. I don't think I'll succeed but I ... as well try. 27. You ought to go to his lectures, you ... learn something. 28. If we can give him a blood transfusion we ... be able to save his life. 29. Two parallel white lines in the middle of the road mean that you ... not overtake. 30. If I bought a lottery ticket I ... win J1,000. 31. If you said that, he ... be very offended. 32. I wonder why they didn't go. ~ The weather ... have been too bad. 33. Warning: No part of this book ... be reproduced without the publisher's permission. 34. He has refused, but he ... change his mind if you asked him again. 35. ... I see your passport, please? 36. He ... (negative) drive since his accident. (They haven't let him drive).

Ex. 2. Translate from Russian into English.



1. Может быть, он говорит правду. 2. Возможно, он сказал тебе правду. 3. Возможно, он тебе не солгал. 4. Может быть, она именно сейчас печатает это письмо. 5. Возможно, она уже напечатала письмо. 6. Может быть, она напечатает письма завтра. 7. Может быть, он послал ей телеграмму. 8. Может быть, он не послал ей телеграмму. 9. Возможно, он понимает по-норвежски. 10. Может быть, его напугали. 11. Может быть, он сейчас занят. 12. Возможно, их вчера не было в городе. 13. Может быть, он сейчас завтракает. 14. Может быть, она вас неправильно поняла. 15. Может быть, он неправильно написал имя. 16. Может быть, она потеряла мой адрес.

Ex. 3. Translate into Russian.

1. I may tell him about it later. I haven't decided it yet. 2. You may have made a mistake. 3. My mother might have given me the money! I needed it badly at that time. 4. He may have asked you about it. Maybe he will, who knows. 5. Sir! May I go home a bit earlier? My parents may be waiting for me. 6. We asked the teacher if we might use dictionaries. 7. Our teacher may come any moment. Let's stop smoking.

Ex. 4. Make the necessary changes according to the model.

Model. Possibly you left your book behind. You may have left your book behind.

1. Perhaps you left your umbrella in the bus. 2. Perhaps he went to the cafe to wait for us. 3. Perhaps it was Helen who rang you up. 4. Perhaps they came by plane. 5. Perhaps she had a very good English teacher. 6. Perhaps it was too cold for the children to go out. 7. It is possible that he took his children to the zoo. 8. Possibly they did not see us in the crowd. 9. Perhaps Robert used a dictionary. 10. Possibly Mary misunderstood you. 11. Perhaps Henry waited for us there. 12. Possibly Ann returned very late last night. 13. Possibly they have seen the new play. 14. Perhaps Nick has left his exercise book at home.

Ex. 5. Express ironical requests based on the following sentences. Use the Perfect Infinitive to refer the situation to the past and in this way express reproach.

Model: You do not remember your child's birthday. You might remember your child's birthday.

You did not switch off the lights before leaving. You might have switched off the lights before leaving.

1. You do not wear your new suit to the office. 2. You did not sew the buttons on, Alice. 3. You did not even notice how well she played. You do not pay enough attention to your child. 4. Do come and help me choose it. 5. You did not try hard enough. 6. You did not get up a little earlier and help me to clean up after the party. 7. You never let me know when something like this happens. 8. You didn't give a detailed account. 9. You did not meet her at the station.

Ex. 6. Use may or might perfect infinitive to express possibility, uncertainty in the past.

1. Может, Мери, уже приехала. Я позвоню. 2. Может, мама уже пришла, а ты все гуляешь. 3. Где же мой зонт? – Ты, наверное, оставила его в автобусе. 4. Где же Коля? – Он, наверное, остался ждать нас на остановке. 5. Кто звонил? – Не знаю. Возможно, это была Наташа. 6. Он, наверное, оставил книгу в школе и зря ищешь. 7. Ты не застал Нину дома? – Она, наверное, уже уехала. 8. Пойдем в кино? – Может быть, мы смотрели уже этот фильм. Однако, неважно, посмотрим еще раз. 9. Что же девочки не приходят на собрание? – Возможно, они приходили вчера. Они могли спутать дату. 10. Как удалось Кириллу сделать такой хороший перевод, хотела бы я знать? – Вероятнее всего, он все же принес словарь.

Ex. 7. Use the verb may to express uncertainty, supposition.

1. Возможно, я ошибаюсь, но мне кажется, что я вчера видел Марину. 2. Борис ушел, но возможно, что он еще вернется. 3. Ты знаешь, а "Спартак" может выиграть! 4. Скорее одевайся: брат может войти в любую минуту. 5. Возможно, тебе фильм по-

нравится. 6. Вероятно, мы поедем на каникулы в деревню. 7. Возможно, этот лодырь все же выдержит экзамен. 8. Ты знаешь, а наша команда может проиграть. 9. Может пойти дождь. Возьми зонтик. 10. Пошли в кино? – Пошли. Давай позвоним Наташе. Она, может быть, тоже пойдет.

MUST

The modal verb "Must" is used in it's three important meanings

Concrete	Imperative	Suppositional
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Immediate obligation or necessity, or an obligation referring to the future/in the affirmative sentences/. <i>We must begin before 5p.m.</i> <i>He must move the furniture himself.</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Prohibition, negative commands/only in the negative sentences/. <i>The little girl must nit go home alone.</i> <i>You must not do it!</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Probability, near certainty about the present and the past/only in statements <i>He must be crazy.</i> <i>She must be so lonely!</i> <i>Did you always live with Bob? You must have led a quiet life!</i> <i>In these sentences "Must" has the same meaning as: Probably, Evidently.</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Obligation referring to the present or future in the reported speech <i>He said we must invite her to dinner.</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Invitation. <i>You must come and see me somehow!</i> <i>You must come and have dinner with us!</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If we use the perfect Progressive infinitive, it indicates the process in the past <i>It must have been raining when you left.</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • With the 2D person "You" "Must" expresses an obligation which has an effect as a command 		



<p><i>You must do as you are told!</i></p> <p><i>You must leave now. I want to sleep.</i></p>		
---	--	--

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Answer the following questions, using "must", mind the tense form of the infinitive.

Model: Why didn't he come? (to be ill)

*He **must have been ill**.*

1. Why isn't he here? (to delay). 2. What would you say he is, judging by his appearance? (to be a painter). 3. How old was he when he set out on his first expedition to the North? (thirty). 4. Why are they never seen together now? (to quarrel). 5. What's all that knocking in the next room? (to fix a shelf to the wall). 6. Where is she? (to wait for us at the entrance to the Museum). 7. How did he manage to arrive so soon? (to come by plane). 8. What accounts for their delay? (the fog). 9. Why didn't he join in the discussion of the problem? (to have no interest in the subject). 10. Why is the photograph so pale? (the film; to expose to light). 11. Why was he so impolite? (to be annoyed with smb for disturbing him).

Ex. 2. Paraphrase the following sentences using "must".

1. It looks as if he were out of practice, that's why he lost the game. 2. I see a crowd of people before the door. No doubt something has happened. 3. He has obviously been working at this Research Institute for a long time. Everybody seems to know him. 4. Evidently* they were getting ready for another experiment. They wanted no strangers at the laboratory. 5. Obviously he was speaking from his own experience. He sounded very convincing. 6. Judging by the frosted windows the weather to-day is surely far from warm. 7. Evidently she was ashamed of her behaviour.

Ex. 3. Translate the following sentences using "must".

1. Вы, должно быть, только что вернулись из деревни. Вы прекрасно выглядите. 2. По всей вероятности он забыл, что раньше он придерживался другого мнения. 3. Я не думаю, чтобы он сердился на вас. Он, должно быть, был в плохом настроении. 4. Сейчас еще рано звонить ему. Вероятно он еще спит. 5. Какой прекрасный телевизор. Должно быть вы за него много заплатили. 6. Ты, должно быть, очень голоден. Ведь ты не ел с утра. 7. Я плохо себя чувствую. У меня, должно быть, температура. 8. Не случайно вас остановил милиционер. Вы, должно быть, превысили дозволённую скорость (лимит скорости). 9. Он, должно быть, давно болен. Он все время жаловался на плохое самочувствие. 10. Она, должно быть, задумалась и не заметила, как проехала свою остановку.

Ex. 4. Translate into English.

1. Должно быть, он не смог прийти в условленное время. 2. Должно быть, вы были несправедливы к нему. 3. Вероятно, ему не сообщили, что собрание перенесено. 4. Должно быть, вы не наблюдательны, если вы не заметили у нас никаких перемен. 5. Вероятно, он еще ничего не знает о своем новом назначении. 6. Должно быть, не удалось установить фактов и обсуждение вопроса было отложено. 7. Вероятно, на этот раз ему это не сошло с рук. 8. Цифры, должно быть, не были проверены. Они вызвали большое сомнение. 9. Вероятно, он еще неопытен в решении таких вопросов. 10. Должно быть, не было смысла дожидаться его приезда. 11. Мои слова, должно быть, не убедили его. Он продолжал спорить. 12. Должно быть, ему не удалось доказать свою точку зрения. У него расстроенный вид.

TO BE TO

To Be To as a modal verb is used in two tense forms - Present and Past Simple.

Concrete	Imperative	Suppositional
• Obligation arising	• A strict order or in-	• Possibility.

<p>out of an arrangement or plan/in statements and questions/.</p> <p><i>We are to complete this work by tomorrow.</i></p> <p><i>When is the wedding to be?</i></p>	<p>struction, given by the speaker or any other authority.</p> <p><i>You are to do it exactly you were told.</i></p> <p><i>you are to stay here until I return!</i></p>	<p><i>They are not to be trusted!</i></p> <p><i>Nothing was to be done under the circumstances.</i></p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Perfect Infinitive is used to emphasize that the action did not take place. <p><i>I was to have come.</i></p> <p><i>I was to have graduated in June but failed.</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Strict prohibition. <p><i>You are not to do that!</i></p> <p><i>You are not to tell anything about it!</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In the expressions: <p><i>What am I to do?</i></p> <p><i>What is to become of me?</i></p> <p><i>Where am I to go?</i></p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A purpose or a plan. <p><i>A knife is to cut with.</i></p> <p><i>This prize was to honor him for his success.</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Something that is destined to happen. <p><i>She was to become his wife.</i></p> <p><i>It was not to be.</i></p>	
<p>BE SUPPOSED TO</p>	<p>Present and Future</p>	<p>Past</p>
<p>expectation: affirmative and negative statements and questions</p>	<p>They are supposed to arrive at six. (Предполагается, что они приедут в шесть.)</p> <p>He is not supposed to work today. (Предполагается, что он сегодня не будет работать.)</p>	<p>He was not supposed to hear it. (Не предполагалось, что он услышит это.)</p> <p>The conference was supposed to begin at ten. (Предполагалось, что конференция начнется в десять.)</p>

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. paraphrase the following sentences using the modal verb to be to.



1. What am I supposed to do if they come too early? 2. It was arranged that the youngest children would play on the beach. 3. We expect you to show her the place. 4. I am expected to leave tomorrow at the latest. 5. Where am I supposed to be taken? 6. This is Angela. It is arranged that she will share the room with you. 7. And who will do the cooking? 8. It is expected that two more apartment houses will be built here. 9. It was arranged that the cup final would be played that afternoon. 10. Who will meet you at the station?

Ex. 2. translate the sentences paying attention to the modal verb to be to.

1. I was to wait for her at the railway station. 2. We were to go to the cinema that afternoon. 3. They were to start on Monday. 4. He was to telephone the moment she was out of danger. 5. Roses were to be planted round the pond. 6. There was to be a discussion later on. 7. We were to get there before the others. 8. He was to tell her where to find us. 9. She was to graduate that year. 10. She was to wear that dress at the graduation party. 11. He is to come here at five o'clock. 12. The train was to leave at five-fifteen.

Ex. 3. Rewrite the given sentences using to be.

1. We agreed that the one who came first reserved seats for the rest of us. 2. We decided to go picnicking on Sunday but we couldn't because of the rainy weather. 3. We were told to finish our work in a week but we could not do it. 4. He planned to get in touch with me but he failed as his telephone was out of order. 5. Nobody met me at the station. I promised to arrive a day later but could not warn any of my friends. 6. She said that she would make the dress next day. 7. They asked us to leave on Monday but we had to book tickets for Wednesday. 8. The principal said it was my duty to arrange the meeting.

Ex. 4. Translate using to be.

1. Маргарет должна приехать завтра. Она сообщила об этом по телефону. 2. Нам было суждено встретиться ещё один раз в жизни. Это случилось через пять лет. 3. Вам надо принимать



лекарство по одной чайной ложке три раза в день. 4. Вам категорически нельзя разговаривать. У Вас была операция на голосовых связках. 5. Я вглядывался в лица людей в толпе. Энтони нигде не было видно. 6. Никто не знает, чему суждено произойти в нашей жизни. 7. Вы никоим образом не должны действовать самостоятельно. Ждите инструкций. 8. Случилось то, что должно было случиться. Талант молодой певицы был замечен публикой. 9. Вы ни в коем случае не должны сообщать партнёрам о том, что мы крайне заинтересованы в этой сделке. 10. Вы непременно должны постараться наладить сотрудничество. Это задача первостепенной важности. 11. Нам предстоял нелёгкий перелёт через океан. Мы были готовы к долгому путешествию.

HAVE TO

The modal verb "Have To" differs from the others in that it can have the category of person and number and all tense-aspect forms. It is followed by "to-Infinitive".

We had to look all over the town before we found what we wanted.

She will not have to wait for you.

Have To builds up its **interrogative** and **negative** forms with the help of the auxiliary verb **to Do**.

Do you have to work hard?

He doesn't have to do what she tells him.

It is used to express:

• **Obligation or necessity** arising out of some **circumstances**. It is similar to its meaning with **Must**

She is usually short of time so she has to go by air.

*In the past tense **Have to** indicates a fulfilled obligation*

We had to do a lot of things so we stayed in the country/we obliged and did it/.

Have to replaces Must when Must cannot be used:

• To express **past necessity or obligation**

We had to do it again.



• To express **absence of necessity** since MUST + not means prohibition

Compare:

You must not do it/Prohibition/

You don't have to make another copy of the document. This one will be enough/in the sense of Needn't/.

• To express **future obligation** .The future of Have To makes the obligation more precise.

You'll have to take a taxi if you want to catch a train.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Complete the sentences. use have to, has to, or had to in each.

1. I went downtown yesterday because I ... 2. I can't go to the movie tonight because 3. I couldn't go to Pete's party last Saturday because... . 4. Josh can't go downtown with us this afternoon because... . 5. When I was in high school, ... 6. If you want to travel abroad, ... 7. I'm sorry I was absent from the class yesterday, but ... 8. Erica can't come to class tomorrow because... . 9. I need a car because... . 10. When I worked in my uncle's restaurant... . 11. If you want to enter the university... . 12. We wanted to go on a picnic yesterday, but we couldn't because... . 13. I wanted to go to the disco yesterday, but instead... .

Ex. 2. Choose the correct verbs have, has, had or must to complete the sentences.

1. I ... to wash the dishes after dinner last night. It was my turn. 2. Bye! I'm leaving now. I ... got to take this package to the post office. 3. I know you didn't mean what you said. You ... think before you speak. 4. Yesterday everyone in the office ... to leave the building for a fire drill. I'm glad it wasn't a real fire. 5. Julia ... to take an educational psychology course next semester. It's a required course.



6. Bill, Janet, and Andrew ... to stay after class this afternoon. Professor Jacobson wants them to help him with grade papers. 7. Mr. Rogers, you ... not be late today. The vice-president is coming in, and you are the only one who can answer his questions about the new project. 8. Last year our town didn't have many tourists because of the oil spill. Business was bad. My wife and I own a small souvenir shop near the ocean. We ... to borrow money from the bank last month to save our business.

Ex. 3. Translate into English using to have.

1. Вход в музей бесплатный. Тебе не придется ничего платить. 2. Мне пришлось напомнить ему несколько раз, чтобы он вернул мне книгу. 3. Ему не нужно готовить, он ест в кафе. 4. Мне приходится ходить в очках, так как у меня плохое зрение. 5. Возможно, тебе придется лечь в больницу. 6. Лифт в здании не работал, и нам пришлось подниматься пешком. 7. На вокзале не было носильщиков, и мне пришлось нести багаж самому. 8. Оказалось, что я сел не на тот автобус, и мне пришлось делать пересадку. 9. Тебе приходилось работать по ночам, не так ли? 10. Мы были вынуждены рассказать родителям о наших приключениях. 11. Я хорошо тебя слышу. Не надо кричать. 12. Если ты хочешь жить полноценной жизнью, тебе придется жениться. 13. Нас не нужно представлять друг другу, мы уже знакомы.

NEED

This modal verb may be either a *defective* (can't have tense and other grammatical forms) or a *regular* verb. As a defective verb "Need" has only one form and combines with a **bare infinitive**. For example:

Need I do it? You needn't do it just now.

In the reported speech it remains unchanged.

As a regular verb it has the Past Simple form **"Needed"** and regular negative and interrogative forms.



The regular form is used mainly when the following infinitive denotes habitual action. For example:

You don't need to say it every time you see him.

It is used to express:

• **Necessity**/mainly used in questions and negative sentences/

Do you need to work hard?

Need she come tomorrow?

• **Absence of necessity**

She needn't go there today He is ill.

• When followed by a **perfect infinitive** "need" indicates that the **action** expressed by the infinitive **was performed but was not necessary**.

You needn't have spent all the money.

She needn't have left her child alone.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Paraphrase the following using the modal verb need.

1. I see no reason to give him so much money. 2. It wasn't not necessary for us to book tickets well in advance. 3. Is it so very necessary that you should get there so early? 4. There is no use worrying about her; she is quite able to take care of herself. 5. What's the use of finding faults with the child? He is only five. 6. There was no need for you to call her. 7. It was quite unnecessary for you to do the work instead of him. 8. It wasn't necessary for Peter to take so much money. 9. It wasn't necessary for Mr. Brown to collect the laundry because his wife said she would do it. 10. It wasn't necessary to give her flowers as well. The chocolates would have been enough. 11. Our neighbour promised to look after our garden so it wasn't necessary to hire a gardener.

Ex. 2. Fill the gaps with needn't have or didn't need to and the correct form of the verb in brackets.



1. I ran all the way to work, but I ... (hurry) because I was the first person to arrive. 2. We ... (hurry), so we stopped to have lunch on the way. 3. I went to college today, but I ... (go) as all the lectures were cancelled. 4. I ... (ask) the way to Lewes, since I'd been there before. 5. I ... (buy) any food, so I didn't go to the supermarket. 6. I ... (buy) any food after all, because we had plenty at home. 7. I ... (pack) my shorts, as it rained all week. 8. We ... (pack) many things, as we would only be away for one night.

Ex. 3. Translate into English using the modal verb need.

1. Три женщины ни от кого не зависели бы, если бы им не нужен был четвертый человек для игры в бридж. 2. Тебе не нужно читать все эти книги. 3. Не нужно меня бояться. 4. Мне нужно сообщить заранее о моем приезде? 5. Не стоило так беспокоиться. 6. Им обязательно переодеваться? 7. Солнце уже садилось, и ей не нужна была шляпа. 8. Она напрасно так уговаривала его. Все знают его упрямство. 9. Не нужно принимать витамины, если ты ешь достаточно овощей и фруктов. 10. Мне нужны были новые очки. 11. Напрасно мы заказали билеты заранее. 12. Нам нужно еще скопить денег, чтобы отправиться в путешествие. 13. Не нужно обманывать себя. 14. Тебе необязательно звонить родителям каждый день. 15. Тебе не нужно было заказывать номер в гостинице. У нас есть свободная спальня.

OUGHT TO

The modal verb "Ought To" has only one tense form and it's not changed in the reported speech.

It combines with the "to-Infinitive". When followed by the non perfect or continuous infinitive it indicates reference to the present or future. In indirect speech it may also refer the action to the past. For example:

I told him that he ought to do it and he did it.

This modal verb is used only in two meanings.

Imperative	Suppositional
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Moral duty and moral obligation, which is not always fulfilled. <i>You ought to look after your children better.</i> <i>He ought to be punished</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Probability, something that can be naturally expected. <i>Apples ought to grow here</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> In combination with the perfect infinitive it means that something right has not been done. In this case it implies reproach. <i>You ought to have helped him/But you didn't/</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "Ought to" does not refer to the past!
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "Ought not" + perfect infinitive means that something wrong has been done and it is not too late to change it. <i>You ought not to have laughed at him!</i> 	

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Comment on the meaning of the verb *ought to* and translate the sentences into Russian.

1. The young ought to respect old age. 2. You ought not to show to him that you notice his stammer, he feels it very keenly. 3. "Where is Tom?" — "He ought to be in his study". 4. Which end do you think I ought to open the bar of chocolate first? 5. She knew that she ought to be paying some attention to the rest of the class but she was altogether too excited to let the matter rest. 6. If you think some rotten TV programme is more important than your daughter's future, then you ought not to be a parent! 7. When he saw Ann playing tennis, he came up and said, "Are you sure you ought to be doing that?" 8. You ought not to have touched those instruments. 9. You ought to be more careful in the future. 10. You ought to have reserved tickets in advance. 11. I feel I ought to help her. 12. Of course they didn't

want to get rid of her, but a girl ought to marry, and somehow all the men they knew at home were married already. 13. I ought to have turned up on time. 14. 'I ought never to have been told,' he said. 'I think it was most selfish of you.' 15. She ought to be in France. She set off hours ago.

SHOULD

Historically it was the past form of the verb "Shall" and both of the forms expressed obligation. But in present day English they have developed different meanings and are treated as 2 different verbs.

"**Should**" followed by the non perfect infinitive may be used with the reference to the present and future and is not changed in the reported speech. For example:

You should be more careful.

I told him that he should be more careful.

This modal verb is used only in two meanings.

Imperative	Suppositional
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Moral obligation or duty in all kinds of sentences/about the present/. <i>All the students should hand ly in the papers today</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Probability only with the reference to the present of future <i>The guests should not come ear-</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> In the negative sentences "Should" denotes negative advice. <i>He should not be so impa-tient!</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> In the set expression "Why should..?" <i>Why should I go there?</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "Should" + Perfect Infinitive indicates that something desirable has not been done. It denotes criticism only in the affirmative sentences. <i>You should have put more</i> 	

<p><i>sugar in my coffee. It's not sweet</i></p>	
<p>HAD BETTER</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • advice with a warning of bad result: affirmative and negative statements Your cough is terrible. You'd better see a doctor, or you'll get very sick. (Ваш кашель ужасен. Вам следует пойти к врачу, иначе вы совсем заболете.) I'd better go now, or I'll be late. (Мне лучше уйти сейчас, а то я опоздаю) 	

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Give advice using the modal verb should with the appropriate form of the Infinitive should do, should have done and the words in brackets.

1. The boy is a little pale (to play outdoors). 2. I took the child to the cinema (the film finished late). 3. I am afraid you will miss that train (to take a taxi). 4. We forgot to leave a message for her (she, to worry). 5. There is no one in (to try the room next door). 6. We didn't wait for them because it was starting to rain (to take umbrellas with you). 7. I have a slight irritation in my throat (to smoke less). 8. I didn't put down her address and now I don't know how to find her. 9. This child doesn't want to eat soup (not to give her sweets before dinner). 10. I didn't explain to her how to get here. 11. She makes a lot of spelling mistakes (to copy passages out of a book). 12. I bought a pair of red shoes to go with my new dress. 13. The dog is afraid of him (not to shout at the dog). 14. So I told her frankly what we all thought about her idea. 15. The students are unable to



follow what I am saying (not to speak so fast). 16. I have not seen the film, and now it is too late because it is no longer on. 17. My pen was leaking, so I wrote with a pencil. 18. I am afraid I ate too much cake with my tea.

Ex. 2. Criticize the actions mentioned in the following sentences.

MODEL I told him a week later. — You should have told him at once. 1. I asked him a week later. 2. I paid the bill a week later. 3. I thanked him a week later. 4. I looked for it a week later. 5. I invited him a week later. 6. I apologized a week later. 7. I sent it back a week later. 8. I returned a week later. 9. I booked the tickets a week later. 10. I answered his letter a week later. 11. I cooked it a week later. 12. I wrote to him a week later. 13. I rang him a week later. 14. I started a week later. 15. I began a week later. 16. I ate it a week later.

Ex. 3. Give advice using the verb should (have).

1. I'm always pressed for time. 2. I'm so lonely. 3. My son is so lazy. 4. My daughter is going to get married, but she is only 18. 5. What a boring serial! 6. I think I am underpaid. 7. I am losing everything. 8. Summers are getting colder and colder. 9. Nick twisted his ankle. 10. Ann is afraid of travelling by plane. 11. I'm getting so nervous. 12. The child has a nasty rash on his body. 13. She has gained 5 kilos lately. 14. Ann often has rows with her husband. 15. He wants to go abroad. 16. He has a job interview. 16. I have forgotten my jacket on the plane.

SHALL

“Shall” as a modal verb is not translated in Russian. It's meaning is rendered by the emphatic intonation.

Concrete	Imperative
-----------------	-------------------



<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Promise or strong intention/in this meaning "shall" is used with the 2d and 3d person singular with a weak stress/. <i>He shall get his money.</i> <i>In the 1st person it acquires a strong stress.</i> <i>I want this prize and I shall get it!</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Suggestion/in questions, offers, in the 1st person singular and plural/. <i>Shall I read?</i> <i>Shall we begin?</i> <i>Shall I get you a chair?</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Threat. In this meaning "Shall" is used with the 2d and 3d person singular. <i>You shall be sorry!</i>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Warning in the affirmative and negative sentences. <i>Put on your coat, you shall be sick.</i>	

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Translate the following sentences into English using shall.

1. Мне заплатить за вас? 2. Скажи им, что они узнают результаты завтра. 3. Перевести весь текст? — Нет, не нужно, переведите только подчеркнутые предложения. 4. Это можно сделать и это будет сделано, если ты только поможешь мне. 5. «Тебе поиграть?» — спросила она. — «Да, пожалуйста». 6. У тебя не будет причины жаловаться на меня. 7. Вы получите книгу в понедельник. 8. Когда ему прийти? 9. Закрыть дверь? 10. Оборудование для нашей экспедиции должно быть отгружено в мае. 11. Если вы будете сидеть на сквозняке, вы простудитесь. 12. Что нужно сделать с этими письмами? 13. Она позвонит вам? 14. Вам следует сделать это немедленно. 15. Пригласить их на обед? — Нет, не нужно, я сделаю это сама. 16. Я ни за что не вернусь.

Ex. 2. Comment on the use of the verb shall in the following proverbs and sayings Give their Russian equivalents. Use them in situations of your own.



1. As you sow, so shall you reap. 2. They that live by the sword shall perish/die by the sword. 3. He who does not work neither shall he eat. 4. If the blind lead the blind, both shall fall into the ditch. 5. Blessed is he who expects nothing, for he shall never be disappointed. 6. Man shall not live by bread alone. 7. At the game's end we shall see who gains. 8. As a man lives, so shall he die. 9. As you have brewed, so shall you drink.

WILL

"Will" has two forms: **will** and **would**. Thus "Will" and "Would" are looked upon as a forms of the same verb although in a few cases their meanings differ.

It is used to express:

• **Willingness, intension, determination.**

I'll write as soon as I can

I will be there to help.

This meaning is often found in the conditional sentences

If you will help me, we can finish by 6

• In the **negative** sentences "Will" expresses a **refusal** to do smth.

They will not go with us

• A **polite request** or offer/only **in questions/**.

Will you pass the salt please?

Will you have some tea?

• A **command**

You will do exactly as I say.

• An **impatient command** can begin with "Will You.."

Will you be quiet?

• **Insistence, resistance**/with reference to inanimate objects it shows that the thing fails to perform its function.

The door will not open

• **Inevitability.**

What will be-will be



Accidents will happen

Boys will be boys

Truth will out

• **Characteristic or behavior of quality**

This car will hold 6 people.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Comment on the meaning of the verb will/would and translate the sentences into Russian. 1. It will never happen again. Never. 2. "Now listen, lady ..." Peremptorily she cut him off. "I will not listen. Instead, you will listen to me." 3. When he returned I repeated my offer of food, but he would take nothing. 4. Many times a day, he would see other children taking bars of creamy chocolate out of their pockets and munching them greedily, and that, of course, was pure torture. 5. Leave the kid alone, will you! 6. He had a wound that wouldn't heal. 7. When the game was over, while they smoked their pipes and drank whisky, they would begin telling stories. 8. Will you please hang your coats and hats on those pegs over there, and then follow me. 9. I wish you wouldn't interrupt! 10. 'Thank you,' Charlie said, and off he went, running through the snow as fast as his legs would go. 11. If you and all your people will come back to my country and live in my factory, you can have all the cacao beans you want! 12. Would you mind closing the door? 13. Faster and faster, chop-chop-chop, the noise went on, it wouldn't stop. 14. He will leave the lights on when he leaves the office. 15. We sent the invitations by second-class post. They won't have received them yet.



WOULD

	Present and Future	Past
1. Future in the past: affirmative and negative statements	–	He said that he would be home after seven. (Он сказал, что будет дома после семи.) They said that they wouldn't see him tomorrow. (Они сказали, что не увидят его завтра.)
2. Polite request: affirmative questions	Would you please pass the pepper? (Не передадите ли перец?) Would you mind opening the window? (Не могли бы вы открыть окно?) Would you mind if I opened the window? (Вы не возражали бы, если я открою / открыл бы окно?)	–
3. Preference and desire: affirmative and negative statements	I'd like a cup of coffee, please. (Я хотел бы чашку кофе, пожалуйста.) I would like to visit Spain. (Я хотел бы посетить Испанию.) I'd rather not talk about it. (Я предпочел бы не говорить об этом.)	I would have liked to visit Spain last year, but I didn't have enough money. (Я хотел бы посетить Испанию в прошлом году, но у меня не было достаточно денег.) I would rather have stayed at home. There was a good movie on TV. (Я предпочел бы остаться дома. По телевидению был хороший фильм.)
4. Polite	Would you like some more	–



Практическая грамматика первого иностранного языка

offer: affirmative questions	cake? (Вы не хотели бы еще торта?) Would you like to go to a concert? (Вы не хотели бы пойти на концерт?)	
5. Supposition: affirmative and negative statements and questions	I would say that your conclusion is not quite right. (Я бы сказал, что ваш вывод не совсем правильный.) I would do it differently. (Я бы сделал это по-другому.) He would help you if you asked him. (Он помог бы вам, если бы вы его попросили.)	I would have done it differently. (Я бы сделал это по-другому.) He would have helped you yesterday if you had asked him. (Он помог бы вам вчера, если бы вы его попросили.)
6. Repeated action in the past: affirmative statements	—	When I was a child, my Granny and I would go to the park every day. (Когда я был ребенком, моя бабушка и я обычно каждый день ходили в парк.) She would tell me a new fairy tale every evening. (Она обычно каждый вечер рассказывала мне новую сказку.)
USED TO		
1. Repeated action in the past: usually affirmative statements	—	When I was a child, my Granny and I used to go to the park every day. (Когда я был ребенком, моя бабушка и я обычно каждый день ходили в парк.) She used to tell me a new fairy tale every evening. (Она обычно каждый вечер рассказывала мне новую сказку.)



<p>2. Habitual past action or situation that doesn't exist now: usually affirmative statements</p>	<p>—</p>	<p>I used to play the piano when I was young (but I don't play the piano now). (Я играл на пианино, когда был молодым (но теперь не играю). He used to live on Sixth Street. (Он раньше жил на Шестой улице.) There used to be a park near the lake ten years ago. (Возле озера был парк десять лет назад.)</p>
--	----------	---



EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Replace the words in italics by will or would.

1. My children love watching television. They sit for hours without saying a word. 2. He's very absent-minded. He often buys things and then leaves the shop without paying. 3. My wife persistently leaves things where other people can fall over them! 4. When we lived in the north, the water pipes used to freeze every winter, and we had to call in a plumber. 5. The chairman's main fault was that he persistently interrupted the speakers before they had finished. 6. I tried to refuse his invitation, but he repeatedly insisted on my coming. 7. Why do you persist in being so difficult? 8. My headmaster had great authority. Whenever he spoke, everyone used to listen attentively. 9. No wonder the house is cold! You always go out and leave the doors open! 10. In the nineteenth century, people used to go to church on Sunday as a matter of course.

Ex. 2. Fill in the blanks with will or would.

1. Though the work is difficult, I ... do it, and it ... be done well. 2. ... you kindly pass me the salt? 3. I asked her but she ... not tell me her address. 4. I ... do it whether you like it or not! 5. ... you be so kind as to shut the window? 6. We waited till afternoon but the rain ... not stop. 7. I asked him not to switch on the radio early in the morning but he ... do it. 8. She pushed the door, but it ... not open. 9. Every lesson was the same: he ... not greet us or show any interest in us. 10. I think he ... have finished his call. 11. Our delegates ... rather not stay at the conference centre. 12. When he returned I repeated my offer of food, but he ... take nothing. 13. ... you really do it for me? 14. Shut the door, ... you? 15. He ... read a book before going to bed. 16. ... come round tomorrow?

Ex. 3. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Я просила, я умоляла, но Джейн так и не простила меня. 2. Не понимаю, почему окно не открывается. 3. Она часто слышала, как он что-то напевал себе. 4. Когда я был ребенком, я часто плакал из-за мелочей. 5. Я лег и пытался заснуть, но сон не



шел. 6. Мы никому не скажем, что мы узнали. Не беспокойтесь. 7. Он часто видел, как она улыбалась чему-то. 8. Друзья старались убедить меня, но я не хотел их слушать. 9. Я спросил, что случилось, но он не отвечал. 10. Больной наотрез отказывался лежать в постели. 11. Открой, пожалуйста, дверь, у меня руки заняты. 12. Ребенок ни за что не хотел пить молоко. 13. Раньше я боялась лететь самолетом. У меня начинало колотиться сердце и руки потели.

DARE

Dare is used both as a **regular verb** and as a **modal one**.

As a **regular verb** dare has two forms: **dare** for the present tense and **dared** for the past tense.

As a regular verb it is used with the auxiliary verb to do in the interrogative form and with -s in the third person singular the Present Simple. It is also used with the **to-Infinitive**. *E.g. No one dared to ask him. He didn't dare to stop me.*

In affirmative sentences it may express **challenge**.

E.g. I dare you to jump off that wall. — Спорим, что не прыгнешь с этой стены!

As a **modal verb** it is used chiefly in interrogative and negative sentences. It expresses to have the **courage or impertinence** to do something or lack of courage in negative sentences. *E.g. I daren't ask her. Will you do it? How dare she take this risk?*

NOTE: 1) I dare say (or daresay) means I suppose, probably.
E.g. I dare say he will come late. — Полагаю, он придет позже.

2) You can come across a mixture of a regular and modal verb: *E.g. We didn't dare say anything else.*

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Read, translate and comment on the use of the verb dare.

1. Nobody dared to speak or move. 2. How dare you speak to me like that! 3. He froze. He dare not move. 4. I daresay she's giving a farewell party to her friends on board. 5. How dare she come here! 6. They daren't go against the missionaries. 7. She stood at the door with the tears streaming down her face and did not dare to enter. 8. That was all I wanted to say to you. Now I daresay you'd like to join the ladies. 9. But she dared do nothing yet. 10. He dared not use his motorcycle. 11. 'Don't you dare to speak to me,' she screamed. 'If you insult me I shall have you turned out of here.' 12. He didn't dare lie to his father.

Ex. 2. Complete the sentences with dare, daren't, dared, dared not.

1. I ... tell them I've just broken their favourite vase. 2. I hardly ... mention this but you still haven't paid for those tickets. 3. I knew I was right but I ... say so at the time. 4. When he came, she ... express her feelings. 5. ... we ask for more money after she has just said it? 6. How ... you speak to me in such a tone? 7. I ... tell Mother that I had lost my favourite gloves. 8. But I never ... ask Mrs. Danvers what she did about it. 9. He ... take his eyes off his assailant. 10. The teaches was very strict. Nobody ... talk during his lessons.

Ex. 3. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Гарри встретил вчера мистера Грина, но не посмел сказать ему, что мы разбили автомобиль, который взяли у него на время. 2. Не скажете ли вы мистеру Грину, что мы разбили его автомобиль? У меня не хватает смелости сказать ему об этом. 3. Как вы смеете так говорить со мной? 4. Как он смеет говорить так грубо обо мне? 5. Посмеет ли он признать это? 6. И они смеют говорить, что мы поступили нечестно? 7. Он подстрекал меня перепрыгнуть через ручей. 8. Пусть кто угодно попробует доказать,



что мои факты неверны. 9. Она не смела посмотреть мне в глаза.
10. Попробуй, залезь на это дерево!

English Modal Verbs – Most Common Situations Table

Situation	Modal Verb	Example
requests (formal)	may	May I sit down?
requests (informal)	can	Can I sit down?
requests (polite)	could	Could I sit down?
requests (polite)	would	Would you mind if I sit down?
permission (formal)	may	You may sit down.
permission (informal)	can	You can sit down.
obligation (full)	must	You must tell the police the truth.
obligation (partial)	should	You should tell your friends the truth.
obligation (partial) (less common)	ought to	You ought to tell your friends the truth.
logical conclusions (stronger than "should")	must	He left an hour ago, so he must be there already.
logical conclusions (weaker than "must")	should	I believe he should be there already.
possibility	can	It can rain sometimes.

(general)

possibility			It could rain, but it is
(weaker than "may" and "might")	could	not very common in this part of the country.	
possibility			It's not very cloudy yet,
(weaker than "may")	might	but it might rain.	
possibility			It's starting to get cloudy
(stronger than "might")	may	–	it may rain soon.
future actions/statements/intentions	will	Look at the sky!	It will rain soon.

Exercises: MODAL VERBS

Ex. 1. Use the verbs can or may.

1. One ... never know what... happen. 2. You ... have sent us a note at least! We waited for you the whole day. 3. Do you think you ... command an army? 4. Well, your wives ... not like the lady I'm going to marry. 5. Last winter he ... be seen in the club any night. 6. What... Anne be doing all this time in the kitchen? 7. Whatever the reason ... be, the fact remains. 8. She ... have lost her ring herself, it ... not have been stolen. 9. Who ... have said such a thing? 10. Somebody... have given her my address. 11. Such difficulties ... be easily put up with. 12. If only I... make him understand me properly. 13. I ... have helped him but I didn't receive his letter.

Ex. 2. Translate into English using the modal verbs can, may or must.

1. Можете не отвечать на этот вопрос, если не хотите. 2. Право же, вы могли бы дать мне об этом знать заранее. 3. Вы врач, и вам следует знать симптомы этой болезни. 4. Нам можно пользоваться словарями? — Нет, нельзя. 5. Ваши часы, должно быть, спешат. 6. Официант, должно быть, неправильно понял иностранца и принес не то блюдо. 7. Не может быть, чтобы он подвел нас. 8. Разве мог кто-нибудь подумать, что эта команда выиграет? 9. Он давно у нас не был. Ему, вероятно, не сказали, что мы уже в Москве. 10. Они, должно быть, не опоздали на поезд. Иначе они бы уже вернулись. 11. Их, очевидно, неправильно



информировали. 12. Не могли бы вы дать мне консультацию сегодня? 13. Неужели вы им поверили? Они, очевидно, пошутили над вами. 14. Вы бы лучше послали ему письмо: он может не догадаться, что вас задерживают дела, и будет волноваться. 15. Не мог бы я попросить вас зайти ко мне немного позже?

Ex. 3. Translate into English. Use must, may or can't.

1. Не может быть, чтобы она была такая молодая. Ей должно быть не меньше тридцати лет. 2. Должно быть, вокруг вашей деревни растут густые леса. 3. Не может такого быть, чтобы он написал письмо так быстро. 4. Может быть, мы пойдем на пляж: погода чудесная. 5. Это, очевидно, очень древняя рукопись. 6. Давайте позвоним Роберту, нам может понадобиться его совет. 7. Торопись: ты можешь опоздать на поезд. 8. Он, может быть, заболел. 9. Он, может быть, болеет. 10. Не может быть, чтобы он забыл купить цветы. 11. Не может быть, чтобы он поссорился с ней. 12. Наверное, она узнала об этом от Маши. 13. Это, должно быть, была очень трудная задача. 14. На улице, должно быть, очень холодно. 15. Она, должно быть, встретила их по пути домой. 16. Не может быть, чтобы они продали свой дом. 17. Они, может быть, приедут завтра. 18. Моя сестра, должно быть, сейчас в библиотеке. 19. Не может быть, чтобы он занял первое место. 20. Может быть, он и слышал об этом (хотя едва ли). 21. Мама, должно быть, купила конфеты. 22. Она, может быть, звонила мне вчера, а меня не было дома. 23. Может быть, он и в школе сейчас (хотя едва ли).

Ex. 4. Choose the right variant.

You (may/ought to/are to) take care of your parents. 2. My sight is getting worse. Next year, I'm afraid I (cannot/may not/won't be able to) read without glasses. 3. Twelve delegates from several countries (can/have to/are to) meet at the end of February. 4. Excuse me, (could/may/must) you tell me the way to the Houses of Parliament? 5. The weather is getting worse. It (must/is likely/may) rain. 6. There are no people in the hall, we (must/can/need) have a talk there. 7. Although he felt ill, he (could/was able to/may) finish all the paperwork. 8. You (can/must/ought to) go and see that movie. It's



very interesting. 9. Don't worry, you (don't have to/mustn't/may not) pay now. 10. When we were at school, we (had to/ought to/must) wear a uniform.

Ex. 5. Use the modal verbs to have to or to be to in the following sentences.

1. Where ... the lecture to take place? — I suppose in the assembly hall. 2. So, our plan is as follows: I ... to go to the library and bring the books. You ... to look through all the material here. Later we ... to work together. 3. "You ... to do it alone, without anybody's help", she said sternly. 4. I ... to help my friends with this work now, so I cannot go with you. 5. It was raining hard and we ... to wait until it stopped raining. 6. I ... to ask him about it tomorrow, as today he has already gone. 7. Why didn't you tell me that I ... to buy the books? 8. According to the order of the schoolmistress all the pupils ... to return the library books before the first of June. 9. As we had agreed before, we ... to meet at two o'clock to go to the stadium together. But Mike didn't come. I waited for another half-hour, but then I ... to leave as I was afraid to be late. 10. The meeting ... to begin at five o'clock. Don't be late.

Ex. 6. Use the modal verbs to have to or to be to to fill the gaps.

1. She ... to send a telegram because it was too late to send a letter. 2. They decided that she ... to send them a telegram every tenth day. 3. You ... to learn all the new words for the next lesson. 4. Do you know this man? He ... to be our new teacher of English. 5. Who ... to go to the library to get new books? — I was, but I couldn't because I ... to finish some work at the phonetic laboratory. 6. It is raining. You ... to put on your raincoat. 7. "The patient ... to stay in bed for a few days", ordered the doctor. 8. The child had a stomach trouble and ... to take castor oil. 9. I told her she ... to open the window for a while every day. 10. The agreement was that if Johnny White could not repay the money he had borrowed, then Luke Flint ... to have the right to sell the land. 11. If I don't ring up before six o'clock, then you ... to go to the concert hall alone and wait for me at the entrance. Is that clear? 12. The planters ... to gather their cotton

at once, as they had been warned that heavy rains were expected. 13. I ... to wear glasses as my eyesight is very weak. 14. Johnny White ... to borrow from Luke Flint at high interest, for there was no one else in the district who lent money. 15. "Cheating is a very nasty thing", said the teacher, "and we ... to get rid of it".

Ex. 7. Translate into English; using must, to be, to have, needn't or should.

1. Я должен был все спланировать заранее. 2. Мы, должно быть, пропустили его. Мы должны были прийти пораньше. 3. Ей надо было сделать вид, что она его не знает. 4. Она должна была выгладить это платье до того, как оно высохло; теперь ей придется смочить его снова. 5. Мы не должны были устраивать скандал на глазах у детей. 6. Это должно было случиться. Он такой забывчивый. 7. Этого следовало ожидать, и нечего удивляться. 8. Мне не пришлось ничего ей объяснять. 9. Ты не должен принимать все так близко к сердцу. 10. Вы не должны грызть ногти. Это отвратительная привычка, и нужно от нее избавиться. 11. Мы договорились встретиться в парке у памятника Пушкину. 12. Она, очевидно, была очень приятной женщиной. Все говорят о ней с такой любовью. 13. С какой стати я буду делать то, что я не должна.

Ex. 8. Give the proper English equivalents for the Russian expressions.

1. *Нам пришлось* perform the operation of addition to find the answer. 2. *Ему предстоит* specify the conditions of the experiment. 3. *Им разрешают* use a dictionary if necessary. 4. *Я в состоянии* solve this difficult problem myself. 5. *Вам следует* remember that multiplication is associative. 6. *Ей не надо* use this theorem. 7. *Они могут* apply their theories in practice. 8. *Вы обязаны* remember several rules about division. 9. *Можно мне* start the calculations now? 10. *Вам следует* to accept everything your parents say as an axiom.

Ex. 9. Fill in the blanks with should, need, have to with the appropriate form of the Infinitive:

1. I ... (to prepare) for my coming exam yesterday, but I... (to look after) my sick sister. 2. He ... not (to get up) early. He begins



working at 9.30. 3. "I ... (to say) those wounding words," he reproached himself. 4. It isn't the sort of thing one ... (to discuss) with unknown people. 5. You ... not (to worry) about money. I've got enough for both of us. 6. You ... not (to walk) all the way to the station. You ... (to take) a bus round the corner. 7. Sooner or later one ... (to choose). 8. Mother ... (to get up and down) a good bit during the meal, fetching things back and forward. 9. I managed to get there at half past twelve. But I ... not (to hurry). They had already left. 10. Breakfast is often a quick meal, because the father of the family ... (to get) away to his work, children ... (to go) to school, and the mother has her housework to do. 11. If you are interested in historic places you ... (to go) to Westminster Abbey. 12. She drew a chair near his — he wondered if he ... (to help) her with the chair — and sat down beside him. 13. They ... (to knock) twice before the door was opened. 14. She ... (not to give) money to her boy. Then it wouldn't have happened. 15. She ... (to conceal) her real feelings lest anyone ... (to notice) how unhappy she was. 16. You ... (not to come) yourself. You may send somebody else.

Ex. 10. Fill in the blanks with ought, to be, to have.

1. Don't contradict her, you ... to respect her age. 2. She is not a bad sort, if somewhat capricious; so you sometimes ... to put up with her whims. 3. The situation grew awkward. He felt that something ... to be done, or else the party would break up; so he ... to say a few conciliating words to put the guests at their ease. 4. He was boiling with rage, but he ... to control his feelings not to give himself away. 5. I thought I ... to do something to return their hospitality. 6. Not a living thing ... to be seen. 7. Why do you ask my opinion? You have been in the business much longer, you ... to know better. 8. You are a father, you ... not to neglect your duties to your children. 9. According to the rules of the game a football player ... not to touch the ball with his hands. 10. He ... to have taken the floor and spoken in favour of the proposal. 11. Ring me up at 6. The situation ... to clear up by then.

Ex. 11. Translate into English the following sentences using shall, will, should or would.

1. Вы этого не сделаете. Запомните это! 2. Я сделаю эту работу, хотя бы мне и пришлось не спать всю ночь. 3. Магазин, вероятно, еще открыт. Если вы поторопитесь, вы успеете купить хлеб. 4. Он сказал, что ему придется уехать через несколько дней, но мы и слушать не хотели. 5. Бесплезно доказывать ему, что вы правы; его никогда нельзя убедить. Он очень упрямый. 6. Это его не касается. Незачем было ему вмешиваться. 7. Вы должны прочесть эту интересную статью. 8. Вам придется держать экзамен еще раз. Вам надо обратить больше внимания на грамматику. 9. Вам бы следовало предупредить нас, что вы не придете. Мы бы не ждали вас. 10. Вы прекрасно знали, что это бесполезно, но все же это сделали. 11. Он не понял вас. Вам следовало бы подробно объяснить свою точку зрения. 12. Вам давно следовало бы побывать в этом древнем городе. 13. Я обещаю, что все будет сделано. 14. Замок никак не запирается! Я просила тебя много раз починить его. 15. Ты никуда не пойдешь, пока не сделаешь уроки!

Ex. 12. Translate the sentences into English, using modal verbs.

1. У него плохо со зрением, и он вынужден постоянно носить очки. 2. Не нужно звонить, у меня есть ключ. 3. Не может быть, чтобы дверь была открыта. Я сама ее запирала. 4. Возможно, он уже достал билеты, и мы сможем пойти на премьеру в воскресенье. 5. Неужели ты забыл о нашей встрече? 6. Ему следовало бы быть осторожнее при проведении эксперимента. 7. Что он может делать там так долго? Наверное, он просто уснул. Ты же знаешь, он может заснуть где угодно и в любое время. 8. Никогда нельзя судить по первому впечатлению. Оно может оказаться ошибочным. 9. Вам следует прочесть эту книгу. Она вам должна понравиться. 10. Вам обязательно сообщат, если в этом будет необходимость. 11. О, как вы пожалеете о своих словах! 12. Он выглядит очень радостным: его работу, очевидно, одобрили. 13. В самом деле, ты могла бы предупредить меня заранее! Тогда мне не пришлось бы тратить столько времени понапрасну. 14. Вы должны были сделать вид, что не заметили, что она хромает. 15.

Должно быть, очень приятно путешествовать на юге. 16. Вы могли бы с таким же успехом сделать это сами. 17. Не может быть, чтобы он отправил телеграмму. Он не выходил из дому. Он, наверное, забыл. 18. Вам бы не надо было сообщать им об этом сегодня. Можно было подождать до завтра.

Ex. 14. Insert the appropriate modal verb.

1. He has insulted our family and he ... suffer for it! 2. You ... not have gone out without an umbrella in such rainy weather. 3. I'm afraid I ... have sounded a bit unfriendly over the phone. 4. "I... to have told Soames," he thought, "that I think him comic." 5. We ... live to their age, perhaps. 6. Here she... sit, sewing and knitting, while he worked at the table. 7. Why ... you be different from other people? 8. "Good morning," said the girl. "I believe you ... be Toby. Have I guessed right?" 9. If you ... read without spectacles, and I believe you ... be so good as to read this letter for me. 10. Captain Steerforth ... I speak to you for a moment? 11. Anne felt she ... not stand much more of this discussion. She said she ... go on with her work and began to rise. 12. Why... one make trouble for oneself when one is old? 13. ... you do me a favour and meet her .at the station? 14. He was not old, he ... not have been more than forty. 15. The day we ... to start it rained worse than ever. 16. You ... not hurry. There is plenty of time. 17. Mother has fallen ill, so I... to change my plans. 18. We didn't know what to do; the key... not turn and we ... not get into the room. 19. I ... not to have left Cape Town last night. I wish I had not. 20. ... I speak to Mr. Pitt, please? — I'm afraid he's out at the moment.... you ring back later?

Ex. 15. Translate the sentences into English using modal verbs.

1. Его зовут Фостер. Возможно, вы слышали его имя. 2. Женщина в синем костюме, стоящая у окна, кажется мне знакомой. Должно быть, я где-то встречал ее. 3. Нигде не могу найти эту пластинку. Неужели ее разбили? 4. Напрасно я сказала ему это. Вероятно, он обиделся на меня. 5. Всё обязательно будет в порядке! Ваша дочь непременно поправится! 6. Вы вчера поздно вернулись; вам сегодня следует пораньше лечь спать. 7. Ты не

должна была так говорить с ней; она этого не заслужила. Кроме того, она старше тебя. 8. Необходимо, чтобы каждый студент принял участие в этом соревновании. 9. Нельзя же без конца говорить об одном и том же! 10. Председатель предложил, чтобы все присутствующие высказали свое мнение по этому вопросу. 11. Вам не придется ничего выдумывать. Вам скажут, что делать. 12. Вы никогда о нем не слышали? Ну, так вы еще услышите! 13. Джейн не могла забыть день, который должен был быть днем ее свадьбы и который так трагически закончился. 14. Мне теперь не нужно рано вставать: я учусь во вторую смену. 15. Не может быть, чтобы я пропустил его. Я все время стоял у дверей. 16. Не-зачем ему было работать так поздно. Часть работы можно было отложить на сегодня. 17. Могу я предложить вам чашку чаю, доктор? 18. Нельзя быть таким нетерпеливым. Всегда следует считаться с привычками других людей. 19. Вы должны вести себя так, словно ничего не случилось и не могло случиться. 20. Вам часто приходится ходить к врачу? 21. Не будете ли вы добры помочь мне отпереть чемодан? Что-то неладно с замком, и он никак не открывается. 22. Он должен был прийти в пять часов, мы ждем его полтора часа, а его все нет. Где бы он мог быть? 23. Зачем нам помогать ему? Он просто не хочет работать. 24. Он присылал ей подарки но она упорно не хотела их принимать.

Ex. 16. Translate the sentences into English using modal verbs.

1. Неужели он действительно отказался вам помочь?
2. С какой стати я буду ему первая звонить?
3. Наверное, он испугал вас своими угрозами.
4. Не нужно беспокоиться. Я обещаю, что все будет сделано.
5. Вам придется согласиться на их условия.
6. Вся жизнь мальчика может быть исковеркана, если вы не уведете его отсюда.
7. Ах, если бы только я могла предвидеть это!
8. Он предложил, чтобы соревнования назначили на пять часов.
9. Мне пойти и узнать, сделал ли он работу? Он должен был закончить ее вчера.
10. Тебе долго пришлось дожидаться его?
11. Зря ты пришел. Собрание отменено.
12. Ты должен был ска-

зать нам об этом. 13. Она, должно быть, забыла передать им нашу записку.

Ex. 17. Translate the sentences into English using modal verbs.

1. Не может быть, чтобы она совершила такой плохой поступок. 2. Он должен был прийти к нам вечером. Неужели он забыл? 3. Ты должен был нам сказать, что он нездоров. 4. К сожалению, мне не пришлось договорить с врачом. 5. Ты бы мог мне сказать, что опоздаешь. 6. Мы бы, возможно, опоздали на теплоход, если бы поехали вечерним поездом. 7. Я бы ни за что не взял свои слова назад, даже если бы он извинился передо мной. Тем не менее я бы все же предпочел, чтобы он извинился. 8. Вы можете не звонить мне завтра. Я буду завтра работать. 9. Он, вероятно, не смог закончить перевод или, возможно, не знал, что его нужно подготовить к началу следующей недели. 10. Ты напрасно искал ключи. Они лежали на столе. 11. Тебе пришлось остаться до конца собрания, да? 12. Мы, возможно, поедем на дачу на выходные дни.

Ex. 18. Translate the sentences into English using modal verbs.

1. Вы можете не приносить доклад сегодня. Но завтра утром он должен быть у меня. 2. Он бы мог сходить туда сам; ему незачем было посылать вас, вы все же постарше его. 3. Где я могу найти товарища Иванова? — Он, должно быть, в соседней комнате. 4. Не может быть, что он был искренен, когда отказался ехать с вами на юг. Возможно, родители не разрешили ему ехать. 5. Ему не нужно было называть свою фамилию так громко, это привлекло внимание. 6. Она не такая застенчивая. Возможно, ваш вопрос был неожиданным для нее. 7. Тебе не нужно было спрашивать у отца: я нашел журнал на твоём письменном столе. 8. Неужели он действительно так растерялся? — Конечно, и даже покраснел. 9. Вы бы могли предупредить его об этом и не ставить его в такое неловкое положение. 10. Почему ее нет? Неужели она обиделась и решила не приходить? 11. Почему ты так рано? — Нам не пришлось долго заседать: все вопросы решили быстро.



12. Билеты можно было заказать по телефону. Мне не нужно было ехать на вокзал. 13. Я был в Москве, поэтому мне пришлось осмотреть весь город. 14. Вам не нужно было бросать эту работу. Ведь вы были так близко к цели. 15. Я смогу выполнить эту работу завтра.

Ex. 19. Translate into English.

1. Нужно посмотреть этот фильм. 2. Должно быть, он уже смотрел этот фильм. 3. Ты бы посмотрел этот фильм сначала. 4. Надо было посмотреть этот фильм. 5. Неужели он уже смотрел этот фильм? 6. Мы с друзьями должны посмотреть этот фильм на этой неделе. 7. Он мог смотреть (может быть, смотрел) этот фильм. 8. Не может быть, чтобы он не смотрел этот фильм. 9. Мог бы и сам посмотреть этот фильм, а не приставать с вопросами. 10. Мне придется посмотреть этот фильм. 11. С какой радости я должен смотреть этот фильм? 12. Можно было и не смотреть этот фильм. Он оказался таким скучным. 13. Должно быть, он сейчас смотрит фильм. 14. Я хотел, чтобы моя сестра посмотрела этот фильм, но она не хотела. 15. Ты не должен был смотреть этот фильм, он не для детей!

3. НАКЛОНЕНИЕ / MOOD

3.1. Виды наклонений.

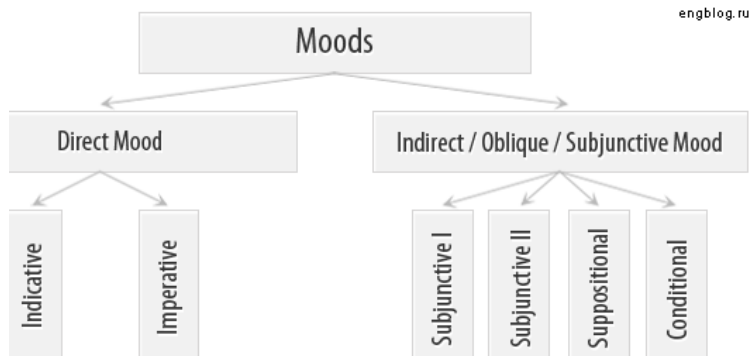
**Условное наклонение / Types of Mood.
Conditional Mood.**

MOOD

Mood is a grammatical category which indicates the attitude of the speaker towards the action expressed by the predicate verb.

The action may be represented as a *real fact*, a *problematic action* or as *something unreal that does not exist*.

There are the following moods in English: *the direct moods* – the Indicative and the Imperative; *the oblique moods* – the Subjunctive and the Conditional.



DIRECT MOODS

I. The Indicative Mood

The Indicative mood shows that the speaker considers the action or state denoted by the predicate as a real fact and affirms or negates its existence in the present, past or future. The verb in the Indicative mood has the category of tense, aspect and voice.

I haven't yet looked at the newspaper.

We are studying oblique moods now.

If it rains, I'll stay at home.

The doctor was sent for.

II. The Imperative Mood

The Imperative mood expresses commands and requests generally addressed to the second person singular or plural. The Imperative mood has only one form which coincides with the infinitive of the verb without the particle "to":

Listen to him.

Be careful.



Практическая грамматика первого иностранного языка

The negative form is built up by means of the auxiliary "do":

Don't listen to him.

Don't be late.

The auxiliary "do" may also be used in affirmative sentences to make the request or command more emphatic:

Do be careful.

Do listen to him.

In commands and requests addressed to the first and third person the combination "let + infinitive" is used:

Let him do it.

Let us do it together.

The negative forms are:

Let's not talk about it.

Don't let's talk about it.

OBLIQUE MOODS

If I had a garden, I should grow tulips in it.

had - the subjunctive mood

should grow - the conditional mood

The oblique moods represent actions or states as desired, imaginary, or contradicting reality.

The Forms of the Infinitive

Tenses	Active	Passive
Indefinite	to write	to be written
Continuous	to be writing	-
Perfect	to have written	to have been written



Perfect Continuous	to have been writing	-
-----------------------	-------------------------	---

I. The Subjunctive Mood

The Subjunctive mood represents an action as **absolutely unreal**.

The Subjunctive mood is a synthetical mood and it has two tenses: the present tense (The Present Subjunctive mood) and the Past tense (the Past Subjunctive mood).

The form of the **Present Subjunctive** mood coincides with the **Past Indefinite** (It is a grammatical homonym of the Past Indefinite tense). The verb "to be" has the form "**were**" for all persons:

If I knew...

If she lived...

If I (she, it, they, etc) were...

The Present Subjunctive mood expresses an unreal action at present.

The Present Subjunctive mood may also refer an action to the future or to no particular time.

The form of the **Past Subjunctive** mood coincides with the form of the **Past Perfect** tense (It is a grammatical homonym of the Past Perfect tense)

If I had known...

If she had lived...

If they had been...

The Past Subjunctive mood expresses an unreal action in the past.

II. The Suppositional Mood

The Suppositional Mood is an analytical mood. It is formed by combining the auxiliary verb **should** for all persons with the Infinitive.

The **Present Suppositional** is formed by the auxiliary verb **should + Indefinite/Continuous Infinitive**

e.g. *It is impossible that he **should say** so.*

*It is disappointing that you **should be ill**.*

*It is disappointing that you **should be lying ill**.*

The **Past Suppositional** is formed by the auxiliary verb **should + Perfect / Perfect Continuous Infinitive**

e.g. It is impossible that he **should have said** so.

It is disappointing that you **should have been lying** ill when we came to invite you to the party.

The suppositional Mood represents an action as **problematic**, but not necessarily contradicting reality. The realization of the action may **depend on certain circumstances**, but these circumstances are not contrary to fact.

It is not used in simple sentences.

III. The Conditional Mood.

The Conditional mood is an analytical mood. It has two tenses, the present tense (The Present Conditional mood) and the past tense (The Past Conditional mood).

The **Present Conditional mood** refers the action to the present (or to the future) and is built up by means of the auxiliary verbs "**should**" or "**would**" and the **Indefinite infinitive** of the notional verb (or sometimes the continuous infinitive):

I should read...

He would be reading...

The **Past Conditional mood** refers the action to the Past and is built up by means of the auxiliary verbs "**should**" or "**would**" and the **Perfect infinitive** of the notional verb (or sometimes the Perfect continuous infinitive):

I should have told you...

They would have helped him ...

The meaning of the Conditional mood is very close to the meaning of the Subjunctive mood. It also expresses an **unreal action** but this unreality always **depends on some condition**.

If I were ten years younger, I should go to the disco.

If I were ten years younger – this is absolutely unreal



I should go to the disco – the unreality of this action depends on the first clause

The Conditional mood expresses an **unreal consequence** out of some unreal condition.

the Pr. Subj. m.

the Pr Cond. m.

If I were in your place I shouldn't think so.

the Past Cond. m.

the Past Subj. m

I should have gone with you if you had invited me.

Sentences of the Mixed Type

The actions in the principal and subordinate clauses may have different time-reference.

The unreal condition may refer to the past and the consequence - to the present or future:

If you had read the newspaper yesterday, you would know the news.

The Condition may refer to no particular time and the consequence may refer to the past:

She would not have told me the story if she disliked me.

The Use of the Subjunctive Mood (II)

The Subjunctive mood may be used in simple sentences; of unreal wish and in complex sentences.

In simple sentences:

If it were not so dark! - Если бы не было так темно!

If only I knew it for sure! Если бы я знала это наверняка!

If only I had told her the truth! - Если бы я только сказал ей правду!

In complex sentences:

1) in subordinate clauses of unreal condition which are usually introduced by the conjunction "if (the use of tenses is absolute in this case: when reference is made to the present or future the Present Subjunctive and the Present Conditional are used; when reference is made to the past the Past Subjunctive and the Past Conditional are used):

If I had more time I should learn French.

Note 1: The modal verbs "can" and "may" have no special forms for the Conditional mood. They have only one form of the oblique mood - the form of the Subjunctive mood present:

If he came now he could help us.

could help- the Present Subjunctive mood of the modal verb "can" and the indefinite infinitive of the verb "to help"

If the whole situation refers to the past the perfect Infinitive is used:

If he had come yesterday he could have helped us.

could have helped- the Present Subjunctive mood of the modal verb "can" and the perfect infinitive of the verb "to help"

could/might do it – (могла) бы (to the present or future)

could/might have done it – (могла) бы (to the past)

Note 2: The conjunction "if" may be omitted and the inversion is used:

a) for the Present Subjunctive with the verbs "be", "have" and modal verbs:

If she were here she would help us. – Were she here she would help us.

If I could swim I should go to the river with you. – Could I swim I should go...

If we had time we should go to the cinema. – Had we time we should go...

b) for the Past Subjunctive it is also possible:

If we had known about it yesterday we should have informed you.

Had we known about it yesterday we...

Note 3: The unreal condition can also be expressed by the phrase "but for + a noun/a pronoun"

But for the rain (if it were not for the rain) they would go to the country.

But for the rain (If it had not been for the rain) they would have gone to the country.

"But for" is rendered in Russian as "если бы не".

2) In subordinate clauses of concession introduced by "even if", "even though" (the use of tenses is absolute in this case):

Even if you were right I shouldn't defend you.

Even if (even though) he had come he wouldn't have helped

us.

Даже если бы...

3) in object clauses after the verb "to wish" the Present Subjunctive or the Past Subjunctive may be used to express a wish which cannot be fulfilled or a hardly realizable wish

I wish it were true.

I wish you had asked me anything but this.

The use of tenses is relative in this case:

a) If the action of the subordinate clause is simultaneous with the action of the principal clause the Present Subjunctive is used:

I wish he were with us. - Мне жаль, что его нет с нами.

I wished he were with us. - Мне было жаль, что его не было с нами.

I wished I knew it for sure.

b) If the action of the subordinate clause precedes the action of the principal clause the Past Subjunctive is used:

I wish you had stayed at home. - Мне жаль, что ты не осталась дома.

I wished you had stayed at home. - Мне было жаль, что ты не осталась

дома.

c) If the action of the subordinate clause follows the action of the principal clause the Present Subjunctive is used:

I wish/ I shall wish/ I wished you got there in good time.

To make the sentence more emphatic one can use "would + an infinitive" after an expression of wish, but only if the subjects in both clauses are different and if the wish refers to the present or to the future.

I wish/ I shall wish/ I wished he would (not) do it.

Note 1: When the verb in the object clause is affirmative in English it is negative in Russian and vice versa.

Практическая грамматика первого иностранного языка

I wish I had told him the truth. - Жаль, что я не сказал ему правду.

I wish I had not told him the truth. - Жаль, что я сказал ему правду.

4) in subordinate clauses of unreal comparison introduced by the conjunctions "as if", "as though" the Present Subjunctive or the Past Subjunctive may be used. The use of tenses is relative in this case:

a) If the action of the subordinate clause is simultaneous with the action of the principal clause the Present Subjunctive is used in the subordinate clause:

The house is so quiet as if there were nobody there. - В доме так тихо, как будто там никого нет.

The house was so quiet as if there were nobody there. - В доме было так тихо, как будто там никого не было.

Her eyes are (were) sparkling as though she were laughing at us. - Ее глаза сверкают (сверкали), как будто она смеется (смеялась) над нами.

b) If the action of the subordinate clause precedes the action of the principal clause the Past Subjunctive is used in the subordinate clause:

Our life goes on as if nothing had happened. - Наша жизнь продолжается, как будто ничего не произошло.

Our life went on as if nothing had happened. - Наша жизнь продолжалась, как будто ничего не произошло.

Our life will go on as if nothing had happened. - Наша жизнь будет продолжаться, как будто ничего не произошло.

*She is breathing deep as if (as though) she had been running.
- Она дышит тяжело, как будто она бежала.*

*She was breathing deep as if (as though) she had been running.
- Она дышала тяжело, как будто она бежала.*

c) If the action of the subordinate clause follows the action of the principal clause "would + an infinitive" is used:

He moved towards me as though he would strike me. - Он двинулся на меня, как будто собирался меня ударить.

Note 1: Clauses introduced by "as if", "as though" are treated as predicative clauses when they follow the verbs "to look", "to feel", "to sound", "to seem", "to be":

She looks as if she were ill.

She looks as if she had been ill for a long time.

She looked as if she would cry.

He felt as if he didn't know her.

It will be as if nothing had happened.

5) in attributive clauses after the phrases "It is time ...", "It is high time ..." only the Present Subjunctive is used:

It is/was time smb did smth.

It is time we had lunch.

It was time we had lunch.

The Use of the Conditional Mood

The Conditional mood is used:

1) in the principal clause of a complex sentence with a subordinate clause of unreal condition or concession.

If I were you I should never do this.

Even if he had been there he wouldn't have changed anything.

2) in compound sentences (mostly with the conjunctions "otherwise", "or", "but", "or else"):

I am very busy, otherwise I should go with you.

The boy would study well, but he is often ill.

3) in simple sentences with implied condition:

I should like to speak to you. (If I got a chance.)

4) in simple sentences with the expression "but for".

But for the moon it would be quite dark now.

The Suppositional Mood is used:

1. In indirect questions beginning with **why** (Subjunctive I is possible but rare):

Nobody could explain why he should have done so.

2. Modifying the noun **regret**:

She expressed her regret that things should have taken a bad turn.

3. Modifying the noun **time**:

It is high / about time you should go.

Note: Subjunctive II is in more common use here:

It is time we went home.

4. In conditional clauses when the fulfilment of the condition is unlikely though possible:

If I should meet her tomorrow I should / shall speak to her.

The Old Present Subjunctive (I)

The Old Present Subjunctive has only one form which is a homonym of the infinitive. The main meaning of the Old Present Subjunctive is to express a problematic action not as a real fact but as a wish, supposition, smth desirable, but not contrary to reality.

The use of the Old Present Subjunctive is limited. It can be found in the following cases:

1) in a few set expressions rendering wish or concession:

Wish 1. *Success attend you!* - *Да сопутствует вам успех!*

2. *God bless you!* - *Благослови тебя Господь!*

3. *God save the king!* - *Боже, царя храни!*

4. *Be you happy!* - *Будьте счастливы!*

5. *Long live our friendship!* - *Да здравствует наша дружба!*

6. *Damn you! Curse you!* - *Будьте вы прокляты!*

Concession 1. *Come what may come.* – *Будь, что будет.*

2. *Be it as it is.* - *Пусть будет так, как есть.*

3. *So be it.* - *Да будет так.*

2) It is a bookish style. It may be found in official and scientific articles and in poetry (after words expressing necessity, wish, demands such as "to insist", "to demand", "to require"):

The doctor insisted that the boy remain in bed.

I demand he do the job.

The regulation is that manuscripts be written on one side only.



Forms of Subjunctive Mood

1. Subjunctive I Mood = to Infinitive Success attend you! Да сопутствует тебе удача!	
2. Subjunctive II Mood	
Present = Past Indefinite I wish he were present. Жаль, что он не присутствует. It's high time you did your flat. Тебе давно пора бы убрать в квартире.	Past = Past Perfect I wish she had gone to England last year. Жаль, что она не поехала в Англию в прошлом году.
3. Suppositional Mood	
Pre-sent = should + Indefinite Infinitive I insist that you should work hard. Я настаиваю, чтобы вы усердно работали.	Past = should + Perfect Infinitive (используется редко!) It's important that you should have been present at the meeting. Важно, чтобы вы тогда присутствовали на собрании.
4. Conditional Mood	
Pre-sent = would / should + Indefinite Infinitive If it were warm, we would go to the park. Если бы было тепло, мы бы пошли в парк. (относится к настоя-	Past = would / should + Perfect Infinitive If I had worked harder last year, I would have got an excellent mark at the exam. Если бы я работал усерднее в том году, я бы получил отличную



щему времени)

оценку на экзамене.



Types of Conditional Mood

Type of Condition (тип условия)	Subordinate clause (придаточное предложение)	Main clause (главное предложение)
1. Real (реальное)	Indicative Mood	Indicative / Imperative Mood
	e.g. If I meet her, Если я ее встречу,	I'll tell her the news. я расскажу ей новости
	e.g. If you meet her, Если ты ее встретишь,	warn her about it. предупреди ее об этом.
2. Problematic (проблематичное)	Suppositional Mood	Indicative / Imperative Mood
	e.g. Should he meet her (If he should meet her),	he will tell her the news.

}

2



Практическая грамматика первого иностранного языка

	Случись, что / Если случится, что / Если все же / Если случится так, что он ее встретит,	он расскажет ей новости.	
	e.g. Should you meet her (If you should meet her),	warn her about it.	
	Случись, что / Если случится, что / Если все же / Если случится так, что ты ее встретишь,	предупреди ее об этом.	
3. Remote (отдаленное)	were to... (су	Conditional Mood	
	e.g. If she were to live in England, Если бы ей суждено было жить в Англии,	I would be happy. я был бы счастлив.	
4. Unreal (нереальное)	Subjunctive II Present	Conditional Mood Present	
	If they met, Если бы они встретились,	they would discuss it. они бы это обсудили (еще могут встретиться).	
	I.	Subjunctive II Past	Conditional Mood Past
		If they had met yesterday, Если бы они вчера встретились,	they would have discussed it. они бы это обсудили (но не встретились).
		Mixed Type	
		Subjunctive II Present	Conditional Mood Past



	II.		
		If she weren't absent minded, Если бы она не была рассеянной, Subjunctive II Past	she wouldn't have lost the book. она бы не потеряла книгу. Conditional Mood Present
		If he hadn't missed the lesson, Если бы он не прогулял урок,	he would be answering well now. он бы сейчас хорошо отвечал.

Not to mix with Conditional sentences!

**Types of Conditional sentences
(Complex Sentences with Subordinate Clauses of Condi-
tion)**

Con- ditional Type	Formation		Example
	Condi- tion	Result	
0 Conditional Реальное всегда	If + Pre sent Simple,	Presen t Simple	If a cat sees a dog, it runs away. Если кот видит собаку, он убегает.
1 st C onditional Реальное настоящее или буду- щее	If + Pre sent Simple,	Future Simple	I will have a cup of coffee if I have a break. Я выпью чашечку кофе, если у меня будет перерыв.
2 nd C onditional Маловеро- ятное настоящее или буду- щее	If + Pa st Simple,	would + Verb with- out to	If I had vacation in summer, I would spend it in Athens. Если бы у меня был отпуск летом, я бы провел его в Афинах.
3 rd C onditional Нереальное прошлое	If + Pa st Perfect,	would have + past participle	If we had taken a taxi, we wouldn't have missed the plane. Если бы мы взяли такси, то не опоздали бы на самолет.

Exercises: CONDITIONAL MOOD

Pre sent	would be would do would be doing would (might) do would (might) be
Pas t	would have been would have done would have been doing could (might) have done could (might) have been

Ex. 1. Answer the following questions, using the conditional mood.

MODEL

1) *Will you see her in this part? – No, (to be bored stiff).*

– No, I **should be bored** stiff.

2) *Why didn't you let him take his ball? – (to lose).*

– He **would have lost** it.

3) *Why don't you let him go there alone? – (may lose) the way.*

– He **might lose** the way.

4) *Why did you do it yourself? – (can spoil).*

– He **could have spoiled** the picture.

1. Why didn't you ask him to help you? – (to refuse). 2. Will you take your younger child along? – No, (may get tired). 3. Did you tell her about it? – No, (to be upset). 4. Why didn't you copy the poem? – (to take too long). 5. Will you take a taxi? – No, (to be expensive). 6. Why didn't you take her to the theatre? – (not to like). 7. Why don't you wash the dress yourself instead of sending it to the cleaner's? – (to shrink). 8. Why don't you tell him, he's not doing it right? – (to resent). 9. Why didn't you let him have an ice-cream? – (may hurt smb.'s throat). 10. Did you tell her how to do it? – No, (not to take smb.'s advice). 11. Why didn't he stop to talk to you? – (to miss one's train). 12. Will you come and see me one of these days? – (to be glad to). 13. Could you come over and have dinner with us to-

morrow? – (to be delighted). 14. Why didn't you come to see your boy act in the play? – (may be nervous). 15. Why didn't she ask him any question? – (to get confused). 16. Why did you want him to do it? – (can do smth. better).

Ex. 2. Translate into English

1. Ты правильно сделал, что не пошел. Картина тебе не понравилась бы. 2. Все случилось потому, что его там не было. Он бы знал, что делать. 3. Мы так давно не видались. Не знаю, узнала ли бы я ее теперь. 4. Мне не нравится твой перевод. Она бы сделала это лучше. 5. Мне бы не хотелось идти туда сегодня. 6. Ты всегда мне помогаешь. Что бы я без тебя делала? 7. Как хорошо, что ты был дома. Что бы я без тебя делала? 8. Было бы разумно завтра переночевать в лагере. 9. Было бы замечательно сдать экзамен сегодня. 10. Я вернула книгу в библиотеку. Ты все равно не стал бы ее читать. 11. Каждому ребенку понравилась бы такая кукла. 12. Это была интересная работа. Любой из нас охотно согласился бы тогда на это предложение. 13. Мне не нравится этот человек. Доверять ему я бы не стала. 14. В таком положении он сделал бы то же самое. 15. Собственно говоря, я мог бы пойти туда сегодня. 16. Я не знала, что он был в Москве. Я могла бы дать ему книги. 17. Вы могли бы отнести ей это после лекции?

Ex. 3. Complete the sentences by using the *Past Conditional* of the verbs in brackets.

1. He didn't know anything about the party, or he (come).
 2. The doctor told me nothing about the new treatment, or I (try) it.
 3. Why didn't you consult your tutor? He (advise) you what to do.
 4. We couldn't get in touch with each other, or we (avoid) a lot of trouble.
 5. There were no computers in those times, or my father (learn) them.
 6. He was pressed for time last week or he (visit) his in-laws.
 7. Helen didn't buy the dress though it was just what she wanted. In her place I (buy) it.
 8. Michael finally made up with his son or he (change) his will.
 9. Why didn't you ask me? I (can) (give a lift) you to the fitness centre.
 10. It really was hitting news or everybody (take) it easy.
 11. You've got into a mess again! Really, you (can) (be) more careful!
 12. Olga's mother did all the housework, or she (learn) how to cook.
 13. She had an alibi or the police (arrest) her.
 14. The

new perfume was too sweet or I (buy) it. 15. The serial was too long otherwise I (watch) it to the end. 16. If it weren't for electricity, we all still (watch) television by candlelight.

Ex. 4. Rephrase the following sentences, using the Conditional Mood.

MODEL

He is very absent-minded, so he always loses his spectacles.

*He is very absent-minded, **otherwise** he **would not** always **lose** his spectacles.*

1. It is a very good film and I advise you to go and see it.
 2. The cake was very tasty and she asked for some more. 3. She is running a high temperature and so we called a doctor. 4. We are having a spell of warm weather and the tree burst into blossom so early.
 5. He studied hard and so he made good progress. 6. The child was naughty and the father punished him. 7. He refused point blank and I didn't try to persuade him to join us. 8. You forgot to water the flowers and they withered. 9. She was upset by that letter, she burst into tears. 10. The child refused to go to bed, he was afraid to go to bed in the dark. 11. That was his day off so he could go hiking with us. 12. The music was too loud and the child woke up. 13. The grandpa is getting rather deaf so he has just got a hearing aid. 14. He does a lot of reading in bed and his eyesight is poor now.

Ex. 5. Give answers to the following questions, using *but for ...* and the words in brackets.

MODEL

1) Why did not you go to Leningrad? – (the child's illness).

But for the child's illness I should have gone.

2) Why don't you come with us? (my headache). –

But for my headache I should gladly come.

1. Did he get an excellent mark for his composition? – (spelling). 2. How did you manage to translate it so fast? – (my sister's help). 3. Why do you keep the dog chained? – (the neighbour's chickens). 4. Haven't you learned to do it quite well? – (your explanation). 5. Is the picture good? – (but for the end). 6. Why did he refuse to speak at the meeting? – (his sore throat). 7. Will they go to the Crimea this summer? – (the grand father's operation). 8. Isn't the

weather rather good? – (the wind). 9. Is she really a success as an actress? – (her voice). 10. Is he quite well now? – (his overeating). 11. Do you like working here? – (the heat). 12. Did he set a new record? – (an accident). 13. Could you translate the text they gave them at the examination? – (my headache). 14. Can you see the sea from your bedroom window? – (a screen of trees).

Ex. 6. Replace the infinitives in brackets by the correct form of the Conditional Mood.

1. I didn't know about the fact, otherwise I (to give) you the extra day. 2. To have gone back then only (to make) it more difficult. 3. There was no piano because it (to take up) much room. 4. I don't know what we (to do) but for Nurse Duggon. 5. Last night it (to be) quite impossible. 6. How wonderful it (to be) to take the sadness out of those big and lovely eyes! 7. Billy (to adore) to live in the country. His ideal happiness was to have a pleasant cottage. 8. I (to like) to say 'no' but it (not to be) true. 9. But for his last remark she (not to start) a bargain. 10. Normally by now the court-room (to be) almost empty but for one or two lawyers. 11. To say that John Forsyte accompanied his mother to Spain unwillingly (to be) scarcely adequate. 12. She didn't know anything or she (not to agree) to accept them. 13. Nobody ever (to say) that he is a shy and timid man. 14. I don't know what I (to do) without you, my dear boy. 15. The sensation with which James dropped the letter was similar to that he (to have) entering his bedroom and finding it full of black beetles. 16. But for that letter on the table she (not to accuse) you. 17. He (to do) everything but nobody asked him to. 18. And then you were surprised because she threw your slippers at you. I (to throw) the fire-irons at you. 19. She was just the sort of person I (to expect) the wife of a professor to be.

Ex. 7. Translate into English.

1. Я была бы очень рада встретиться с вами вновь. 2. Если бы не невезение, то он бы выиграл в лотерею. 3. «А что бы вы сделали тогда на моем месте?» – «Я бы уехала». 4. Татьяна едет отдыхать в Юрмалу. А я бы поехала на Кипр. 5. Марина не хочет мириться с Валерием. На ее месте я бы помирилась с ним. Он славный парень. 6. Катя опять купила новое платье. Я бы посоветовала...

товала ей не тратить так много денег. 7. Какой сладкий джем! Я не положила бы так много сахара. 8. – Ты опять гулял под дождем? – Я не стала бы делать этого. У тебя ведь простуда. 9. – Не беспокойтесь, я позвоню вам. – Была бы очень вам признательна. 10. Что вы сказали? Не могли бы вы повторить это? 11. Какая жалость, что вы не читали эту книгу! Вы могли бы найти в ней много полезной информации. 12. – Я надеюсь получить эту работу. – Если бы не низкая оплата, любой ухватился бы за такой шанс. 13. – Агата готова принять предложение Росса. – Если бы не финансовые трудности, это была бы неплохая партия. 14. Моя дочь не хочет читать романы Диккенса. А я бы их перечитала. 15. – А вы изменили бы свое решение при других обстоятельствах? – Нет, я бы стоял на своем. 16. Жаль, потому что из него точно получился бы хороший актер.

Ex. 8. Translate into English.

1. Спасибо, что ты помогла мне уложить вещи. Иначе я опоздала бы на поезд. 2. Если бы не дождь, мы поехали бы за город на субботу и воскресенье. 3. Если бы не жара, было бы приятно пройтись домой пешком. 4. Если бы не твоя рассеянность, ты не забыл бы о собрании. 5. Хорошо, что я взяла зонтик. Иначе я промокла бы до костей. 6. Если бы не ее болезнь, она была бы хорошей студенткой. Она очень способна к языкам. 7. Хорошо, что мы заказали билеты заранее. Иначе нам пришлось бы долго стоять в очереди. 8. Если бы не Вы, я никогда не смогла бы увидеть так много интересных мест в Москве. Я Вам очень благодарна. 9. Они очевидно не получили нашу телеграмму. Иначе они пришли бы встретить нас. 10. Если бы не болезнь доктора Пейдж, Менсону не пришлось бы вести за него практику. 11. Если бы не его рассеянность, он не забыл бы свои очки дома. 12. Их нет дома. Иначе кто-нибудь ответил бы на мой звонок. 13. Хорошо, что мы поторопились. Иначе мы опоздали бы на поезд. 14. Спасибо за Ваш совет. Иначе я не решила бы эту сложную задачу. 15. Если бы не честность и трудолюбие доктора Менсона, он не завоевал бы уважение жителей поселка. 16. Если бы не доклад, он пошел бы с нами вчера в кино. 17. Если бы не Вы, мы не нашли бы дорогу обратно. 18. Согласиться на это, значило бы все

испортить. 19. Пойти туда, это значило бы получить большое удовольствие.

Ex. 9. Change into sentences of unreal condition.

1. You went to bed very late last night and you are feeling tired now. 2. We can't go boating as it is raining hard. 3. Bill didn't check his composition carefully and there are a lot of mistakes in it. 4. Nick fell of his bicycle yesterday because he was driving too fast. 5. She'll never master Greek, she isn't good at languages. 6. He has a sore throat as he ate two ice creams yesterday. 7. We enjoyed our visit to the country because the weather was fine. 8. I feel bored as the lecture isn't interesting. 9. She won't come, she's too busy. 10. He is not bright, he cannot remember simple things. 11. She is not you, she behaves in her own way. 12. I don't have a typewriter, so I cannot type the paper. 13. Under different circumstances your proposal would be most welcome. 14. That would have been useful a month ago. 15. Another person would have acted differently. 16. I hate him, I won't listen to him. 17. I don't know the man, he is a stranger here. 18. I began to feel uneasy for everybody was shouting at me. 19. He didn't see me, the fence separated us. 20. She did not answer, the tears were running down her face. 21. Bambi was frightened and stood motionless.

Ex.10. Make the following sentences conditional (real or unreal), starting with *If*.

1. It's important to protect wildlife now or there will be nothing left for future generations. 2. He's not a millionaire. He won't buy you a house. 3. The schoolchildren sowed some seeds, but they forgot to water them, so the seeds didn't grow. 4. He hopes he will get rich one day and will see the world. 5. When they were young many people didn't realize that smoking was dangerous. Now they are having serious health problems. 6. I couldn't stop the car. There was an accident. 7. They are leaving soon and it makes me unhappy. 8. He didn't enjoy school, so he didn't do very well. 9. Time flies! You can never think of your future. 10. The fax hasn't come yet. We can't act. 11. It was raining quite hard, but Mary went out wearing thin sandals, and her feet soon got wet. 12. He bought the house without consulting the agent. Now he realizes it wasn't a sensible thing to do. 13. Helen ate too much birthday cake. She was sick. 14. Heidi is going to eat the whole cake. She is sure to fall ill.

Ex. 11. Supply the correct mood of the verbs in brackets.

1. If I (not to be) what I am, things (to be) so simple.
 2. If you (to be allowed) to stay in Canada, what you (to do)?
 3. I can only tell you that, if anyone (to suggest) to me yesterday that O'Murphy was a traitor, I (to laugh) in his face.
 4. We are foolish and sentimental and melodramatic at twenty-five, but if we (not to be) perhaps we (to be) less wise at fifty.
 5. "If it (to be) an accident," said Sir Henry gently, "I do not think Mrs Bautre (to tell) us this story."
 6. I'm no doctor. If I (to be), do you think I (to waste) five dollars on you?
 7. If I (to be) you I (to do) my hair rather differently.
 8. I (not to mind) if he (to say) my pictures were bad, but he said nothing.
 9. After all, if he (to have) any talent I (to be) the first to encourage him.
 10. I (not to go) if you (not to say) you'd come with me.
 11. How it (to be) if I (to drop) around this evening?
 12. If only I (to feel) that somebody wanted me, that I was of use to somebody, I (to become) a different person.
 13. Your manners are all right. I (not to bring) you here if they (not to be). Don't be uneasy.
 14. If you (to let) me have my way before there (to be) no cause for our trouble tonight.
 15. If I (to be) twenty-seven again I suppose I (to be) as big a fool as I was then.
 16. Paul believed that his mother never (to say) the things she did if she (to know) that Paul could hear her.

Ex. 12. Complete the following sentences using the required Oblique Mood.

1. If you had been at home 2. If I were not so busy
 3. She wouldn't have done it if 4. You wouldn't have fallen ill if... .
 5. If there were no oxygen in the air, 6. If he had sent a telegram
 7. The watch wouldn't have stopped if 8. If it were not raining
 9. If you know what to do, 10. If I had known everything
 11. If he was late this morning again, 12. I'd have got there long ago if
 13. He would study much better if 14. Had I known how dangerous this journey was,
 15. If we knew him better 16. The child wouldn't be crying if
 17. If you had managed to escape 18. If you pay your money right now,
 19. If I had known this was so difficult, 20. If the campers had put up the tents accurately,... .
 21. If Mary had not been idle all this time, now... . 22. If the child eats too much,
 23. If I were King, 24. Napoleon

would have taken England, 25. A student soon forgets what he has learned, unless

Ex. 13. Use the correct mood of the verbs in brackets.

1. It (be) nice if our lives (be) like VCRs! 2. If the storm not (rage) so furiously last night, many trees not (break). 3. I (go) and (live) in the tropics if only I (can). 4. What we (do) if television not (invent)? 5. If the laws of nature not (break), the situation (be) different. 6. Australia (be) a delightful country to live in if it not (be) so far. 7. He not (catch) a cold if he not (drink) so much cold beer in the pub yesterday. 8. If I (live) long enough, I (can) do so many great things! 9. If I not (pay) all my bills before leaving the hotel, I not (be) penniless now. 10. If the fellow not (leave) the city, the police (arrest) him. 11. If Mel not (be) so light-minded, Hilda not (leave) him! 12. If the case not (be) so interesting, the inspector not (take) it up. 13. If we (know) how dangerous the expedition was, we (refuse). 14. Ratchel (pass) the interview on Friday if she (know) a second foreign language. 15. She (wear) this frock tonight if she not (put on) so much weight lately.

Ex. 14. Translate into English.

1. – Будь она моей сестрой, я бы нежно ее любила. – Правда? 2. Если бы она умела хорошо готовить, то ее муж был бы счастлив. 3. Если бы я жил в Африке, то ел бы одни фрукты: бананы, апельсины, киви. 4. Будь он более энергичным, то давно мог бы сделать отличную карьеру. 5. Мы были бы очень признательны, если бы вы извинились. 6. Если ты будешь стирать свою майку в горячей воде, то она сядет и полиняет. 7. Розы стояли бы гораздо дольше, если бы ты добавила в воду две столовые ложки сахара. 8. Если бы она носила короткие юбки, то выглядела бы моложе. 9. Если бы ему были нужны деньги, то он мог бы обратиться к нам. 10. Не будь дело таким серьезным, Давид не нанял бы частного сыщика. 11. Когда она узнает результат, то не поверит, что ей так повезло. 12. Если бы преступник оставил следы, детектив сумел бы найти его намного раньше. 13. Если все пойдет нормально, то мебель доставят сегодня. 14. Если бы они не перепутали адрес, то мебель доставили бы неделю назад.

Ex. 15. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Если бы я не знал его так хорошо, я бы не поверил тому, что он мне только что рассказал. 2. Мы все были бы рады,

если бы он имел успех на завтрашнем вечере. 3. Ты бы не разбил вазу, если бы был осторожнее. 4. Если бы ты положила книгу на место, она была бы сейчас здесь. 5. Если бы они начали эту работу сразу, они смогли бы закончить ее вовремя. 6. Я бы давно ей написала, если бы знала адрес. 7. Если бы сейчас было потеплее, я надела бы новое летнее пальто. 8. Будь я тогда там сама, я бы уладила это дело. 9. Если бы вы были внимательнее на прошлом уроке, вы бы сейчас лучше знали материал. 10. Я бы не бранила тебя, знай я тогда то, что ты говоришь мне сейчас. 11. Где бы ты меня ждал, если бы мы условились встретиться? 12. Если бы он не был болен тогда, он мог бы оказаться в гораздо большей опасности. 13. Кто знает, как бы он поступил, если бы услышал об этом раньше? 14. Я бы давно ответила на твой вопрос, если бы могла. 15. Все были бы рады, если бы вы зашли к нам еще раз до вашего отъезда. 16. Вы бы чувствовали себя лучше, если бы больше гуляли.

Ex. 16. Change the type of condition in the following sentences by making the condition problematic, unreal in the present or future, unreal in the past (give three variants in each case).

MODEL:

1) Real condition

If I see her, I'll be very glad.

Если я увижу ее, я буду очень рада.

2) Problematic condition

If I should see her, I'll be very glad.

Если я все же увижу ее, я буду очень рада.

3) Unreal condition

a) Present– Future

If I saw her, I should be very glad.

Если бы я увидела ее, я была бы очень рада.

b) Past

If I had seen her, I should have been very glad.

Если бы я ее увидела, я была бы очень рада.

1. If he is still here, I shall introduce you. 2. If nobody objects, we shall discuss it first. 3. If you want to go, it can be arranged. 4. If she refuses to act, we shall have to take some steps to stop it. 5. If she learns about it, she will be offended. 6. If he is not here by

six, I shall go. 7. If you insist on it, we shall certainly not stop you. 8. If it starts raining later in the day, we shall play indoor games. 9. If I am through before you are, I'll wait for you downstairs. 10. If they like your poems, they'll publish them.

Ex. 17. Translate into English.

1. Конечно, он не получил письма, иначе он пришел бы. Он был бы уже здесь. 2. Суп был бы прекрасный, если б ты положила меньше соли. 3. Он жестокий человек, и просить его о помощи было бы бесполезно. 4. Пошли! Ждать дольше было бы глупо. 5. Лучше оставайтесь здесь до утра. 6. Ах, если бы дождь перестал! 7. Если все же меня не будет дома, когда ты придешь, попроси соседей дать тебе ключ. 8. Она была хороша в этой роли, но ее сестра была бы лучше. 9. Ах, если бы я тогда знала об этом! Я бы никогда не согласилась! 10. Я бы предпочла остаться дома. 11. По-моему, ей лучше сегодня салата не есть. 12. Жаль, что мама не смогла приехать. Ей бы тут понравилось. 13. Делай, как хочешь. Я бы ее не приглашала. 14. Что бы ты сделала на моем месте? 15. Если б не ветер, день был бы чудесный! 16. Может быть, вы лучше сейчас пообедаете? 17. Даже если бы он не помог мне, я кончил бы все вовремя. 18. Если бы не орфография, сочинение было бы неплохим. 19. Она не видит нас, иначе она бы поздоровалась. 20. Я бы не стала с ним спорить. По-моему, он был прав. 21. Лучше купи немного сыра и масла по дороге домой. 22. Я не хочу обедать, я бы лучше взяла бутерброд и чашку кофе. 23. Конечно, он хочет там работать, иначе он не согласился бы туда ехать. 24. Если бы не туфли, которые очень жали, я бы чудесно провела время. 25. Вот вы бы, например, так поступили?

4. НЕЛИЧНЫЕ ФОРМЫ ГЛАГОЛА /

NON-FINITE FORMS OF THE VERBS

There are four non-finite forms of the verb in English: **the infinitive** (to take), **the gerund** (taking), **participle I** (taking), **participle II** (taken). These forms possess some verbal and some non-verbal features. The main verbal feature of the infinitive and partici-

ples I and II is that it can be used as part of analytical verbal forms (is standing, is built, have come, will do, etc.) Lexically non-finites do not differ from finite forms. Grammatically the difference between the two types of forms lies in the fact that non-finites may denote a secondary action or a process related to that expressed by the finite verb.

Non-finites possess the verb categories of voice, perfect, and aspect. They lack the categories of person, number, mood, and tense.

4.1. Инфинитив / Infinitive

THE INFINITIVE

The infinitive is a verbal form (a non-finite verb form) which consists of the base form of the verb with the particle "to": to do; to go; to play; to take; to break; to find.

Properties and functions of the infinitive

The infinitive has some properties of the verb. The infinitive names an action (to drive a car) or state (to be sick), but cannot show person, number, or mood. The infinitive has active and passive forms (to take; to be taken) and can express voice and time, though in a rather limited way.

Form of the Infinitive	Active	Passive
<p><u>Indefinite</u> denotes an action simultaneous with the action expressed by the finite verb, so it may refer to the present, past and future</p>	<p>I am (was/will be) pleased <u>to meet</u> you.</p>	<p>I am (was/will be) pleased <u>to be met.</u></p>
<p><u>Continuous</u> denotes an action simultaneous with that expressed by the finite verb; it is an action in <u>progress</u></p>	<p>Where is Bob? He must <u>be working</u> in the Lab now. He seems <u>to be sleeping.</u></p>	<p>—</p>

<p><u>Perfect</u> denotes an action prior to dial expressed by the finite verb.</p>	<p>I'm sorry <u>to have missed</u> the party.</p>	<p>Nothing seems <u>to have been forgotten</u>.</p>
<p><u>Perfect Continuous</u> denotes an action which lasted a certain time before the action of the finite verb</p>	<p>He seems <u>to have been working</u> in the lab since morning.</p>	<p>—</p>

The infinitive can have a direct object (He plans to visit a museum) or a prepositional object (He wants to know about it) and can be modified by an adverb (He tried to walk slowly).

The infinitive can be part of the compound verbal predicate (She can drive; We must go) or part of the compound nominal predicate (His aim is to help you). The infinitive alone, without another verb, is generally not used as the predicate.

The infinitive has some properties of the noun and can be in the function of the subject (To quit now would be a mistake) or of an object (He likes to sing; She asked me to wait). The infinitive can be in the function of an attribute (He has no desire to see them).

The infinitive can function as an adverbial modifier of purpose (He came here to study) or as an adverbial modifier of consequence (He was too tired to go to the cinema).

The use of the Infinitive without the Particle to (Bare Infinitive)

<p>Auxiliary verbs: I Don't like Jogging. They Will see you to-morrow.</p>	<p>Modal verbs: (except ought to, have to, be to) You can't play football in the street. I must go there to-morrow. You needn't worry.</p>	<p>Modal expression: You had better I would rather would sooner She 'd sooner die than come back You had better come at once.</p>
---	--	---

<p>Verbs of sense perception: (see, watch, observe, notice, hear, feel, etc.) I felt somebody touch me. He heard the door close.</p>	<p>Verbs of inducement: (let, make, have, bid) What makes you think so? Let me help you.</p>	<p>Phrases with but: cannot but, do anything but do nothing but couldn't but Did you do anything but ask questions? Why-not sentences: Why not begin at once?</p>
---	---	--

Verbs followed by Infinitive only

agree	permit	fail	swear
decide	refuse	learn	choose
hope	appear	plan	force
order	encourage	seem	offer
promise	invite	ask	pretend
allow	persuade	forbid	warn
demand	remind	manage	
instruct	arrange	prepare	

He decided to study at university. We hoped to find it. Did he seem to like it? They allowed me to smoke. I ordered my son to send it.

The expressions followed by infinitive

be about	turn out
make up one's mind	set out
do one's best	

He was about to start. I did my best to learn it. I haven't made up my mind to start yet. It turned out to be your car. We set out to cut the tree.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Open the brackets and use the Infinitive in the required form.

1 The boy pretended (to listen) to the music. 2. The spaceship (to launch) at 9 o'clock tomorrow. 3. He hopes (to give) some assistance. 4. She is too weak after his illness (to work) at such a late hour. 5. He was very sorry (to miss) so many lessons just before the exam. 6. She waited while Johnson went round (to shake) hands with everyone. 7. That turned out (to be) axe. 8. He seemed (to gain) all he wanted. 9. Where's Miss Stone? - She seems (to work) in the reference library. 10. She seemed (to write) or (to draw). 11. I'm so glad (to be) at the recital, as it was simply magnificent. 12. I'm happy (to be) of some help to you. 13. They have a lot of aids (to help) them, such as tape-recorders and films. 14. Although she seemed (to listen) to Doreen, only half of her mind heard what she was saying. 15. Poirot seemed (to debate) the matter in his mind.

Ex. 2. Insert the particle "to" before the Infinitive where required:

1. Fall made him ... clench his hands and... tremble and... repeat sentences to himself. 2. She watched Theodora's hands...move as if they were about.. reach out and... touch something. 3. Before we were married you promised to let me .. go if our marriage was not success. 4. "Thanks", Andrew answered, I'd rather ... see the cases myself. 5. He saw him .. turn to Irene and say something. 6. This noise made everyone ... run out of the house. 7. Old Jolyon said simply. ` I suppose I oughtn't... have come here, Jo. 8. I surely would like to hear you . .. play that song. 9. You would hardly .. believe it. 10. He'd better not ... let me ... catch sight of him. 11. I didn't see anyone, but I did better the front door bell ... ring twice. 12. "You should better ... shut up the stop" she said. 13. She seemed... be making very lame excuses and James did not look at her. 14. Nobody saw Judy ... study at nights no matter how many written reviews were .. come in the morning. She was known ... read just plain books. 15.The room made him .. feel embarrassed. 16. When I heard him ... go downstairs I went down after him. 17. Paul fell his heart... melt. 18. Suddenly he saw her... rise and .. turn away. 19. The colonel ordered everyone ... wear a gas mask. 20. I forced him ... eat.,and after luncheon I induced him ... lie down.

Ex. 3. Recast the following sentences so as to use a bare Infinitive. Mind the infinitive without the particle "to".

Model: I advise you to stay here for the night. —

You had better stay here for the night

1. I advise you to go there at once.
2. You shouldn't tell lies.
3. We think you should meet her at the station.
4. You ought to see your dentist.
5. I advise you to wear warm coat during spring.
6. I warned him not to go there (I told him...).
7. You shouldn't eat these apples. They are not ripe yet.
8. It would be a good thing if you helped me.
9. The doctor advised me to stay in bed.

Model: I prefer to go on foot — I would rather go on foot.

I should prefer you to go on foot. — I d rather you went on foot.

1. I prefer to go by taxi.
2. I prefer not to go by taxi.
3. I should prefer you go by taxi.
4. She says she prefers to wear flat shoes.
5. We should prefer to tell him now.
6. Would you prefer to call me Bob or Robert?
7. Would you like to read a book or watch television?

THE OBJECTIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION

In the objective with the infinitive construction the infinitive (usually an infinitive phrase) is in predicate relation to a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case (hence the name of the construction). The whole construction forms a complex object of some verbs. It is rendered in Russian by an object clause.

The objective with the infinitive construction is used in the following cases:

1. After verbs of **sense perception (to see, to hear, to feel, to watch, to observe, to notice and some others)**. In this case the only possible form of the infinitive is the non – perfect common aspect active voice form, used without the particle to:

No one has ever heard her cry. I paused a moment and watched the tram-car stop.

The verb **to listen to**, though not a verb of sense perception, is used in the same way, with a bare infinitive: *He was listening attentively to the chairman speak.*

If the verb **to see** or **to notice** is used with the meaning to realize, or the verb **to hear** with the meaning to learn, the objective with the infinitive construction cannot be used. Here only subordinate object clause is possible: *I saw that he did not know anything. I hear you have dropped the idea of leaving him. He only had time to notice that the girl was unusually pretty. Я видел (понимал), что он ничего*

не знает. Я слышала (узнала), что ты отказалась от мысли уйти от него. Он только успел заметить (осознать), что девушка была необычайно хорошенькой.

2. After verbs of **mental activity (to think, to believe, to consider, to expect, to understand, to suppose, to find and some others)**. Here the infinitive is used in any form, though the non-perfect forms are the most frequent (always with the particle to).

I know him to be an honest man. She believed him to have left for San Francisco. I believed her to be knitting in the next room. I should expect my devoted friend to be devoted to me.

3. After verbs of **emotion (to like, to love, to hate, to dislike and some others)**. Here non-perfect, common aspect forms of the "to"- infinitive are the most usual.

I always liked him to sing. She hated her son to be separated from her. I'd love you to come with me too. I hated him to have been sent away.

4. After verbs of **wish and intention (to want, to wish, to desire, to intend, to mean and some others)**. After these verbs only non-perfect common aspect forms of the infinitive with the particle to are used: *He only wished you to be near him. I don't want him to be punished.*

5. After verbs of **declaring (to declare, to pronounce):** *I declare you to be out of your mind. He reported the boat to have been seen not far away.*

6. After verbs of **inducement (to have, to make, to get, to order, to tell, to ask, etc.)** of which the first two take a bare infinitive. In the construction some of them acquire a different meaning: make - заставить, get - добиться, have - заставить (сказать, чтобы ...) *I can't get him to do it properly. She made me obey her.*

7. The objective with the infinitive construction also occurs after certain verbs requiring a prepositional object, for example **to count (up)on, to rely (up) on, to look for, to listen to, to wait for:** *I rely on you to come in time. Can't I count upon you to help me?*

THE SUBJECTIVE INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION

It is a construction in which the infinitive is in predicate relation to a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the Nominative case.

Практическая грамматика первого иностранного языка

1. It is used with the following verbs in the Passive Voice

a) Verbs denoting **sense perception**:

He was never seen to leave the house again.

b) Verbs denoting **mental activity** :

He is considered to be a great man.

You are supposed to have finished the work.

c) With the verb **to make**:

He was made to confess.

d) With the verbs **to say, to report**:

The competition was reported to be postponed.

2. The subjective Infinitive construction is used with the verbs **to seem, to appear, to happen, to chance, to prove, to turn out**.

I happened to meet her again some time later.

She seemed to have completely forgotten about her promise.

3. The Subjective Infinitive construction is used with the word-groups **to be likely, to be sure, to be certain**: *They are not likely to come. They are sure to marry.*

But a subordinate clause is used with the word-group **to be unlikely**:

It is unlikely that they will come today.

THE FOR-TO-INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION

It is a construction in which the Infinitive is in predicate relation to a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case preceded by the preposition *for*

The construction can have different functions in the sentence.

*It will be very pleasant **for us to spend** a week in England. –*

Нам будет очень приятно провести неделю в Англии.

*There was nothing else **for me to say**. –* Мне больше нечего было сказать.

*It is **for you to decide**. –* Вам решать.

*Here are some books **for you to read**. –* Вот несколько книг для вашего чтения (вам почитать).

Situational verbs	Complex Object	Complex Subject
to want, to wish, to like	I wanted him to be invited here – Я хотел, чтобы его пригласили сюда	Not used

to believe; to expect, to declare, to suppose	I believe him to be a very good person – Я полагаю, что он очень хороший человек. I expected her to arrive on time – Я ожидал, что она придет вовремя	He is believed to be a very good person – Полагают, что он очень хороший человек. She was expected to arrive on time – Ожидали, что она придет вовремя
to see, to notice, to feel	We heard him knock at the door – Мы слышали, как он постучал в дверь	He was heard to knock at the door – Слышали, что он постучал в дверь
to ask, to allow, to order	He asked for the letter to be sent off immediately – Он попросил, чтобы письмо было отправлено немедленно.	He was asked to send the letter – Его попросили отправить письмо.
make, let	The customs officer made Sally open her bag – Сотрудник таможни заставил Салли открыть свою сумку	Sally was made to open her bag – Салли заставили открыть свою сумку
to seem, to appear, to prove, to happen	Not used	He seems to know English well – Кажется, он хорошо знает английский язык
to be + likely, unlikely, certain	Not used	He is likely to know her address – Он, вероятно, знает ее адрес

EXERCISES

Ex. 4. Choose the correct option. Translate the sentences.

- The Greeks seem *to have known* / *to have been known* papyrus as early as the beginning of the 5th century BC.
- A Scottish sailor, Alexander Selkirk, was marooned (был высажен на необитаемом острове) on one of the islands between 1704 and 1709, and his experiences are supposed *to have inspired* / *to be inspired* the novel *Robinson Crusoe*, by Daniel Defoe.
- Let her do / to do it herself. She is considered to be / being a careful researcher and can't stand being helped.
- You look rather tired. You are unlikely *to have finished* / *to finish* the work in time. You had better *going* /

go home now. 5. The pre-1914 gold standard is considered by many *to be / to have been* the golden age of international monetary arrangements at the beginning of the 20th century. 6. He wants the book *to return / to be returned* tomorrow. 7. He was made *to leave / leave* the town and did not want to spend the last money on renting an apartment in the suburbs. 8. If the manufacturer wants his goods *to sell / to be sold*, he must maintain quality.

Ex. 5. Choose the correct option. Translate the sentences with Complex Subject.

1. Говорят, что это здание было построено в 15 веке.
2. Предполагают, что собрание закончится в 10 часов.
3. Никак не ожидали, что холодная погода наступит так рано.
4. Из трех сестер Бронте Шарлотта считается наиболее талантливой.
5. Как известно, английская писательница Войнич жила в течение нескольких лет в Петербурге и изучала русскую литературу.
6. Считают, что русская литература оказала влияние на ее творчество.
7. Известно, что римляне построили на Британских островах хорошие дороги.
8. Полагают, что поэма «Беовульф» была написана в 15 веке.
9. Вальтер Скотт считается создателем исторического романа.
10. Сообщают, что экспедиция достигла места назначения.
11. Полагают, что они знают об этом больше, чем хотят показать.
12. Говорят, что он работает над своим изобретением уже несколько лет.
13. Говорят, что эта статья переведена на все языки мира.
14. Ожидают, что они выиграют этот матч.

Ex. 6. How can you finish these sentences?

1. It would be useful for them to know...
2. It is advisable for him to find out...
3. It is necessary for us to check...

4.2. Герундий / Gerund

THE GERUND

The Gerund is a non-finite form which has developed from a verbal noun. It is formed by adding the suffix **-ing** to the stem of the verb. It has double nature combining nominal and verbal properties.

The Gerund has the following **nominal** characteristics:

1. The Gerund can be used in the function of subject, object, predicative.

e.g. Trying to get a job at this time of the year was useless.

She hates smoking. One of her duties was feeding the landlady's cats.

2. The Gerund can be preceded by a preposition.

e.g. I can't defend this case without telling the truth.

3. The Gerund can be modified by a noun in the genitive case or by a possessive pronoun. *My (my uncle's) coming to work for him, was the subject of their conversation.*

The Gerund has the following **verbal** characteristics:

1. The Gerund of transitive verbs can take a direct object.

e.g. I know my father would like taking David in from the rain.

2. The Gerund can be nullified by an adverb.

e.g. Without really reading it she put the letter aside.

The Gerund has tense distinctions which are relative, not absolute.

The **Indefinite Gerund** denotes an action **simultaneous** with - that of the finite verb and may refer to the Present, Past or Future.

e.g. You couldn't blame Abby for being nervous.

You can't blame her for being nervous. Nobody will blame her for being nervous: it is natural.

The **Perfect Gerund** denotes an action which is **prior** to that of the finite verb.

e.g. She denied having ever been there.

After the verbs *to remember, to excuse, to forgive, to thank* and after the prepositions *on, upon, after, without* the **Indefinite Gerund** is used to denote a **prior** action in most cases.

e.g. I remember him doing the same for me as a child. On seeing the child she smiled.

Практическая грамматика первого иностранного языка

The **Indefinite Gerund** is used to denote a **prior** action, when the context makes the meaning of priority clear.

e.g. Didn't they tell you about him killing his wife and committing suicide?

4. The Gerund of transitive verbs has voice distinctions. After the verbs to want, to need, to deserve, to require and the adjective worth the active form of the Gerund is used though it is passive in meaning.

e.g. To do so may result in being torn to pieces later on. The rest of her life was going to be worth living.

The forms of the Gerund

	<u>Active</u>	<u>Passive</u>
<u>Indefinite</u>	<u>doing</u>	<u>being done</u>
<u>Perfect</u>	<u>having done</u>	<u>having been</u>

Note: Subjective (non-transitive) verbs have only two forms of the Gerund. They have no passive forms.

Active gerund	Passive gerund
I hate interrupting people	I hate being interrupted
On telling me the time, he turned away	On being told some impossible hour, he turned away
I am not used to talking in that way	I am not used to being talked to in that way
He entered without having knocked at the door	The door opened without having been knocked on

The perfect passive gerund is very rarely used.

There are some verbs (to need, to want, to require, to deserve) and the adjective worth which are followed by an active gerund with passive meaning.

Your hair needs cutting.

This house wants painting.

Your suggestion is worth talking over.

Gerund	Finite verb
I remember your telling me the story five years ago	You told me the story five years ago

Практическая грамматика первого иностранного языка

John dreams of becoming a sailor	John became a sailor
We enjoyed walking slowly along the silent streets	We walked slowly along the silent streets
I never argue about trifles	It's no use arguing about trifles
We hope he will be able to join us	There is some chance of his being able to join us

The verbs followed by gerund only

admit	consider	delay	dislike
enjoy	escape	excuse	finish
forgive	imagine	insist	keep
mind	miss	practise	prevent
risk	suggest	under-	
		stand	

She admitted telling him. Did you escape writing the test? I don't want to risk coming late.

Excuse, forgive and prevent are used with three different forms. Excuse my being late. Excuse me being late. Excuse me for being late.

The expressions followed by gerund

stand	be against	to be interested in	can't
up	can't help	care for	give
worth	look forward	it's no use/good	it's

I can't stand waiting for hours. I can't help laughing. Don't give up studying this chapter. It's no use working so late. Is the film worth seeing?

GERUND OR INFINITIVE

The verbs followed by infinitives and gerunds.

A. With the same meaning.

begin	it requires	it needs
-------	-------------	----------

Практическая грамматика первого иностранного языка

can't bear	start	it wants
allow	intend	continue
recommend	permit	advise

Did you continue driving/to drive? He can't bear smoking/to smoke.

If the verbs **advise, allow, permit, recommend** are used **with the indirect object**, they are followed by **infinitive**. If not, gerund must be used.

They didn't allow us to eat there. They didn't allow eating there. She recommended John to read this book. She recommended reading this book.

After the expressions **it needs/requires/wants gerund** is more common than infinitive.

The car needs washing/to be washed. The flower wants watering/to be watered.

B. The verbs that have a different meaning with infinitive or gerund.

Remember

I remember watching the match. It was fantastic. We use gerund to talk about earlier actions.

I remembered to watch the match. And so I sat down and switched on the TV. The infinitive is used to talk about following actions.

Try

I tried calling him because I needed to test my new mobile phone. I made an experiment with my mobile.

I tried to call him because I needed to meet him. I made an attempt to get in touch with him.

Love/like/hate/prefer

In the conditional tense these verbs are used with the infinitive. *I'd like to drive. I'd love to drive. I'd hate to drive. I'd prefer to drive.*

In other tenses they are used with infinitives or gerunds, but both forms have a slightly different meaning. *I like driving. I love driving. I hate driving. I prefer driving. I like to drive. I love to drive. I hate to drive. I prefer to drive.*

Compare: *I like going to the cinema.* (I enjoy it.) *I like to go to the dentist twice a year.* (I don't enjoy it, but I go there, because it is good for my health.) *I hate ironing.* (It is my least favourite activity. I never enjoy it.) *I hate to iron on Sundays.* (I don't mind ironing, but not on Sundays.)

Go on

Практическая грамматика первого иностранного языка

After dinner he went on showing us his photos. The gerund is used when we want to say that a previous activity continues. *He gave us a lecture on the Greek history. And then he went on to show us his photos from Greece.* The infinitive is used when we want to describe an activity that follows a previous action and is somehow connected to it.

Stop

I stopped smoking. This means that I do not smoke anymore.

I stopped to smoke. I made a pause to have a cigarette.

Mean

I didn't mean to hurt you. I say that I didn't do it on purpose. *We can go to Spain. But it means spending more money.* In this sentence we describe the consequences.

Be afraid

She was afraid of getting married. Any marriage is something that frightens her.

She was afraid to marry Bill. She doesn't mind getting married, but the marriage with Bill frightens her.

I'm sorry

I'm sorry for telling you. I apologize for a previous action.

I'm sorry to tell you that your flight will be delayed. I apologize for something that will happen. The infinitive with this expression can also mean sorrow. *I'm sorry to hear that your wife is ill.*

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Choose the correct form.

1. We are surprised at his not (*coming, having come*) yesterday. 2. The teacher is sure of their (*passing, having passed*) the exam well tomorrow. 3. We rely on your (*doing, having done*) the work properly next week. 4. She objected to his (*being sent, having been sent*) there. 5. They insist on (*telling, being told*) about it. 6. He denies my (*seeing, having seen*) him yesterday. 7. They rely on your (*informing, having informed*) everybody tomorrow. 8. Nobody objects to the plan (*having been discussed, being discussed*) at the next meeting. 9. They insisted on the work (*doing, being done*) within this week. 10. He hates (*being disturbed, disturbing*) people.

Ex. 2. Decide what prepositions are missing in the gaps. Consult the dictionary if necessary.

1. The success of your business depends much ... your knowing how to manage your money. 2. Colleges are interested ... recruiting mature students. 3. Without advertising there is no use ... creating your product. 4. The boss insisted ... his employees raising their educational level. 5. They were afraid ... failing their partners. 6. Jules Vern succeeded ... predicting moon journeys in his science fiction novels. 7. What would you say ... increasing sales in this region? 8. We object ... signing the contract on these terms.

Ex. 3. Put the verbs in brackets into the gerund.

1. He gave up (gamble). 2. Try to avoid (make) him angry. 3. Stop (argue) and start (work). 4. The children prefer (watch) TV to (read). 5. I am against (make) any complaints. 6. It's no use (cry) over spilt milk. {proverb}. 7. I suggest (hold) another meeting next week. 8. He finished (speak) and sat down. 9. He was fined for (drive) without lights. 10. It is difficult to get used to (eat) with chopsticks. 11. If you can't turn the key try (put) some oil in the lock. 12. He lost no time in (get) down to work. 13. You can't make an omelette without (break) eggs. (proverb). 14. We are looking forward to (read) your new book. 15. They escaped by (slide) down ropes made of blankets. 16. They don't allow (smoke) in here. 17. He is thinking of (leave) his job and (go) to America. 18. After (read) this article you will give up (smoke). 19. If you put your money into that business you risk (lose) every penny. 20. Imagine (live) with someone who never stops (talk). 21. Is there anything here worth (buy)? 22. He was accused of (leak) classified information to the press. 23. You'd better consult your lawyer before (decide) to buy the property. 24. I don't enjoy (go) to the dentist. 25. Would you mind (put) your pet snake somewhere else? 26. The hostages were rescued without a shot (be) fired. 27. By (work) day and night he succeeded in (finish) the job in time. 28. He has a scheme for (make) grass grow in winter. 29. I don't feel like (work); what about (go) to a disco instead? 30. Would you mind (write) your name and address on the back of the cheque? 31. If a thing is worth (do) at all it is worth (do) well. (proverb). 32. I hate (borrow) money. 33. He was furious at (be) mistaken for an escaped convict. 34. After (talk) for ten minutes I succeeded in (convince) him that there was no danger. 35. I remember (read) a review of that book and (think) I'd like to get. 36. As a result of (listen) at keyholes he learnt many facts which he no hesitation in (use) to his own advantage.

Ex. 4. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form (gerund or infinitive).

1. I am looking forward to (see) you. 2. He dreads (have) to retire. 3. I arranged (meet) them here. 4. He urged us (work) faster. 5. I wish (see) the manager. 6. It's no use (wait). 7. He warned her (not touch) the wire. 8. Don't forget (lock) the door before (go) to bed. 9. My mother told me (not speak) to anyone about it. 10. I can't understand her (behave) like that. 11. He tried (explain) but she refused (listen). 12. At dinner she annoyed me by (smoke) between the courses. 13. You are expected (know) the safety regulations of the college. 14. He decided (disguise) himself by (dress) as a woman. 15. I am prepared (wait) here all night if necessary. 16. Would you mind (show) me how (work) the lift? 17. After (walk) for three hours we stopped to let the others (catch with us). 18. I am beginning (understand) what you mean. 19. He was fined for (exceed) the speed limit. 20. The boys like (play) games but hate (do) lessons. 21. I regret (inform) you that your application has been refused. 22. I couldn't help (overhear) what you said. 23. Mrs Jones: I don't allow (smoke) in my drawing-room. Mrs Smith: I don't allow my family (smoke) at all. 24. He surprised us all by (go) away without (say) 'Good-bye'. 25. Please go on (write); I don't mind (wait). 26. He wore dark glasses (avoid) (be) recognized. 27. Before (give) evidence you must swear (speak) the truth. 28. I tried (persuade) him (agree) with your proposal. 29. Your windows need (clean); would you like me (do) them for you? 30. Would you mind (shut) the window? I hate (sit) in a draught. 31. I can't help (sneeze); I caught a cold yesterday from (sit) in a draught. 32. Do stop (talk): I am trying (finish) a letter. 33. His doctor advised him (give up) (jog). 34. My watch keeps (stop). ~ That's because you keep (forget) (wind) it. 35. Without (realize) it, he hindered us instead of (help) us. 36. People used (make) fire by (rub) two sticks together.

Ex. 5. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form (gerund or infinitive).

1. He hates (answer) the phone, and very often just lets it (ring). 2. If you go on (let) your dog (chase) cars he'll end by (be) run over. 3. I prefer (drive) to (be driven). 4. I advise you (start) (look) for a flat at once. 5. Would you mind (lend) me J5? I forgot (cash) a cheque. 6. (Lie) on this beach is much more pleasant than (sit) in the office. 7. She likes her children (go) to the dentist every six months.

8. By (neglect) (take) ordinary precautions he endangered the life of his crew. 9. An instructor is coming (show) us how (use) the aqua-lung. 10. I have no intention of (go) to that film; I couldn't bear (see) my favourite actress in such a dreadful part. 11. I suggest (telephone) the hospitals before (ask) the police (look) for him. 12. After (hear) the conditions I decided (not enter) for the competition. 13. Some people seem (have) a passion for (write) to the newspapers. 14. He expects me (answer) by return but I have no intention of (reply) at all. 15. I tried (explain) to him but he refused (listen) and went on (grumble). 16. By (offer) enormous wages he is persuading men (leave) their present jobs and (work) for him. 17. He postponed (make) a decision till it was too late (do) anything. 18. Imagine (have) (get up) at five a.m. every day! 19. Try (forget) it: it isn't worth (worry) about. 20. There is no point in (remain) in a dangerous place if you can't do anything (help) the people who have (stay) there. 21. The horse won't be well enough (run) in tomorrow's race. He doesn't seem (have recovered) from his long journey. 22. At first I enjoyed (listen) to him but after a while I got tired of (hear) the same story again and again. 23. It is usually easier (learn) a subject by (read) books than by (listen) to lectures. 24. It wouldn't be safe (start) down now; we'll have (wait) till the mist clears. 25. After (discuss) the matter for an hour the committee adjourned without (have reached) any decision. 26. It's not much use (have) a bicycle if you don't know how (ride) it. 27. He didn't dare (leave) the house because he was afraid of (meet) someone who might (recognize) him. 28. I distinctly remember (pay) him. I gave him J2. 29. Did you remember (give) him the key of the safe? ~ No, I didn't. I'll go and do it now. 30. Please forgive me for (interrupt) you but would you mind (repeat) that last sentence? 31. I know my hair wants (cut) but I never have time (go) to the hairdresser's. 32. He made a lot of money by (buy) tickets in advance and (sell) them for twice the price on the day of the match. 33. She rushed out of the room without (give) me a chance (explain). 34. He keeps (ask) me the time and I keep (tell) him (buy) himself a watch. 35. He has a theory that it is possible (tell) the time in daylight by (look) into a cat's eyes. 36. I'd hate (be) beside a volcano when it started (erupt).

After **like** it is sometimes possible to use either **gerund or infinitive**, but there tends to be a slight difference in implication.

like + gerund usually means '**enjoy**'; it also usually implies that the action is/was performed: *I like skating = I enjoy skating* (and do skate).

like + infinitive has more the meaning of '**approve of, like the idea or habit**'. In the affirmative it gives no indication as to whether the action is performed or not, and in the negative implies that it is not performed.

I didn't like saying it usually means I said it, unwillingly',

but *I didn't like to say it* usually means I didn't say it' (because it didn't seem right or sensible). The distinction, however, is not rigid. The above notes are, therefore, only guides which may safely be followed.

Ex. 6. Put the verbs in brackets into gerund or infinitive.

1. I used (ride) a lot but I haven't had a chance (do) any since (come) here. ~ I ride sometimes. Would you like (come) with me next time? 2. Most people prefer (spend) money to (earn) it. 3. I resented (be) unjustly accused and asked him (apologize). 4. It isn't good for children (eat) too many sweets. 5. I didn't feel like (work) so I suggested (spend) the day in the garden. 6. Why do you keep (look) back? Are you afraid of (be) followed? 7. Do you remember (post) the letter? ~ Yes, I do; I posted it in the letter-box near my gate. 8. Did you remember (lock) the door? ~ No, I didn't. I'd better (go) back and (do) it now. 9. You still have a lot (learn) if you'll forgive my (say) so. 10. It's no use (try) (interrupt) him. You'll have (wait) till he stops (talk). 11. I'm for (do) nothing till the police arrive. They don't like you (move) anything when a crime has been committed. 12. He didn't like (leave) the children alone in the house but he had no alternative as he had (go) out to work. 13. Why didn't you drink it?- I didn't like (drink) it as I didn't know what it was. 14. I'm very sorry for (be) late. It was good of you (wait) for me. 15. I keep (try) (make) mayonnaise but I never succeed. ~ Try (add) the yolk of a hard-boiled egg. 16. Do you feel like (go) to a film or would you rather (stay) at home? 17. She told me (look) through her correspondence and (take) out any letters that you had written her. I didn't like (look) through someone else's letters but I had (do) as she said. 18. He took to (get up) early and (walk) noisily about the house. 19. I liked (listen) to folk music much better than (listen) to pop. 20. The car began (make) an extraordinary noise so I stopped (see) what it was. 21. You'll never regret (do) a kind action. 22. He decided (put) broken glass on top of

his wall (prevent) boys (climb) over it. 23. He annoyed me very much by (take) the piece of cake that I was keeping (eat) after my supper. 24. He kept (ring) up and (ask) for an explanation and she didn't know what (do) about him. 25. We got tired of (wait) for the weather (clear) and finally decided (set) out in the rain. 26. He made me (repeat) his instructions (make) sure that I understood what I was (do) after he had gone. 27. I suggest (leave) the car here and (send) a breakdown van (tow) it to the garage. 28. She apologized for (borrow) my sewing-machine without (ask) permission and promised never (do) it again. 29. I didn't mean (offend) anyone but somehow I succeeded in (annoy) them all. 30. She claimed (be able) (tell) the future by (gaze) into her crystal ball. 31. He never thinks of (get) out of your way; he expects you (walk) round him. 32. You don't need (ask) his permission every time you want (leave) the room. 33. The police accused him of (set) fire to the building but he denied (have been) in the area on the night of the fire. 34. I left my door open. Why didn't you walk in? ~ I didn't like (go) in when you weren't there. 35. It's much better (go) to a hairdresser than (try) (save) time by (cut) your own hair. 36. I'd rather (earn) my living by (scrub) floors than (make) money by (blackmail) people.

4.3. Причастие / Participle

The participle is a non-finite form of the verb which has verbal and adjectival or adverbial features.

English verbs have two participles: **the present participle** (typing, writing) and **the past participle** (typed, written).

Participles have some qualities of verbs and are used in the formation of the continuous, perfect and perfect continuous tenses (he is typing; he has written a letter).

Participles have some qualities of adjectives and are used as attributes in a sentence (a smiling girl; surprised faces).

Participles are also used in the function of adverbial modifiers (he opened the door, smiling; surprised, he didn't know what to say).

A participle construction, that is, a participle together with the words closely connected with it, can function as an attribute (the girl sitting at the table) or as an adverbial modifier (standing by the window, she watched the birds). Participle constructions (participial constructions) are usually called "participial phrases" or "participial clauses" in English grammar materials.

Participle I

The present participle is formed by adding "**ing**" to the base form of the verb: flying, playing, running, sleeping, working.

Participle I has four forms:

	Active	Passive
Indefinite	doing	being done
Perfect	having done	having been done

The tense distinctions of Participle I are not absolute; they are relative. Indefinite forms of Participle I denote actions simultaneous with those expressed by the finite verbs or actions referring to no particular time.

Perfect forms of Participle I denote actions prior to those expressed by the finite verbs.

Participle I of transitive verbs has active and passive forms to denote the meaning of the active and the passive voice.

Participle II

Regular verbs form the past participle by adding "**ed**" to the base form of the verb: moved, played, stopped, typed.

Irregular verbs form the past participle mostly by changing the root of the word: broken, flown, read, sold, taken, written.

Participle II has only one form. It has no tense or voice distinctions. Only Participle II of transitive verbs and of verbs denoting passing into a new state can be used in an independent function in a sentence. Participle II of transitive verbs has a passive meaning.

The adjectival and adverbial features of the Participle are manifested in the syntactic functions typical of the Adjective and of the Adverb.

The verbal features of the Participle are manifested in the forms of Participle I having tense and voice distinctions. Besides, Participle I of transitive verbs can take a direct object and both Participles can be modified.

SYNTACTIC FUNCTIONS OF PARTICIPLE I

Практическая грамматика первого иностранного языка

Participles and participial phrases can perform the following syntactic functions:

1) The function of an attribute.

As an attribute Participle I denotes a feature belonging to the object at the present time or simultaneous to the action denoted by the finite verb form or some permanent feature.

That's why Participle I Indefinite is used.

E.g. There's a dinner at the White House Friday night honouring the new Canadian Prime Minister. But the child in this picture clearly had trusted the man holding her.

Participle I Indefinite Passive is seldom used as an attribute as Participle II of transitive verbs has passive meaning.

The perfect forms of Participle I are not used in this function. An attributive subordinate clause is used to denote a feature which belonged to the object prior to the action of the finite verb.

E.g. ...she had absolutely no background - a father who drank himself to death when she was six, a mother content among the pots and pans...

Attributes expressed by Participle I can be both in pre - position and in post - position to a modified word. As a rule, a participle is in pre - position when it doesn't have accompanying words and it is in post - position when it has accompanying words such as an object or an adverbial modifier.

E.g. She was like a rising star.

There'll be reports waiting for us at home.

There are participles, which due to their lexical meaning can modify a limited number of nouns. They are participles denoting states or qualities which cannot be permanent. That's why it is preferable to say "a smiling face" than " a smiling person". However, these participles can be used as attributes denoting a quality limited in time.

E.g. She was looking at the smiling person in the picture, remembering the day when the picture was taken.

2) The function of an adverbial modifier:

a) **of time**

With the verbs of sense perception and motion Participle I Perfect is not used in this function. Participle I Indefinite is used even when priority is meant.

E.g. Then, sitting down, she lit a cigarette.

Практическая грамматика первого иностранного языка

To express the simultaneity of the actions denoted by Participle I and the finite verb the conjunctions when and while can be used.

Participle I Indefinite of the verb "to be" is not used in this function and is replaced by the phrases of the type: When a child, When in London, or by the subordinate clause of time.

E.g. When at Rome, do as Romans do.

b) **of cause**

All the forms of Participle I can be used.

E.g. He approached, looking first for the key which always hung there, but not seeing it, looked at the lock.

c) **of manner and attendant circumstances**

As a rule, Participle I Indefinite is used.

E.g. She dressed by the light of the stars, taking the first things that came to hand. He sat there smiling to show that he was pleased...

d) **of comparison**

The conjunction as if or as though is used to introduce Participle I in this function.

E.g. He pronounced the words slowly, as if carefully selecting them.

3) The function of a predicative.

E.g. She was so happy, so enjoying herself.

It didn't sound promising, but she thanked the clerk all the same.

4) The function of the parentheses.

In this case a participial phrase is used.

E.g. Frankly speaking, it is not exactly what I wanted.

Besides, Participle I can be used as a part of a complex object and a complex subject and in predicative constructions performing various syntactic functions.

E. g. We saw him writing this letter.

He was seen writing this letter.

SYNTACTIC FUNCTIONS OF PARTICIPLE II

1) The function of an attribute.

Participle II as an attribute can be in pre-position and in post-position to the word it modifies. If it has accompanying words it is mostly used in postposition.

Практическая грамматика первого иностранного языка

E.g. The unopened letter was from my father.

Kitty, unmoved, wondered what exactly his wife had told him.

Participle II has no tense distinctions, so it is used when time correlation is either irrelevant or is expressed by other means. To show time correlation a subordinate clause is to be used.

E.g. Twenty-four hours later, she left the town with a certified check from my father for ten thousand dollars and her bags filled with the wardrobe the town people had donated.

Participle II of transitive verbs has passive meaning, however not necessarily.

E.g. a married man, a retired teacher.

There are some cases when Participle I and Participle II practically show no difference.

E.g. A spy, hidden in the bushes, kept watch on the house.

A spy, hiding in the bushes, kept watch on the house.

2) The function of an adverbial modifier:

a) **of time** (with the conjunction when or while)

E.g. When pronounced the words sounded harsh and hurting.

b) **of condition** (with the conjunction if)

E.g. If discovered, this information will upset their plans.

c) of comparison (with the conjunction as if or as though).

E.g. As if persuaded, she was suddenly silent.

d) **of concession** (with the conjunction though).

E.g. Though carefully, avoided, this subject came out in their conversation again and again.

e) **of manner** (with the conjunction as)

E. g. Take the medicine as prescribed.

3) The function of a predicative:

E.g. He tried to enter, but the door was locked and nobody answered his knock.

Besides, Participle II can be used in predicative constructions as a part of a complex object performing various syntactic functions.

THE PARTICIPLE AND THE GERUND

1. Unlike the gerund the participle cannot be used as a subject or an object.

2. In the function of a predicative there is some difference in meaning between the gerund and participle I.

E. g. (1) Your aim is enjoying yourself (Gerund).

(2) She looks so happy, so enjoying herself. (Participle I).

In the first example the gerund explains the subject, while participle I in the second example denotes a state of the subject.

3. In the function of an attribute and of an adverbial modifier a gerund is always preceded by a preposition.

E. g. She had a way of making you tell things you never thought you'd share with another human being (gerund).

The kids playing in the garden and making so much noise distracted her from writing (participle). You help me most by staying with your mother (gerund). But she managed one more piece of advice before hanging up, (gerund)

She drove one more block, still searching for house numbers (participle)

4. In compound nouns such as living room, writing table etc. the gerund is used in pre-position and is not preceded by a preposition. In such cases the gerund denotes the function or the purpose, while the participle denotes a state or an action.

E.g. They think the murder weapon was a hunting knife, (gerund)

There were voices of people hunting in the wood, (participle)

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Use participles instead of attributive subordinate clauses, if possible. Pick out sentences in which participles cannot be used and explain why.

Model: I recognized the man who was taking the floor.

I recognized the man taking the floor.

1. She stared at the door which was slowly opening. 2. The man, who was still holding the girl's hand looked a little embarrassed. 3. The person, who has written this letter, must be very good at writing. 4. The river which was slowly flowing among the trees, attracted us with its cool, soft banks. 5. Judy, who knew so little about her guardian, was eager to meet him. 6. She picked the flowers which grew in a great amount all over the field. 7. For some time he hesitated to enter the house which was still ringing with the children's voices. 8. At last she closed the book which was still lying in front of her though she hadn't read a line. 9. They tried to recognize the man who was approaching them along the grey dusty road. 10. He wanted to forget those grey eyes which followed him everywhere.

Ex. 2. Translate into English.

Мальчик, играющий в саду, сын моей сестры. 2. Книги, лежащие на столе, принадлежат Анне. 3. Покажите мне список студентов изучающих английский язык. 4. Я еще не просмотрел всех журналов, пришедших к нам из Москвы. 5. Железная дорога, соединяющая эти города, была построена еще в прошлом веке. 6. Человек, сидевший у окна, с улыбкой наблюдал за детьми, игравшими в саду.

Ex. 3. Translate into English using Participle II.

1. Они прислали нам список товаров, импортируемых этой фирмой. 2. Термометр - прибор, используемый для измерения температуры. 3. Секретарь отправил подписанные директором письма. 4. Мы внимательно прочли присланную Петром статью. 5. Камни, которые бросают мальчики, падают в воду. 6. Камень, брошенный в воду, идет ко дну. 7. Вопрос, обсуждавшийся вчера на собрании, был очень интересен. 8. Вопрос, обсуждавшийся, когда я пришел, был очень интересным. 9. Мне понравился дом, строившийся на берегу реки. 10. Из дома, построенного на берегу реки, открывался чудесный вид.

Ex. 4. Translate into English. Pay attention to the use of Participle I and Participle II.

1. Вопрос, обсуждаемый сейчас на собрании, очень важный. 2. Вчера профессор рассказывал нам об опытах, проводимых в настоящее время в его лаборатории. 3. Большой дом, строящийся на нашей улице, - новая школа. 4. Эти машины будут посланы на завод, строящийся в этом районе. 5. Этот завод будет производить новый тип машин, в настоящее время импортируемых из-за границы. 6. Пароход, разгружаемый сейчас рабочими, выйдет из порта завтра утром. 7. На конференции Академии Наук, проходящей сейчас в Москве, обсуждается ряд важных проблем. 8. Студенты, громко обсуждавшие что-то, выглядели взволнованными. 9. Она провела путников в комнату, забронированную для них. 10. Мост, захваченный неприятелем накануне, был снова взят нашими войсками. 11. Ответ, полученный от них, сильно удивил нас. 12. Цифры, упомянутые в его статье, были напечатаны в газете. 13. Большая ветка, сломанная ветром, лежала поперек дороги. 14. Я покажу вам статью, написанную моим братом. 15. Вчера секретарь отослала все письма, подписанные управляющим. 16. Я уже прочитал статью, недавно переведенную на русский язык. 17. Он дал мне список журналов и газет, получаемых

нашей библиотекой. 18. Рассказы, напечатанные в этом журнале, очень интересны. 19. Я надеюсь, что вы не повторите ошибок, сделанных вами раньше. 20. Словари, взятые студентами, должны быть возвращены не позже 6 часов.

Ex. 5. Translate into English using Perfect or Indefinite Participles.

1. Окончив уроки, я пошел домой. 2. Написав письмо, я пошел отправить его. 3. Поездив по стране около трех месяцев, он вернулся домой. 4. Ожидая трамвая, я увидел Анну. 5. Устроив все, он уехал домой 10-часовым поездом. 6. „Доброе утро“, - сказал он, подойдя ко мне. 7. Проработав над докладом целый день, он почувствовал усталость. 8. Проснувшись после нескольких часов глубокого сна, он чувствовал себя хорошо. 9. Войдя в комнату, он зажег свет, сел за стол и начал работать. 10. Услышав шаги в коридоре, я вышел из комнаты, чтобы посмотреть, кто пришел. 11. Увидев меня, он подошел и пожал мне руку. 12. Придя домой, он немедленно позвонил нам. 13. Сделав упражнения, класс перешел к чтению нового текста. 14. Увидев ее, он снял шляпу. 15. Подписав письмо, он отдал его секретарю. 16. Получив телеграмму, он немедленно позвонил заведующему. 17. Потушив свет, он лег спать. 18. Заказав обед, он стал просматривать газету. 19. Прочитав письмо, он положил его в ящик. 20. Войдя в комнату, он увидел приятелей, ждавших его. 21. Сняв пальто и шляпу, он поднялся вверх. 22. Увидев отца, дети побежали ему навстречу. 23. Бросив письмо в камин, он вышел из комнаты. 24. Он просмотрел документы и пошел домой.

Ex. 6. Combine the following sentences using the necessary form of the Participle.

Model: I felt tired. I stopped at a motel to rest.

Feeling tired I stopped at a motel to rest.

1. I knew that the mountains were dangerous. I took a guide.
 2. He found the door open. He had a look into the room.
 3. The driver lost control of his car. He hit a tree.
 4. I was sleeping on the first floor. I heard them quarrel downstairs.
 5. I stood in front of the mirror. I could see what was going on behind my back.
 6. I had been to his place before. I didn't wish to go there again.
 7. They robbed the mail train. They looked for a place to hide the money.
 8. Brian planted the flowers. Then he watered them.
 9. Cliff believed he could trust

Kate. He told her about his plan. 10. I had heard that Ron was fond of tennis. I bought Ron a pair of tennis shoes.

Ex. 7. Translate into English using Indefinite or Perfect Participles.

1. Мы вынуждены были провести ночь в лесу, так как заблудились. 2. Потеряв его адрес, я не смог написать ему. 3. Будучи хорошим инженером, он смог выполнить эту работу в короткий срок. 4. Не получив ответа, я написал ему опять. 5. Не зная его адреса, я не мог послать ему письмо. 6. Собрав материал, он смог написать полный отчет о работе комиссии. 7. Он не мог попасть в комнату, потому что потерял ключ. 8. И прожив в этом городе всю свою жизнь, он знал его очень хорошо. 9. Потеряв адрес своего друга, он не смог поздравить его с Новым Годом. 10. Совершив восхождение на горы прошлым летом, спортсмены могли представить, какие трудности их ожидают. 11. Прочитав много книг по этому вопросу, он смог сделать очень хороший доклад. 12. Подумав, что магазин закрыт в это время, я не пошел туда. 13. Думая, что он уехал, она не пошла к нему. 14. Полагая, что ребенок уснул, она выключила свет. 15. Подумав, что он уже уехал, мы стали ждать писем. 16. Приехав накануне конференции, мы располагали достаточным временем, чтобы осмотреть город. 17. Сломав зонт, я решил купить новый. 18. Так как лошадь была привязана к дереву, ее было легко найти. 19. Так как праздничное поздравление было послано заблаговременно, оно пришло накануне праздника (season greeting, in good time). 20. Так как на ней была очень яркая блуза, ее было легко найти в толпе.

PREDICATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS WITH THE PARTICIPLE

1. The Objective Participial Construction.
2. The Subjective Participial Construction.
3. The Nominative Absolute Participial Construction.
4. The Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction

The Objective Participial Construction

It is a construction in which the Participle is in predicate relation to a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case.

Практическая грамматика первого иностранного языка

In the sentence this construction has the function of a complex object.

a) After the verbs of sense perception Participle I is mostly used, though Participle II is also possible.

E. g. He watched the girl walking away forever.

She heard the words said but didn't comprehend the meaning.

b) After the verbs of mental activity (to expect, to consider, to understand) Participle II is used.

E. g. They considered him involved in the business.

c) After the verbs denoting wish (to want, to wish) Participle II is used.

E. g. He wants this letter typed as soon as possible.

d) After the verbs to have, to get Participle II is used.

E. g. He had his hair cut.

He has his dinner delivered.

The Subjective Participial Construction

It is a construction in which the Participle is in predicate relation to a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the nominative case. In the sentence it is used as a complex subject. It is used with the verbs of sense perception.

E.g. So many times they were seen talking together.

Sometimes Participle II can be used.

E. g. They were seen stopped by a policeman.

The Nominative Absolute Participial Construction

It is a construction in which the participle is in predicate relation to a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the Nominative case which are neither the subject of the sentence nor the object of the finite verb.

The Nominative Absolute Participial Construction is used in the function of an adverbial modifier:

a) **of time**

E.g. The job finished, we went home straightaway.

b) **of cause**

Практическая грамматика первого иностранного языка

E.g. The door hardly opened, he couldn't see much of the inside.

The matter having been settled so amicably. I felt quite satisfied with the results.

a) **of attendant circumstances**

E.g. He was about to leave, a nervous thrill chasing up and down his spine.

b) **of condition**

E.g. The snow covering the ground, we won't find the path.

The Prepositional Absolute Participial Construction

It is an absolute participial construction introduced by the preposition "with". It is used in the function of an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.

E.g. He woke up, with the depression of yesterday gone.

Absolute constructions without participles

If the participle of the verb to be is omitted in the two above-mentioned constructions we deal with the absolute constructions without a participle.

The Nominative Absolute Construction is used as an adverbial modifier of time or attendant circumstances.

E.g. A sleeping bag under each arm, Mr. Jonson tramped off on his vacation. Summer over, leaves were slowly falling down.

The Prepositional Absolute Construction is used in the function of an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.

E.g. ...and then, with his foot firmly on the rail, he turned and surveyed the room.

EXERCISES

Ex. 8. Combine the sentences as in the model.

Model: I heard them. They were quarrelling. I heard them quarrelling.

1. I heard her. She was singing a beautiful song.
2. They saw the boy. He was selling matches.
3. We heard the dog. It was barking.
4. Jane heard the child. The child was crying.
5. We found them. They were playing cards.

Практическая грамматика первого иностранного языка

6. I noticed the smoke. It was coming through the roof.
7. Her heart was beating wildly. She could feel it.
8. I found the students. They were doing nothing.
9. I saw the snow-flakes. They were falling down.
10. George saw the key. It was hanging on the hook.
11. His cap was lying on the chair. He left it there.
12. The boys were playing cricket. We watched them.
13. I caught him. He was hiding behind the bush.
14. We noticed them. They stood near the entrance.

Ex. 9. Translate into English.

1. Видели, как дети бежали к реке. 2. Его видели входящим в дом. 3. Было слышно, как она напевала эту мелодию. 4. Было слышно (Слышали), как они разговаривали. 5. Видно было, как лошадь спускалась с холма. 6. Было слышно, как она прошла через комнату. 7. В жаркие летние дни можно было часто видеть лодки, снующие вверх-вниз по реке. 8. Иногда мальчишек застают плавающими в запретных местах. 9. В ясные ночи видны миллионы звезд, сияющих в небе. 10. Водяные лилии обычно растут (находят растущими) в стоячих водах (still, stagnant). 11. Часто видели, как он шагал по улице с узлом на плечах. 12. Оливера нашли лежащим на пороге. 13. Глубокой ночью было слышно, как воеет собака Баскервилей, (in the dead of the night; a hound [au]). 14. Его нашли в горящем замке. Он лежал на полу почти без сознания. 15. Видно было, как тигр пожирал свою добычу. 16. Видно было, как мальчик пристально смотрел в воду. 17. Было слышно, как старик что-то шептал. 18. Заметили, что она разговаривала с этим человеком. 19. Видели, как она отводила ребенка в школу. 20. Ее нашли сидящей у постели больного. 21. Слышно было, как он разговаривал сам с собой. 22. Слышно было, как кто-то пел в саду. 23. Слышно было, как он быстро шел по коридору. 24. Видно было, как они бежали к горящему дому. 25. Слышно было, как они спускались по лестнице. 26. Видели, как он выходил рано утром.

Ex. 10. Translate into English.

1. Если позволит время, мы приедем на несколько дней раньше. 2. Поскольку оставалось только 5 минут до начала представления, они пошли прямо в зал. 3. Так как у него было слабое сердце, операцию отложили. 4. Он быстро сел, закрыв лицо руками. 5. Делать было нечего, они пошли домой. 6. Нельзя было терять ни минуты. Они помчались к дому. 7. Так как было уже позд-

но, они решили отложить свой визит. 8. Если позволят обстоятельства, мы сделаем это. 9. Она торопливо шла по тропинке, с деревьев падали дождевые капельки. 10. Когда за горой садилось солнце, войска пошли в наступление. 11. Так как было холодно, в большом мрачном холле затопили камин. 12. Собака сидела у самого стола, ее глаза были устремлены на хозяина. 13. Если позволит время, мы пойдем на экскурсию. 14. Так как мост был снесен наводнением, поезд опоздал. 15. Так как остановка была большая, они сошли с поезда. 16. Когда сборы были закончены, они отправились на вокзал. 17. Так как статья была интересная, Ольга предложила прочитать ее. 18. Только когда прозвенел третий звонок, занавес стал медленно подниматься. 19. Так как погода была холодная, ему пришлось надеть пальто. 20. Так как погода изменилась, мы решили остаться там, где мы были. 21. Так как у него болело горло, ему приходилось часто полоскать его. 22. Она вошла с опухшими глазами. 23. Она вошла с пылающими щеками. 24. Том шел по улице, за ним следовала группа мальчиков. 25. Том шел по улице, а его волосы развивались по ветру. 26. Он был готов и ждал меня. В руке у него была палка. 27. Сайкс, все еще не выпуская руку Оливера из своей, подошел к невысокому крыльцу и поднял щеколду. 28. Он сидел, повернувшись спиной к двери. 29. После того, как товары были разгружены, рабочие ушли из порта. 30. Она передала мне чашку чая, не пролив на блюдце ни капли. 31. Она передала мне письмо, не сказав ни слова. 32. Они сидели у костра, а их глаза были устремлены на горящие ветки. 33. Он вошел в комнату в сопровождении матери. 34. Больной мальчик лежал на кровати, а его сестра читала вслух. 35. Она вошла в комнату с опущенными глазами. 36. Она вошла с гордо поднятой головой. 37. Он сидел, положив ногу на ногу. 38. Вся речь была записана, причем не было допущено ни одной ошибки. 39. Он сидел за столом, склонив голову над книгой. 40. Он стоял, скрестив руки. 41. Он стоял, высоко подняв голову. 42. Так как ключ был потерян, они не могли войти в дом. 43. Так как пьеса была популярной, было трудно достать билеты. 44. Так как час был поздний, мы поспешили домой. 45. Становилось темно, так как солнце зашло еще час тому назад. 46. Обед закончился и мы собрались в гостиной. 47. У него что-то было неладно с глазами, он не спал всю ночь. 48. Так как погода хорошая, я бы хотела, чтобы ты постирала и прополоскала белье. 49. Так как температура была высокая, вызвали врача. 50. Так как случай был очень серьезный, была сделана операция (его

оперировали). 51. Так как было очень скользко, им пришлось идти очень медленно. 52. У него было что-то неладно с часами, он отдал их в ремонт. 53. Так как пальто было слишком велико, она отдала его в переделку. 54. Она сидела у окна; глаза ее были устремлены в темноту. 55. Она остановилась; сердце у нее заколотилось. 56. Если позволит погода, я прополощу белье завтра. 57. Грохотал гром, сверкала молния, а она стояла под деревом и дрожала от страха. 58. Дороги были очень грязными, ему пришлось надеть резиновые сапоги. 59. Только после того, как корабль был разгружен, матросам разрешили сойти на берег. 60. Так как волк был убит, они могли теперь спать спокойно.

Ex. 11. Translate into English using Participial Constructions.

А: 1. Течение было очень быстрым и он не отважился плыть один. 2. Он мчался на машине вдоль берега, пейзаж стремительно менялся за окном. 3. Так как климат на Британских островах мягкий, там можно заниматься спортом на открытом воздухе круглый год. 4. Так как береговая линия сильно изрезана, там есть много великолепных гаваней. 5. Так как в Шотландии много пологих холмов, овцы бродят там повсюду. 6. Он сказал это совершенно серьезно, а глаза его смеялись. 7. Моря вокруг Великобритании мелкие, и деревни на побережье занимаются рыболовством. 8. Так как расстояние между Британией и континентом невелико, в ясную погоду можно увидеть меловые утесы Англии с континента. 9. Так как на юге Англии земля очень плодородная, там развито садоводство. 10. Так как в машине оказалось мало места, мама осталась дома.

Б: 1. Он наблюдал, как его собеседник колеблется, не зная, что ответить. 2. Она наблюдала, как юноша что-то объяснял соседке, а та кивала головой ему в ответ. 3. Затаив дыхание, он наблюдал за игроками, которые уже мчались к воротам. 4. Она слышала, как он жалуется на свои болезни снова и снова, и это действовало ей на нервы. 5. Он наблюдал, как его любимая команда борется за мяч, и не видел и не слышал того, что происходит вокруг. 6. Когда они вернулись, они нашли маму на кухне, она готовила праздничный обед. 7. Они считали, что мама полностью вознаграждена за все ее заботы. 8. Все их желания осуществились. (They had ...) 9. Войдя в комнату, он обнаружил, что стол накрыт, и вся семья уже собралась за столом. 10. Ты когда-нибудь видел, чтобы он ел эту кашу?

В: 1. Можно было часто видеть, как Джуди читает допоздна. 2. Маму всегда можно было найти занятой уборкой или приготовлением пищи. 3. Никогда не слышали, чтобы мама жаловалась. 4. Никогда не видели, чтобы она ела во время перерыва, наверное, она боялась поправиться. 5. Часто слышали, как она плачет по ночам, но утром она была бодрая и веселая. 6. Ее всегда можно найти в дальнем углу сада, она сидит там и мечтает о чем-то. 7. Видели, как она отправляла письма, но никогда не видели, чтобы она их получала. 8. Его часто видели за карточной игрой; говорят, он много проиграл. 9. Видели, как он плывет, борясь с сильным течением. 10. Слышали, как он пару раз рассказывал эту историю, несколько не смущаясь.

Revision of non-finite forms

Ex. 1. Translate into English

1. Джуди могла показаться обыкновенной, мало образованной девочкой. 2. Ей еще надо было узнать так много вещей, чтобы сравняться с подругами. 3. Она завела привычку читать книги по ночам. 4. Она наслаждалась чтением книг, всем давно известных. 5. Джуди избегала говорить о вещах незнакомых ей. 6. Казалось, что ее опекун совсем ею не интересуется. 7. Не отвечая на письма, он казался был безразличен к жизни Джуди. 8. Опекун послал деньги, чтобы Джуди почувствовала праздник. 9. Получив от него пять монет, Джуди отправилась покупать рождественские подарки. 10. Джуди приходилось не легко, но никто не слышал, чтобы она жаловалась, и никто не видел, чтобы она плакала. 11. Сдав летние экзамены, Джуди почувствовала себя увереннее. 12. А увидев свои стихи опубликованными на первой странице студенческого журнала, она с гордостью написала об этом опекуну. 13. Проведя лето на ферме Джулии Пендлтон, Джуди была рада вернуться в студенческое общежитие. 14. Полная впечатлений она начала писать письмо своему опекуну. 15. Письма Джуди заслуживают того, чтобы их прочитали, хотя и нельзя удержаться от улыбки, читая их. 16. Опекун Джуди предоставил ей возможность стать образованной и она успешно использовала эту возможность. 17. Читая книгу «Длинноногий дяшюшка», вы начинаете понимать, какой трудолюбивой и настойчивой была Джуди. 18. Яркие описания студенческой жизни позволяют составить о ней впечатление. 19. Сравнивая систему образования в Великобритании и США, можно увидеть общее и раз-

личное. 20. Если бы вы прочитали эту книгу, она наверняка бы вам понравилась.

Ex. 2. Translate into English

А: 1. Оказавшись в трудном положении, мистер Бертон пошел к своему тезке просить помощи. 2. Стараясь произвести на него впечатление, Бертон сказал, что он умеет плавать. 3. Услышав такую чепуху, мистер Бертон решил отделаться от него. 4. Предлагая ему проплыть вокруг маяка, он знал, что тот не сможет сделать это. 5. Не зная другого выхода, мистер Бертон принял это предложение. 6. Согласиться плыть было равносильно согласию на самоубийство. 7. Проиграв деньги в карты, мистер Бертон оказался совсем без средств. 8. Не справившись с течением, он утонул.

Б: 1. Г-н А. пытался добиться успеха, не работая, а надеясь на удачу. 2. Он играл в карты и часто оказывался замешанным в сомнительных (sinister) делах, губя этим свою репутацию. 3. Когда ему говорили о его поведении, он только кивал, потирая руки, и усмехался. 4. Он считал свои неприятности временными и надеялся прорваться через трудную полосу жизни. 5. Он сводил людей с ума тем, что никогда не выполнял обещаний (to stick to). 6. Он даже нарушал закон, не задумываясь о последствиях. 7. Потеряв друзей и деньги, он больше не мог управлять ситуацией. 8. Совершенно разбитый, он не знал к кому обратиться за помощью. 9. Он перебрал в уме имена своих бывших друзей и отклонил их одно за другим, грустно качая головой. 10. Понимая, что он сделал много ошибок, он также понимал, что уже слишком поздно исправлять их.

В: 1. Занимаясь спортом, объединяются люди разных национальностей. 2. Вступая в различные спортивные клубы, они приобретают новых друзей. 3. Тренируясь в различных видах спорта, они развивают и укрепляют свое тело и дух. 4. Заниматься спортом не значит быть профессионалом. 5. Большинство любителей занимаются спортом, не собираясь устанавливать рекорды, хотя и мечтая втайне об этом. 6. Они наслаждаются своими маленькими победами и достижениями, не становясь чемпионами. 7. Они еще больше радуются успехам своих любимых спортсменов, не пропуская ни одного соревнования, ни одного матча с их участием. 8. Поддерживая своих любимых спортсменов и команды, они помогают им победить. 9. Без преувеличения, спорт - самое массовое хобби. 10. Стадионы, спортивные залы,

площадки для гольфа собирают тысячи людей, которых притягивает сюда дух соревнования.

Ex. 3. Translate into English

1. Учебный год был очень тяжелый и к концу года они были без сил. 2. Приближались каникулы и пора было подумать о том, как провести их. 3. Вопрос был не в том, с кем провести их, но куда поехать. 4. В одном месте цены казались слишком высокими, в другое было трудно добираться. 5. Мэри объясняла своему другу, что она хочет отдохнуть, наслаждаясь солнцем и морем. 6. Она также была бы не против сходить вечером в бар или куда-нибудь потанцевать. 7. У нее не было ни малейшего желания осматривать достопримечательности вместе с толпой других туристов. 8. Она хотела, чтобы ее мозг отдыхал и, поэтому она не собиралась забивать голову датами и именами. 9. Питер слушал, как она описывает свой предполагаемый отдых и не мог не удержаться от замечаний. 10. „Ты можешь загорать сколько хочешь, но не думай, что ты заставишь меня делать то же самое”, - сказал он. 11. „Я не знаю более утомительного отдыха, чем ничего не делать”. 12. „Мы так давно мечтали поехать в Италию, ты не можешь так просто разрушить все наши планы”. 13. Мэри помолчала, глядя на Питера так, как будто она рассматривает незнакомца. 14. Она даже представить не могла, чтобы он спорил с ней. 15. „Ладно”, - сказала она, „пусть мы поедem в Италию, но я хочу, чтобы ты не мешал мне наслаждаться Средиземным морем”. 16. Вопрос о месте отдыха решен, но еще остается вопрос о том, как добираться туда. 17. Путешествие по морю очень соблазнительно, но расписание круизов может не совпадать с вашим расписанием. 18. Поехать на машине не плохо, но вряд ли разумно ехать на ней так далеко, так как дорога туда и обратно займет большую часть отпуска. 19. Горячо прообсуждав различные способы путешествия еще полчаса, Питер и Мэри пришли к соглашению. 20. Самолет сделает их поездку быстрой и комфортабельной. 21. Когда они добрались до вопроса о гостинице, в которой им остановиться, у них появилось странное ощущение. 22. „Если мы будем так спорить о каждом пустяке, нам лучше провести отпуск отдельно”. 23. Мэри почувствовала себя разочарованной. 24. Они так долго хотели поехать куда-нибудь вместе. 25. Неужели такой пустяк как гостиница может нарушить их планы?

Ex. 4. Translate into English

Практическая грамматика первого иностранного языка

А: 1. Так как Ник опаздывал на тренировку, он очень торопился. 2. Когда торопишься, обычно бываешь менее внимательным. 3. Ник вышел из дома, не посмотрев, какая погода. 4. Так как шел дождь, крыльцо было мокрым и скользким. 5. Быстро спускаясь по ступенькам, Ник поскользнулся. 6. А поскользнувшись, он упал и ушиб ногу. 7. Он почувствовал, что нога повреждена, и сначала растерялся. 8. Но, будучи сообразительным мальчиком, он понял, что ему придется вернуться домой. 9. Так как мама была дома, она первой осмотрела его ногу. 10. Так как нога распухла на глазах, она решила вызвать скорую помощь. 11. Доктор осмотрел ногу мальчика, внимательно выслушав его жалобы. 12. Так как мальчик не мог идти сам, его отнесли в машину на носилках. 13. В приемной его положили на кушетку, чтобы другой доктор осмотрел его. 14. Не удовлетворившись осмотром, доктор велел сделать рентген. 15. После того, как рентген был сделан, доктор посмотрел пленку и вздохнул с облегчением. 16. Кость была целая, перелома не было и можно было не накладывать гипс. 17. Туго забинтовав ногу, доктор разрешил маме забрать Ника домой. 18. Его инструкции были лежать в постели и прикладывать компресс и он также выписал мазь. 19. Мальчик, казалось, нервничал и был чем-то озабочен, не решаясь спросить доктора прямо. 20. Доктор догадался, что тревожит Ника и, улыбнувшись, объяснил, что хромать он не будет, и через пару недель может возобновить тренировки.

Б: 1. Ник очень активный мальчик и, будучи таким, он не может заставить себя посидеть на месте даже 20 минут. 2. Он даже представить не мог, как это провести в постели несколько дней. 3. Всю дорогу домой он не переставал жаловаться на нездоровье. 4. Мама терпела его ворчание довольно долго, не прерывая его. 5. Наконец, она велела ему помолчать, сказав, что он сам виноват. 6. Мальчик замолчал, обдумывая, чем заняться дома. 7. Первым делом он решил позвонить друзьям, чтобы рассказать им о своем приключении. 8. Оказавшись дома, он хотел сразу же осуществить свое намерение, но, мама уложила его в постель и приготовила ему чай. 9. Выпив чаю, мальчик начал обзванивать друзей. 10. Как же он был разочарован, не найдя никого дома. 11. Так как было не поздно, и дождь закончился, они все играли в футбол во дворе. 12. Они были очень удивлены, не видя Ника среди них. 13. Ему уже было пора вернуться с тренировки и при-

соединиться к ним. 14. Хотя и огорчившись из-за его отсутствия, они играли, пока не стемнело. 15. Когда они уже собрались идти домой, кто-то предложил зайти к Нику и выяснить, что случилось. 16. Дверь открыла мама Ника и, она не выглядела очень счастливой, когда увидела полдюжины ребят. 17. Играя в футбол после дождя, они были в полном беспорядке. 18. Поздоровавшись с мальчиками, мама велела им снять ботинки. 19. Когда ботинки были сняты, мама провела их в комнату Ника. 20. Войдя в комнату, они замерли от удивления, увидев Ника, в постели. 21. Ник в подробностях описал свое посещение больницы, гордый от того, что он в центре внимания своих друзей. 22. Три следующих дня мальчики не могли навещать Ника очень часто, так как они проводили полдня в школе. 23. Не зная чем еще заняться, Ник начал просматривать свои учебники. 24. Так как он никогда не был прилежным учеником, он раньше не уделял много внимания занятиям. 25. Вернувшись в школу две недели спустя, Ник поразил всех своими успехами в учебе. 26. Оказалось, что учиться тоже интересно и не менее увлекательно, чем играть в футбол.

Ex. 5. Translate into English

1. Я люблю путешествовать и никогда не упускаю возможность поехать во время отпуска в какое-нибудь новое место. 2. Я предпочитаю летать самолетом. У меня захватывает дух, когда я вижу, как огромные белые облака проплывают под крылом самолета. 3. Но нельзя отрицать тот факт, что ездить поездом безопаснее и спокойнее. 4. Всю зиму я мечтаю поехать к морю. 5. Последний экзамен сдан и я еду к своей подруге, чтобы обсудить нашу поездку. 6. Но ее не оказалось дома и ее мама сказала: „Должно быть, она забыла, что вы договорились встретиться. Ты бы позвонила ей в офис.“ 7. Так как линия была занята, мне удалось дозвониться к ней только после нескольких попыток. 8. Узнав, что я сдала экзамены, она сказала: "Моя дорогая, ты заслуживаешь похвалы". 9. Когда мы встретились, я не смогла не упрекнуть ее за забывчивость. 10. Потом мы начали обсуждать нашу поездку. Она настаивала на том, чтобы поехать на Кавказ, а я больше хотела поехать на Балтийское море. 11. Наконец я согласилась поехать на Кавказ, и на следующий день я заказала два билета на поезд, отправляющийся в 23.30. 12. Потом я пошла в парикмахерскую, чтобы подстричь волосы и сделать маникюр. 13. На следующий день мы приехали на вокзал, нашли наш вагон

и, после того как мы положили багаж, стали смотреть в окно. 14. Было видно, как люди, нагруженные чемоданами и сумками, торопились в разных направлениях. 15. Мы прибыли в Туапсе рано утром и нам сразу же удалось снять комнату. 16. На следующий день, когда мы шли по улице, мы случайно встретили одного из наших друзей. 17. Он шел медленно, ни на кого не глядя, опустив глаза. 18. Если бы я не окликнула его, он бы прошел мимо. 19. Услышав мой голос, он поднял голову и, удивился, увидев нас. 20. Он был рад присоединиться к нам и мы прекрасно провели время вместе.

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

1	arise [ə`raɪz]	arose [ə`rouz]	arisen [ə`rɪzn]	возникать, появляться
2	awake [ə`waɪk]	awoke [ə`wɔʊk]	awoken [ə`wɔʊkn]	будить, просыпаться
3	be [bi:]	was; were [wɔz], [wɜ:]	been [bi:n]	быть, находиться
4	bear [beə]	bore [bɔ:]	borne [bɔ:n]	носить, выносить
5	beat [bi:t]	beat [bi:t]	beaten [bi:tn]	бить
6	become [br`kʌm]	became [br`keɪm]	become [br`kʌm]	становиться
7	begin [br`gɪn]	began [br`gæən]	begun [br`gʌn]	начинать(ся)
8	bend [bend]	bent [bent]	bent [bent]	гнуть(ся)
9	bet [bet]	bet [bet]	bet [bet]	держат пари
10	bid [bɪd]	bid/bade [bɪd/beɪd]	bidden [bɪdn]	велеть, просить
11	bid [bɪd]	bid [bɪd]	bid [bɪd]	предлагать
12	bind [baɪnd]	bound [baʊnd]	bound [baʊnd]	связывать
13	bit [brɪt]	bit [brɪt]	bitten [brɪtn]	кусать
14	bleed [bli:d]	bled [bled]	bled [bled]	кровоточить
15	blow [bləʊ]	blew [blu:]	blown [blu:]	дуть
16	break [breɪk]	broke [brɔʊk]	broken [brɔʊkən]	ломать
17	breed [bri:d]	bred [bred]	bred [bred]	разводить
18	bring [brɪŋ]	brought [brɔ:t]	brought [brɔ:t]	принести
19	build [brɪld]	built [brɪlt]	built [brɪlt]	строить
20	burn [bɜ:n]	burned/burnt [bɜ:nd/bɜ:nd]	burned/burnt [bɜ:nd/bɜ:nd]	жечь, гореть

Практическая грамматика первого иностранного языка

21	burst [bɜ:st]	burst [bɜ:st]	burst [bɜ:st]	взорваться
22	bust [bʌst]	busted/bust [bʌstɪd/bʌst]	busted/bust [bʌstɪd/bʌst]	разорить(ся)
23	buy [baɪ]	bought [bɔ:t]	bought [bɔ:t]	купить
24	bet	bet	bet	держаться пари
25	cast [kɑ:st]	cast [kɑ:st]	cast [kɑ:st]	бросать, кидать
26	catch [kæʃ]	caught [kɔ:t]	caught [kɔ:t]	ловить
27	choose [tʃu:z]	chose [tʃoʊz]	chosen [tʃoʊzn]	выбирать
28	cleave [kli:v]	cleft [kli:ft]	cleft [kli:ft]	рассечь
29	cling [kliŋ]	clung [kluŋ]	clung [kluŋ]	цепляться(ся)
30	clothe [kloʊð]	clothed/clad [kloʊðd/klæd]	clothed/clad [kloʊðd/klæd]	одеть
31	come [kʌm]	came [keɪm]	come [keɪm]	приходить
32	cost [kɒst]	cost [kɒst]	cost [kɒst]	стоить
33	creep [kri:p]	crept [krept]	crept [krept]	ползть
34	cut [kʌt]	cut [kʌt]	cut [kʌt]	резать
35	deal [di:l]	dealt [delt]	dealt [delt]	торговать
36	dig [dɪg]	dug [dʌg]	dug [dʌg]	копать
37	dive [daɪv]	dove/dived [doʊv/daɪvd]	dived [daɪvd]	нырять, погружаться
38	do [du:]	did [dɪd]	done [dʌn]	делать
39	draw [drɔ:]	drew [dru:]	drawn [drɔ:n]	рисовать, тащить
40	dream [dri:m]	dreamed/dreamt [dri:m/dremt]	dreamed/dreamt [dri:m/dremt]	видеть сны, мечтать
41	drink [drɪŋk]	drank [dræŋk]	drunk [drʌŋk]	пить
42	drive [draɪv]	drove [droʊv]	driven [drɪvn]	водить, гнать
43	dwell [dwel]	dwelt/dwelled [dwelt/dweld]	dwelt/dwelled [dwelt/dweld]	обитать
44	eat [i:t]	ate [et]	eaten [i:tn]	кушать, есть
45	fall [fɔ:l]	fell [fel]	fallen [fɔ:lən]	падать
46	feed [fi:d]	fed [fed]	fed [fed]	кормить(ся)
47	feel [fi:l]	felt [felt]	felt [felt]	чувствовать
48	fight [faɪt]	fought [fɔ:t]	fought [fɔ:t]	бороться
49	find [faɪnd]	found [faʊnd]	found [faʊnd]	находить
50	flee [fli:]	fled [fled]	fled [fled]	бежать, спасать- ся
51	fling [flɪŋ]	flung [fluŋ]	flung [fluŋ]	швырять
52	fly [flaɪ]	flew [flu:]	flown [floʊn]	летать
53	forbid [fə`brɪd]	forbade [fə`beɪd]	for`bidden [fəbrɪdn]	запретить
54	forget	forgot [fə`gɒt]	forgotten	забыть

Практическая грамматика первого иностранного языка

	[fə`get]		[fə`gɒtn]	
55	forgive [fə`gɪv]	forgave [fə`geɪv]	for` given [fə`gɪvn]	простить
56	forsake [fə`seɪk]	forsook [fə`sʊk]	forsaken [fə`seɪkn]	покидать
57	freeze [fri:z]	froze [frouz]	frozen [frouzn]	замерзать
58	get [get]	got [gɒt]	gotten/got [gɒtn/gɒt]	получать, становиться
59	gild [gɪld]	gilt [gɪlt]	gilt [gɪlt]	позолотить
60	give [gɪv]	gave [geɪv]	given [gɪvn]	давать
61	go [gəʊ]	went [went]	gone [gɒ]	идти, ехать
62	grind [graɪnd]	ground [graʊnd]	ground [graʊnd]	точить, молоть
63	grow [grəʊ]	grew [gru:]	grown [grəʊn]	расти, выращивать
64	hang [hæŋ]	hung [hʌŋ]	hung [hʌŋ]	висеть, повесить
65	have [hæv]	had [hæd]	had [hæd]	иметь
66	hear [hɪə]	heard [hɜ:d]	heard [hɜ:d]	слышать
67	hew [hju:]	hewed [hju:d]	hewn [hju:n]	рубить, тесать
68	hide [haɪd]	hid [hɪd]	hidden [hɪdn]	прятать(ся)
69	hit [hɪt]	hit [hɪt]	hit [hɪt]	ударить
70	hold [hoʊld]	held [held]	held [held]	держать, проводить
71	hurt [hɜ:t]	hurt [hɜ:t]	hurt [hɜ:t]	ранишь, обижать
72	keep [ki:p]	kept [kept]	kept [kept]	держать
73	kneel [ni:l]	knelt [nelt]	knelt [nelt]	становиться на колени
74	knit [nɪt]	knit [nɪt]	knit [nɪt]	вязать
75	know [nəʊ]	knew [nju:]	known [nəʊn]	знать
76	lay [leɪ]	laid [leɪd]	laid [leɪd]	класть
77	lead [li:d]	led [led]	led [led]	вести
78	lean [li:nd]	leant [lent]	leant [lent]	опираться
79	leap [li:p]	leapt [lept]	leapt [lept]	прыгать
80	learn [lɜ:n]	learned/learnt [lɜ:nd/lɜ:nt]	learnt [lɜ:nt]	учить(ся)
81	leave [li:v]	left [left]	left [left]	оставлять, уезжать
82	lend [lend]	lent [lent]	lent [lent]	давать займы
83	let [let]	let [let]	let [let]	позволять
84	lie [laɪ]	lay [leɪ]	lain [leɪn]	лежать
85	lose [lu:z]	lost [lost]	lost [lost]	терять
86	light [laɪt]	lit/lighted	lit/lighted	зажигать, освещать

Практическая грамматика первого иностранного языка

		[lɪt/lɑɪtɪd]	[lɪt/lɑɪtɪd]	щать
87	make [meɪk]	made [meɪd]	made [meɪd]	делать, созда- вать
88	mean [mi:n]	meant [ment]	meant [ment]	значить, подразумевать
89	meet [mi:t]	met [met]	met [met]	встретить
90	mow [moʊ]	mowed [moʊd]	mown [moʊn]	косить
91	pay [peɪ]	paid [peɪd]	paid [peɪd]	платить
92	plead [pli:d]	pleaded/pled [pli:deɪd/pled]	pleaded/pled [pli:deɪd/pled]	заявлять
93	prove [pru:v]	proved [pru:vd]	proven/proved [pru:vən/pru:vd]	доказывать
94	put [pʊt]	put [pʊt]	put [pʊt]	класть
95	read [ri:d]	read [red]	read [red]	читать
96	rid [rɪd]	rid [rɪd]	rid [rɪd]	избавлять
97	ride [raɪd]	rode [rəʊd]	ridden [rɪdn]	ездить верхом
98	ring [rɪŋ]	rang [ræŋ]	rung [rʌŋ]	звонить
99	rise [raɪz]	rose [rəʊz]	risen [rɪzn]	подниматься
100	run [rʌn]	ran [ræŋ]	run [rʌn]	бежать
101	saw [sɔ:]	sawed [sɔ:d]	sawed/sawn [sɔ:d/sɔ:n]	пилить
102	say [seɪ]	said [sed]	said [sed]	сказать
103	see [si:]	saw [sɔ:]	seen [si:n]	видеть
104	seek [si:k]	sought [sɔ:t]	sought [sɔ:t]	искать
105	sell [sel]	sold [səʊld]	sold [səʊld]	продавать
106	send [send]	sent [sent]	sent [sent]	послать
107	set [set]	set [set]	set [set]	ставить
108	sew [soʊ]	sewed [soʊd]	sewn [soʊn]	шить
109	shake [ʃeɪk]	shook [ʃʊk]	shaken [ʃeɪkən]	трясти
110	shave [ʃeɪv]	shaved [ʃeɪvd]	shaved/shaven [ʃeɪvd/ʃeɪvən]	брить(ся)
111	shear [ʃɪə]	sheared [ʃɪəd]	sheared/shorn [ʃɪəd/ʃɔ:n]	стричь
112	shed [ʃed]	shed [ʃed]	shed [ʃed]	проливать (слёзы)
113	shine [ʃaɪn]	shone [ʃəʊn]	shone [ʃəʊn]	светить, сиять
114	shoe [ʃu:]	shod [ʃɒd]	shod [ʃɒd]	обувать, подковывать
115	shoot [ʃu:t]	shot [ʃɒt]	shot [ʃɒt]	стрелять
116	show [ʃəʊ]	showed [ʃəʊd]	shown [ʃəʊn]	показывать
117	shrink [ʃrɪŋk]	shrank [ʃræŋk]	shrunk [ʃrʌŋk]	сжиматься
118	shut [ʃʌt]	shut [ʃʌt]	shut [ʃʌt]	закрывать
119	sing [sɪŋ]	sang [sæŋ]	sung [sʌŋ]	петь
120	sink [sɪŋk]	sank [sæŋk]	sunk [sʌŋk]	погружаться,

Практическая грамматика первого иностранного языка

				тонуть
121	sit [sɪt]	sat [sæʔ]	sat [sæʔ]	сидеть
122	slay [sleɪ]	slew/slayed [slu:/sleɪd]	slain/slayed [sleɪn/sleɪd]	убивать
123	sleep [sli:p]	slept [slept]	slept [slept]	спать
124	slide [slaɪd]	slid [slɪd]	slid [slɪd]	скользить
125	sling [slɪŋ]	slung [slʌŋ]	slung [slʌŋ]	метать
126	slink [slɪŋk]	slinked/slunk [slɪŋkt/slʌŋk]	slinked/slunk [slɪŋkt/slʌŋk]	красться
127	smell [smel]	smelt [smelt]	smelt [smelt]	пахнуть, нюхать
128	sow [soʊ]	sowed [soʊd]	sown [soʊn]	сеять
129	speak [spi:k]	spoke [spoʊk]	spoken [spoʊkən]	говорить
130	speed [spi:d]	ped [sped]	ped [sped]	мчаться
131	spell [spel]	spelt [spelt]	spelt [spelt]	писать, читать по буквам
132	spend [spend]	spent [spent]	spent [spent]	тратить
133	spill [spɪl]	spilt [spɪlt]	spilt [spɪlt]	расплескать
134	spin [spɪn]	spun [spʌn]	spun [spʌn]	прясть
135	spit [spɪt]	spit/spat [spɪt/spæʔ]	spit/spat [spɪt/spæʔ]	плевать
136	split [splɪt]	split [splɪt]	split [splɪt]	расщепить(ся)
137	spoil [spɔɪl]	spoiled/spoilt [spɔɪld/spɔɪlt]	spoiled/spoilt [spɔɪld/spɔɪlt]	портить
138	spread [spred]	spread [spred]	spread [spred]	распространиться
139	spring [sprɪŋ]	sprang [spræŋ]	sprung [sprʌŋ]	возникнуть
140	stand [stænd]	stood [stʊd]	stood [stʊd]	стоять
141	steal [sti:l]	stole [stoʊl]	stolen [stoʊlən]	красть
142	stick [stɪk]	stuck [stʌk]	stuck [stʌk]	липнуть
143	sting [stɪŋ]	stung [stʌŋ]	stung [stʌŋ]	жалить
144	stink [stɪŋk]	stank [stræŋk]	stunk [stʌŋk]	вонять
145	strew [str:]	strewed [str:d]	strewn [str:n]	усеять
146	stride [straɪd]	strode [stroʊd]	stridden [strɪdn]	шагать
147	strike [straɪk]	struck [strʌk]	struck/stricken [strʌk/strɪkən]	ударить
148	string [strɪŋ]	strung [strʌŋ]	strung [strʌŋ]	нанизать, натянуть
149	strive [straɪv]	strove/strived [stroʊv/straɪvd]	striven/strived [strɪvən/straɪvd]	стараться, стремиться
150	swear [swɛə]	swore [swɔ:]	sworn [swɔ:n]	клясться
151	sweat [swet]	sweat/sweated	sweat/sweated	потеть

		[swet/[swetɪd]	[swet/swetɪd]	
152	sweep [swi:p]	swept [swept]	swept [swept]	мести
153	swell [swel]	swelled [sweld]	swollen/swelled [swɔʊlən/sweld]	вздуться, раздуться
154	swim [swɪm]	swam [swæm]	swum [swʌm]	плыть
155	swing [swɪŋ]	swung [swʌŋ]	swung [swʌŋ]	качаться
156	take [teɪk]	took [tʊk]	taken [teɪkən]	взять, брать
157	teach [ti:tʃ]	taught [tɔ:t]	taught [tɔ:t]	обучать
158	tear [tɛə]	tore [tɔ:]	torn [tɔ:n]	рвать
159	tell [tel]	told [tɔʊld]	told [tɔʊld]	рассказывать
160	think [θɪŋk]	thought [θɔ:t]	thought [θɔ:t]	думать
161	throw [θrəʊ]	threw [θru:]	thrown [θrəʊn]	бросать
162	thrust [θrʌst]	thrust [θrʌst]	thrust [θrʌst]	толкать
163	tread [tred]	trod [trɒd]	trodden [trɒdn]	ступать
164	understand [ʌndə`stænd]	understood [ʌndə`stʊd]	understood [ʌndə`stʊd]	понимать
165	wake [weɪk]	woke/waked [wəʊk/weɪkt]	woken/waked [wəʊkən/weɪkt]	просыпаться
166	wear [weə]	wore [wɔ:]	worn [wɔ:n]	носить
167	weave [wi:v]	wove/weaved [wəʊv/wi:vd]	woven/weaved [wəʊvən/wi:vd]	ткать
168	wed [wed]	wed/wedded [wed/wedɪd]	wed/wedded [wed/wedɪd]	вступать в брак
169	weep [wi:p]	wept [wept]	wept [wept]	плакать
170	wet [wet]	wet [wet]	wet [wet]	мочить
171	win [wɪn]	won [wʌn]	won [wʌn]	выигрывать, побеждать
172	wind [waɪnd]	wound [waʊnd]	wound [waʊnd]	витья(ся)
173	wring [rɪŋ]	wrung [rʌŋ]	wrung [rʌŋ]	выкручивать
174	write [raɪt]	wrote [rəʊt]	written [rɪtn]	писать